

BOOKS Printed for C. Hitch.

I. A Treatise concerning the State of departed Souls, before at, and after the Resurrection, translated into *English* by Mr. *Dennis*. Price 5 s.

II. The Faith and Duties of Christians ; a Treatise in eight Chapters, translated by Mr. *Dennis*. Price 4 s.

III. De Statu Mortuorum & Resurgentium Tractatus, adjicitur Appendix de futura Judæorum Restauratione. Price 6 s.

IV. Archeologia Philosophica, five doctrina Antiqua de rerum originibus. Libri duo. Editio secunda. Price 4 s.

V. De Fide & Officiis Christianorum, Liber posthumus. Editio secunda. Price 4 s.

N. B. There are a Small Number of the *Latin* Pieces printed on a fine large Paper.

(All written by the learned Dr. *Thomas Burnet*, late Master of the *Charter-House*) to which is prefix'd his Effigies, curiously engraved by Mr. *Vertue*.

An Enquiry into the M O R A L S of the Ancients ; viz.

I. Of their Justice.

II. Of the Love of their Country.

III. Of the Magnanimity of their Actions and Sentiments.

IV. Of their Contempt of Money, and Simplicity of Life.

V. Of their Sentiments of Friendship.

VI. Of their Religion, and the several Duties and Relations of Life.

VII. An Enquiry into the Causes of the Virtues of the Heathens, and into the Reasons of the Degeneracy of Christians.

By *George England*, Rector of Woltarton, and Vicar of Henworth in, Norfolk, and Chaplain to the Lord Hobart. 4^{to} Price 9 s.

THE
METHOOD
OF
TEACHING and STUDYING
THE
BELLES LETTRES,
OR,

An Introduction to LANGUAGES, POETRY,
RHE TORIC, HISTORY, MORAL
PHILOSOPHY, PHYSICKS, &c.

WITH

Reflections on TASTE; and Instructions with
regard to the ELOQUENCE of the PUL-
PIT, the BAR, and the STAGE.

The whole illustrated with Passages from the most famous
POETS and ORATORS, ancient and modern,
with CRITICAL REMARKS on them.

Designed more particularly for STUDENTS in the
UNIVERSITIES.

*By Mr. ROLLIN, late Principal of the University
of Paris, Professor of Eloquence in the Royal College,
and Member of the Royal Academy of Inscriptions
and Belles Lettres.*

Translated from the *French*.

VOL. IV.

The FOURTH EDITION.

LONDON:

Printed for C. HITCH, at the Red-Lion in Pater-
noster Row. M.DCC.XLIX.

THE HISTORY OF

THE CITY OF

NEW-YORK

FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENT

TO THE PRESENT TIME

BY J. C. HEYER

NEW-YORK: PUBLISHED BY

J. C. HEYER, 10 NASSAU ST.

1854

NEW-YORK: PUBLISHED BY

J. C. HEYER, 10 NASSAU ST.

1854

NEW-YORK: PUBLISHED BY

J. C. HEYER, 10 NASSAU ST.

THE CONTENTS.

PART the THIRD. OF PROFANE HISTORY.

The third piece of Roman History. Page 1

THE space of three and fifty years, from the beginning of the second Punick war to the defeat of Perseus. ibid.

CHAP. I.

<i>A narrative of the facts.</i>	2
<i>The beginning of the second Punick war and the successes of Hannibal.</i>	3
FABIUS DICTATOR.	6
<i>The battle of Cannæ.</i>	9
SCIPIO chosen General, restores the affairs of Spain.	13
SCIPIO returns to Rome, is chosen Consul, and prepares for the conquest of Africa.	19
<i>The war against Philip King of Macedon.</i>	27
<i>The War against Antiochus King of Syria.</i>	31
<i>The end and death of Scipio.</i>	35
<i>The death of Hannibal.</i>	38
<i>The war against Perseus the last King of Macedon.</i>	39

CHAP II.

<i>Reflections.</i>	43
ARTICLE I. <i>The different qualifications of the persons spoke of in this third portion of Roman history.</i>	44
ANTIOCHUS King of Syria.	ibid.
PHILIP and PERSEUS King of Macedon.	46

The CONTENTS.

PAULUS ÆMILIUS	48
FABIUS MAXIMUS.	56
HANNIBAL and SCIPIO.	60
§ I. <i>Military virtues.</i>	ibid.
I. <i>Extent of mind for forming and executing great designs.</i>	ibid.
II. <i>Profound secrecy.</i>	62
III. <i>To know well the characters of the generals against whom one is to engage.</i>	63
IV. <i>To keep up an exact discipline in the army.</i>	64
V. <i>To live after a plain, modest, frugal, and laborious manner.</i>	65
VI. <i>To know equally how to employ force and stratagem.</i>	67
VII. <i>Never to hazard his person without a necessity.</i>	ibid.
VIII. <i>Art and dexterity in battle.</i>	68
IX. <i>To have the talent of speaking and conciliating others to his purposes with address.</i>	69
<i>The Conclusion.</i>	70
§ II. <i>Moral and civil virtues.</i>	72
I. <i>Generosity and liberality.</i>	75
II. <i>Goodness, gentleness.</i>	ibid.
III. <i>Justice.</i>	77
IV. <i>Magnanimity.</i>	ibid.
V. <i>Chastity.</i>	78
VI. <i>Religion.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE II. <i>The principal character and virtues of the Romans with respect to war.</i>	80
I. <i>Equity and wise caution in undertaking and declaring war.</i>	83
II. <i>Perseverance and constancy in a resolution once taken and decreed.</i>	84
III. <i>The habit of enuring themselves to painful labours and military exercises; the incredible severity of their discipline, and the different rewards of merit.</i>	85
IV. <i>Clemency and moderation in victory.</i>	88
V. <i>Valour and magnanimity in adversity.</i>	90
	VL.

The CONTENTS.

VI. <i>Justice and adherence to their engagements, the principles of the Roman government; the springs of the love and confidence of the citizens, allies, and conquered nations.</i>	91
VII. <i>Respect for religion.</i>	96
VIII. <i>The love of glory.</i>	97
The fourth piece of Roman History.	100
<i>The change of the Roman republick into a monarchy foretold and expressed by the historian Polybius, in the sixth book of his history.</i>	ibid.

C H A P. I.

<i>The principles of Polybius upon the different sorts of government, and particularly that of the Romans.</i>	ibid.
<i>The power of the consuls.</i>	102
<i>The power of the senate.</i>	103
<i>The power of the people.</i>	104
<i>The mutual dependance of the consuls, senate and people upon each other.</i>	105
<i>Causes of the change of a republick into a monarchy.</i>	108

C H A P. II.

<i>The change of the Roman republick into a monarchy.</i>	113
<i>Riches attended with luxury in buildings, furniture, diet, &c.</i>	115
<i>Taste for statues, pictures, &c.</i>	117
<i>Insatiable avarice, wrongs, rapines, ill-treatment of the allies and conquered nations.</i>	119
<i>Immoderate ambition, a boundless desire of rule, attended with factions, seditions, murders, and the entire subversion of liberty.</i>	122
I. <i>The GRACCHI.</i>	124
II. <i>MARIUS and SYLLA.</i>	127
III. <i>CÆSAR, POMPEY.</i>	133
IV. <i>The young OCTAVIUS.</i>	136

The CONTENTS.

PART IV.

Of Fable and Antiquities Page 147

CHAP. I.

<i>Of Fable.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE I. <i>Of the origin of fable.</i>	148
ARTICLE II. <i>Of the usefulness of fable.</i>	153

CHAP. II.

<i>Of Antiquities.</i>	157
<i>The usefulness of the study of antiquities.</i>	158
<i>Facts and reflections relating to the invention of arts.</i>	164
I. <i>Discoveries unknown to the ancients.</i>	165
II. <i>Honours paid to learned men.</i>	170
III. <i>Of the measures of time and place, and of ancient coins.</i>	173
I. <i>Measures of time.</i>	ibid.
II. <i>Measures of roads.</i>	174
III. <i>Of ancient coins.</i>	175
<i>Greek coins.</i>	ibid.
<i>Roman coins.</i>	176
<i>Roman numbers.</i>	177
<i>A table of the value of the Greek money.</i>	ibid.
<i>A table of the value of the Roman money.</i>	178

BOOK V.

Of Philosophy. 181

ARTICLE I. <i>Philosophy may be very serviceable in regulating the manners.</i>	182
ARTICLE II. <i>Philosophy may very much contribute to the perfection of reason.</i>	190
ARTICLE III. and IV. <i>Philosophy adorns the mind with an infinity of curious knowledge. It serves also to inspire a great respect for religion.</i>	200
	<i>The</i>

The CONTENTS.

<i>The physicks of the learned.</i>	201
<i>The systems of the world.</i>	202
<i>The natural philosophy of children.</i>	211
I. PLANTS, FLOWERS, FRUITS, and TREES.	213
PLANTS.	ibid.
FLOWERS:	214
FRUITS.	216
TREES.	217
II. ANIMALS.	218
FISH.	ibid.
BIRDS.	220
<i>Land animals.</i>	224
<i>The usefulness of these physical observations.</i>	229
ARTICLE IV. <i>Philosophy serves to inspire a great respect for religion.</i>	231

BOOK VI.

<i>Of the government of the classes and colleges</i>	234
THE INTRODUCTION.	ibid.
ARTICLE I. <i>The importance of good education of youth.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE II. <i>Whether a private or publick education ought to be preferred.</i>	242
<i>The Plan and division of this treatise.</i>	247

PART I.

<i>General instructions upon the education of youth.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE I. <i>What end we should aim at in education.</i>	248
ARTICLE II. <i>To study the character of children, in order to be able to manage them well.</i>	251
ARTICLE III. <i>To assume an immediate authority over the children.</i>	254
ARTICLE IV. <i>To make one's self beloved and feared.</i>	257
ARTICLE V. <i>Of correction.</i>	261
I. <i>The inconveniencies and dangers of correction.</i>	ibid.
II. <i>Rules to be observed in correction.</i>	264
ARTICLE VI. <i>Of reproofs.</i>	272
I. <i>The</i>	

The C O N T E N T S.

I. <i>The subject of a reprimand.</i>	Page 272
II. <i>The time of reprimanding.</i>	ibid.
III. <i>The manner of reprimanding.</i>	273
ARTICLE VII. <i>To reason with children; to prompt them on by the sense of honour; to make use of praises, rewards, and caresses.</i>	276
ARTICLE VIII. <i>To accustom children to a strict observance of truth.</i>	279
ARTICLE IX. <i>To accustom the boys to be polite, cleanly and punctual.</i>	281
ARTICLE X. <i>To make study agreeable.</i>	284
ARTICLE XI. <i>To grant the boys rest and recreation.</i>	287
ARTICLE XII. <i>To train up the boys to virtue by discourse and example.</i>	290
ARTICLE XIII. <i>Piety, religion, and zeal for the children's salvation.</i>	292

P A R T II.

Particular duties relating to the education of youth. 296

C H A P. I.

<i>Of the duties of the Principal.</i>	ibid.
ARTICLE I. <i>Of the diet of the students.</i>	297
ARTICLE II. <i>Of the studies.</i>	300
ARTICLE III. <i>Of the discipline of the college.</i>	302
ARTICLE IV. <i>Of education.</i>	309
ARTICLE V. <i>Of religion.</i>	314
1. <i>Instructions.</i>	315
2. <i>Of the use of the Sacraments.</i>	322
1. <i>Of Baptism.</i>	323
2. <i>Of the Eucharist.</i>	324
3. <i>Of Devotions.</i>	326

C H A P.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. II.

Of the duty of the Regents. 328

ARTICLE I. *Of the discipline of the classes.* 329

ARTICLE II. *To make the scholars appear in publick.* 330

I. *Of Exercises.* 331

2. *Of Tragedies.* 337

3. *Of Pronunciation.* 341

I. *Of the Voice.* 342

II. *Of Gesture.* 346

ARTICLE III. *Of compositions and publick actions.* 351

ARTICLE IV. *Of the studies of the Masters.* 355

ARTICLE V. *The application of some particular rules to the government of the classes.* *ibid.*

CHAP. III.

Of the duty of Parents. 365

CHAP. IV.

Of the duty of Preceptors. 374

CHAP. V.

Of the duty of the Scholars. 381

The conclusion of this work. 391

BOOKS Printed for C. Hitch.

AN Introduction to Geography, Astronomy, and Dialing: Containing the most useful Elements of the said Sciences, adapted to the meanest Capacity, by the Description and Uses of the Terrestrial and Cœlestial Globes: with an Introduction to Chronology. — The Third Edition, in which, besides many other great Additions, are about 20 Paradoxes belonging to the Globes entirely new, as also the Construction and Uses of Refracting and Reflecting Telescopes. Illustrated with 12 large Copper Plates. Price 4s. 6d. bound.

By GEORGE GORDON.

I have read this Book, and think it will be very useful to Beginners, J. T. Desaguliers, LL. D. F. R. S.

1. A Treatise of Algebra, with the Application of it to a Variety of Problems in Arithmetick, to Geometry, Trigonometry, and Conic Sections: With the several Methods of Solving and Constructing Equations of the higher Kind. By Christian Wolfius, F. R. S. Translated from the Latin. Price 5s.

2. An Historical and Philosophical Account of the BAROMETER, or Weather-Glass; wherein the Reason and Use of that Instrument, the Theory of the Atmosphere, and the Cases of its different Gravitation are assigned and explained; and a modest Attempt from thence made towards a rational Account and probable Judgment of the Weather. By Edward Saul, A. M. The second Edition. Price 1s. 6d.

3. The Description and Use of a complete Set or Case of Pocket Instruments: Containing the Construction of the several Lines laid down on the Sector and Plain Scale with their Application in Variety of Mathematical Problems. By William Webster. The Second Edition, corrected. Price 1s. 6d.

PART the THIRD.

Of Profane History.

The Continuation of the History of the Romans.

The third Piece of Roman History.

The space of three and fifty years, from the beginning of the second Punick War to the defeat of Perseus.

FOR the third portion of Roman history I take that term, which Polybius chose for the subject of his performance; I mean, the three and fifty years, which passed from the beginning of the second Punick war to the end of the Macedonian, which concluded with the overthrow and captivity of Perseus, and the destruction of his kingdom.

Polybius looks upon this interval as the most flourishing age of the Roman republick, an age which produced the greatest men, and displayed the most shining virtues, in which the greatest and most important events happened, and in a word, wherein the Romans began to enter upon the possession of that vast empire, which afterwards included almost every part of the then known world, and by a continual and very swift progress arrived at that degree of grandeur and power, which has made it the admiration of the whole universe.

VOL. IV.

B

Now,

Now, as the establishment of the Roman empire was, according to ^a Polybius, the most wonderful work of divine Providence, and could not be regarded as the effect of chance and a blind fortune, but as the consequence of a pre-conceived design, concerted with weight and measure, and conducted by an infallible wisdom, is it not, as the same author farther observes, a very commendable curiosity, and worthy the best understanding, to enquire what was the time, what the preparatives, what the means, and who the instruments, in carrying on so glorious and noble an enterprize to its execution?

This Polybius, who is the most judicious historian extant, and was himself a great soldier and politician, had shewn at large in the history he wrote, of which the small remains we have give us great reason to lament the loss of the rest. This I also shall endeavour to trace in this piece of the Roman history, though very briefly: I intend, however, to introduce into my discourse what I shall judge most beautiful in Polybius, Livy, and Plutarch, which are the originals from whence I shall extract the best part of what I have to say upon this subject, with reference either to the facts themselves, or the reflections I shall make upon them.



C H A P. I.

A narrative of the facts.

I SHALL begin with relating the principal events, which fell out in the time I am speaking of, that I may thereby give such of my readers, as are unacquainted with this branch of history, some slight idea of it.

^a Polyb. lib. i.

The beginning of the second Punick war and the successes of Hannibal.

b The beginning of the second Punick war, if we look only upon the date of time, was the taking of Saguntum by Hannibal, and the irruption he made into the country situate beyond the Ebro, which was allied to the people of Rome; but the real cause of it was the indignation of the Carthaginians at seeing themselves deprived of Sicily and Sardinia by treaties, which the sole necessity of the time and the ill condition of their affairs had extorted from them. The sudden death of Hamilcar hindered him from executing the design he had long been forming of taking revenge for these injuries. His son Hannibal, whom he had obliged to swear upon the altar, whilst yet but nine years old, that he would declare himself an enemy to the Romans as soon as he came to the age of doing it, entered into all his views, and inherited his hatred for the Romans, as well as his valour. He made very distant preparations for this great design, and when he thought himself in a condition to execute it, he opened it with the siege of Saguntum. And whether it was through idleness and negligence, or through prudence and wisdom, the Romans spent the time in different embassies, and left Hannibal an opportunity of taking the town.

c And for his part, he well knew how to make the best use of it. After he had settled all things to his mind, he left his brother Asdrubal in Spain to defend the country, and set out for Italy with an army of ninety thousand foot, and ten or twelve thousand horse. There was no obstacle great enough to discourage him, or stop his march. The Pyrenæan mountains, the crossing of the Rhone, a long march through Gaul, and the very difficult passage of the

b Liv. lib. xxi. n. 1. . . . 20.

c Ib. n. 21. . . . 38.

Alps, all gave way before his zeal and indefatigable resolution. Conqueror over the Alps, and in a manner over nature itself, he entered Italy, which he had resolved to make the theatre of the war. His troops were extremely lessened in their numbers, amounting to no more than twenty thousand foot and six thousand horse, but were full of confidence and courage.

A rapidity so inconceivable astonished the Romans, and broke all their measures. They had determined to carry the war abroad, and that one of their consuls should make head against Hannibal in Spain, whilst the other should march streight into Africa to lay siege to Carthage. But they were now obliged to lay aside these projects, and think of defending their own country. Publius Scipio the consul, who thought Hannibal still in the Pyrenæan mountains, when he had actually passed the Rhone, not being able to come up with him, was under a necessity of returning back from whence he came, to wait for, and fall upon him at his descent from the Alps, and in the mean while sent Cneius Scipio his brother into Spain against Asdrubal.

^d The first engagement was not far from the little river of Tesin. The speeches of the two generals to their armies are very entertaining. Livy has copied them from Polybius, but in a masterly way, by throwing in such strokes as make the copy equal to the original. The Carthaginians gained the victory. The Roman consul was wounded in the battle; ^e and his son, who was then scarce seventeen years old, saved his life. This was he, who afterwards conquered Hannibal, and was surnamed Africanus.

^f Upon the first news of this defeat, Sempronius the other consul, who was in Sicily, marched presently by order of the senate to the assistance of his col-

^d Ib. n. 33. 48.

^e Neque illum ætatis infirmitas interpellare valuit, quo minus duplici gloria conspicuam coronam,

imperatore simul & patre ex ipsa morte raptò, mereretur. Val. Max. lib. v. c. 2.

^f Ib. n. 51. 56.

legue, who was not yet well recovered of his wounds. That was his reason for hastening a battle, against the opinion of Scipio, in hopes of engrossing the whole glory of it to himself. Hannibal, who had good intelligence of all that passed in the Roman camp, having suffered Sempronius to gain some slight advantage in order to improve his temerity, gave him an opportunity of coming to a battle near the river of Trebia. He had placed his brother Mago in ambuscade in a very favourable post, and caused his army to use all necessary precaution against the famine and cold, which was then extreme. The Romans had been very negligent of either, and for that reason were soon overthrown, and put to flight; and Mago issuing from the place where he lay in ambush made a great slaughter of them.

^g Hannibal, to make the best use of his time and first victories, kept continually advancing, and approached every day nearer the centre of Italy. ^h But to come up the more speedily with the enemy, he was under a necessity of passing through a morass, where his army sustained incredible fatigues, and he lost an eye. Flaminius, one of the late nominated consuls, had left Rome without observing the usual omens. ⁱ He was a vain, rash, enterprising man, full of himself, and whose natural haughtiness was increased by the good success of his first consulship, and the declared favour of the people. It was plain enough, that as he neither consulted the Gods nor men, he would naturally abandon himself to the warmth and impetuosity of his genius; and Hannibal, to prompt that disposition, did not fail to irritate

^g Ib. n. 57—59 and 63.

^h Lib. xxii. n. 1—6.

ⁱ Consul ferox ab consulatu priore, & non modo legum ac patrum majestates, sed ne deorum quidem satis metuens erat. Hanc insitam ingenio ejus temeritatem fortuna prospero civilibus bellicif-

que rebus successu aluerat. Itaque satis apparebat, nec deos nec homines consulentem, ferociter omnia ac præproperè acturum: quoque pronior esset in vitia sua, agitare eum atque irritare Pœnus parat. Lib. xxii. n. 3.

and provoke him by ravaging and laying waste all the neighbouring country within his view. And this sufficed to make the consul resolve upon giving battle, notwithstanding the dissuasion of all the officers, who besought him to wait for the coming up of his colleague. The success was such, as they had foreseen, fifteen thousand Romans were left dead upon the spot, with Flaminius at their head, and rendered the lake of Thrasimene ever after famous by their bloody defeat.

FABIUS DICTATOR.

* When this sorrowful news was brought to Rome, the whole city was in great consternation. They expected every moment to see Hannibal at their gates. Fabius Maximus was chosen ^ldictator, who after he had discharged the duties of religion, and given such orders, as were necessary for the security of the city, went directly to the army, with a resolution not to hazard a battle, unless he was forced to it, or perfectly sure of the success. He kept his troops upon the tops of the mountains, without losing sight of Hannibal, never coming so near him as to be under a necessity of fighting, nor removing to such a distance, as to let him be out of his reach. He confined the soldiers strictly to the camp, never suffering them to quit it except for forage, and then only under a strong convoy. ^m He never engaged but in slight skirmishes, and then too with so much caution, that his troops had always the advantage. By this means he insensibly restored to them that resolution and confidence, of which the loss of three battles had deprived them, and encouraged them to rely as formerly upon their own courage and good fortune. The enemy soon perceived, that the Romans had been taught by their

^k Ib. n. 7—30.

^l Prodictator.

^m Neque universo periculo summa rerum committebatur, ut parva momenta levium certaminum ex

tuto ceptorum, finitimo receptu, assuefaciebant territum pristinis claudibus. militem, minus jam tandem aut virtutis aut fortunæ penitere suæ. Liv. lib. xxii. n. 12.

former

former defeats to make choice of a general, that was capable of making head against Hannibal; and Hannibal found, that he had more cause to be apprehensive of the prudent and regular conduct of the dictator, than of his making any bold or hazardous attacks.

Minucius, the general of the Roman horse, suffered the wise conduct of Fabius with more impatience than even Hannibal himself. As warm and passionate in his discourse as designs, he was continually railing at the dictator; his prudence and circumspection, he termed irresolution and fearfulness, and called his virtues by the names of such vices as approached the nearest to them; and by an artifice, which too often succeeds, raised his own reputation upon the ruin of that of his superior. And lastly, by intriguing and caballing with the people, he obtained that his own authority should be made equal with the dictator's, which till then had been unprecedented. But Fabius, fully assured, that the people, by making them equal in the command, did not put them upon an equality in the art of commanding, bore this injury with such moderation, as shewed that he could no more be conquered by his own countrymen than his enemies.

Minucius, in consequence of the equality of power betwixt him and Fabius, proposed to him that each should command their day, or even a longer space of time. But Fabius refused to comply with this condition, as it exposed the whole army to danger, whilst it should be under the direction of Minucius, and chose rather to divide the troops, that he might be at

n Sed non Annibalem magis infestum tam sanis consiliis habebat, quam magistratum equitum. . . Ferox rapidusque in consiliis, ac linguis immodicus, pro cunctatore segnem, & cauto timidum, affingens vicina virtutibus vitia, commellabat: premendorumque supe-

rriorum arte (quæ pessima ars nimis prosperis multorum successibus crevit) sese extollebat. Ib. n. 12.

o Satis fidens haud, quaquam cum imperii jure artem imperandi æquatam, cum invicto à civibus hostibusque animo ad exercitum, rediit. Ibid. n. 26.

least in a condition of preserving that part of them, which fell to his share.

What Fabius had foreseen soon came to pass. His colleague, eager and impatient for the battle, fell directly into the snare, which Hannibal had laid for him, and his army was upon the point of being cut to pieces. ^p The dictator, without losing time in useless reproaches, “Come, says he to his soldiers, “let us march to the assistance of Minucius, wrest the victory out of the hands of our enemies, and oblige our citizens to an acknowledgment of their mistake.” He arrived very opportunely, and forced Hannibal to sound a retreat, ^q who cried out as he was retiring, “that the cloud which had hung so long upon the tops of the mountains, had burst at last with a mighty noise and occasioned a terrible storm.”

So important a service, and in such a conjuncture, opened the eyes of Minucius, and brought him to a confession of his fault. To make instant reparation, he went immediately with his army to Fabius’s tent, and calling him his father and deliverer, told him, he was come to put himself under his command again, and ^r to make void a decree, which was more burthensome than honourable to him. The soldiers did the same, and nothing was to be seen on both sides but mutual embraces, and the most lively expressions of thankfulness and gratitude; and ^s the rest of the day, which was very near proving so fatal to the republick, was spent in diversions and rejoicings.

^p Aliud jurgandi succensendiq; tempus erit; nunc signa extra vallum proferre. Victoriâ hosti extorqueamus, confessionem erroris civibus. Ib. n. 29.

^q Annibalem ex acie redeuntem dixisse ferunt, tandem eam nubem, quæ sedere in jugis mon-

tium solita sit, cum procella imbrem dedisse. Ib. n. 30.

^r Plebiscitum, quo oneratus magis quàm honoratus sum, primus antiquo abrogoque, n. 30.

^s Lætusque dies, ex admodum tristi paulò ante ac prope execrabili, factus est, n. 30.

The battle of Cannæ.

The most famous action of Hannibal, and which in all probability must have ruined for ever the power of Rome, was the battle of Cannæ. L. Æmilius Paulus, and C. Terentius Varro, were appointed consuls at Rome. This last, though of a base and mean extraction, had found means to obtain the consulship, through the great wealth his father had left him, and his artifice in gaining the favour of the people by declaring openly against the great men, without any other merit than that of an unlimited ambition, and an equal opinion of his own ability. He loudly exclaimed, "that the only way to perpetuate the war was to place such as Fabius at the head of the army; that for his part, he could put an end to it the very first day he saw the enemy." His colleague, who was very sensible that rashness, besides the unreasonableness of it, had hitherto been always very unsuccessful, was in a quite different way of thinking. Fabius, upon his departure for the campaign, confirmed him still farther in these sentiments, and often repeated to him, that the only way to conquer Hannibal was to watch occasions and spin out the war to the utmost. "But," said he, your countrymen will take pains to make this method impracticable to you, even more than your enemies. Your soldiers will in this con-

t Liv. lib. xxii. n. 34—53.

u His father is said to have been a butcher.

v Temeritatem, præterquam quod stulta sit, infelicem etiam ad locorum fuisse. Liv. lib. xxii. n. 38.

w Hæc una salutis via, L. Paule, quam difficilem infestamque cives sibi † magis quam hostes faciunt. Idem enim tui, quod hostium milites, volent; idem Varro consul

Romanus, quod Annibal Pænus imperator, cupiet. Duobus ductibus unus resistas oportet. Resistens autem, adversus famam rumorefque hominum si satis firmus steteris; si te neque collegæ vana gloria, neque tua falsa infamia moverit. — Sine timidum pro cauto, tardum pro considerato, † imbellem, pro perito belli vocent. Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent. Ib. n. 39.

† I think it should be read tibi.

† Imbellis must here signify rudis in bello, imperitus belli.

“ spire with the Carthaginians ; Varro and Hannibal
 “ will think alike upon this subject. Your only way
 “ will be to stand unmoved against the shock of po-
 “ pular rumours and reports, and not be diverted
 “ from your resolution by the false glory of your col-
 “ league, or the false infamy, which they will industri-
 “ ously throw upon you. Instead of a cautious, vigilant,
 “ and able General, let them represent you as cow-
 “ ardly, indolent and ignorant. I would rather have
 “ you dreaded by a wise enemy, than applauded by
 “ foolish citizens.”

x It was customary among the Romans in time of
 war to raise every year four legions, each of which
 consisted of four thousand foot, and three thousand
 horse. The allies, that is to say the people bordering
 upon the territories of Rome. supplied a like number
 of foot, with double and sometimes treble the number
 of horse. And these troops were usually divided be-
 tween the two consuls, who made war separately, and
 in different countries. But as this was an affair of the
 last importance, the two consuls marched together, the
 number both of the Roman and Latin forces was
 doubled, and every legion augmented with an addition
 of a thousand foot, and an hundred horse.

The strength of Hannibal's army lay in his horse,
 for which reason L. Paulus declined engaging in the
 open plain. Besides, the Carthaginians were in great
 distress for want of provisions, and could not possibly
 subsist ten days in the country, so that the Spanish
 troops were upon the point of disbanding. The ar-
 mies continued some days in view of each other till
 at last after different motions, Varro, notwithstanding
 the remonstrances of his colleague, came to an en-
 gagement near the little village of Cannæ. The ground
 was very favourable to the Carthaginians; and Han-
 nibal, who knew how to improve every circumstance,
 drew up his army in such a manner, that the wind

y Vulturinus, which rose at a certain regular time, blew directly upon the faces of the Romans during the battle, and poured a shower of dust upon them. The battle was fought. I shall not relate the particulars of it; the curious reader may find them in Polybius and Livy, and especially in the former, who being himself a soldier, must have succeeded better than the other in relating all the circumstances of so memorable an action. The victory was long disputed, and at last became complete on the side of the Carthaginians. The consul L. Paulus was mortally wounded, and above fifty thousand men left dead in the field, and among them the best part of the officers. Varro, the other consul, escaped to Venusia, with no more than seventy horsemen.

Maharbal, one of the Carthaginian generals, advised Hannibal to march directly to Rome without losing time, promising him that within five days he should sup in the Capitol. And upon the other's reply, that he must take time to consider of that; "I see," says "Maharbal, the Gods have not given the same man all talents at once. You know how to conquer, Hannibal; not how to improve the victory." ^a And indeed many are of opinion, that Rome and the Empire were both saved by that delay.

It is easy to comprehend how great the consternation was at Rome, upon the news of this bloody defeat. However they did not lose courage. After having implored the assistance of the Gods by publick prayers and sacrifices, the magistrates encouraged by the prudent counsels and firm resolution of Fabius, made all proper dispositions; and provided for the security of the city. They immediately raised four legions, and a thousand horse, and granted a dispen-

y It is a wind blowing from the South, which way the Romans were turned.

z Tum Maharbal, non omnia nimirum eidem dii dedere. Vin-

cere scis, Annibal; Victoria uti nescis. Liv. lib. xxii. n. 51.

a Mora ejus diei satis creditur saluti fuisse urbi atque imperio. Ib.

sation of age to several, that were not quite seventeen years old. The allies also raised new levies. Ten Roman officers, that were dismissed by Hannibal upon their *parole*, came to Rome to require a ransom for the prisoners. But, though the republick was in great distress for soldiers, they constantly refused to redeem them, that they might not injure the Roman discipline, which punished without pity whoever voluntarily submitted to the enemy; and they chose rather to arm the slaves they bought of private persons to the number of eight thousand, and the prisoners confined for debts or crimes, which amounted to six thousand more; ^b the convenient taking place of the decent and honest, says the historian, in this sad conjuncture.

At Rome the zeal of particular persons and regard for the publick shone out at this time in a wonderful manner. But the case was not the same with the allies. The preceding losses had not been able to shake their fidelity; but this last stroke, which as they thought must determine the ruin of the republick, they could not withstand, and several of them went over to the conqueror's side. And yet neither the loss of so many troops, nor the revolt of so many of their allies, could induce the Roman people to give any ear to an accommodation. ^c Instead of losing courage, they never shewed so great magnanimity; and when the consul returned to Rome after so considerable an overthrow, whereof he had been the principal cause, all the orders of the state went out to meet him, and returned him thanks for not having despaired of the republick; whereas at Carthage, no punishment would have been great enough for a general after such a disgrace.

^b Ad ultimum prope, desperatæ reipublicæ auxilium, cum honesta utilibus cedunt, descendit. Liv. lib. xxiii. n. 14.

^c Adeo magno animo civitas fuit, ut consuli ex tanta clade, cujus ipse causa maxima fuisset, re-

deunti, & obviam itum frequenter ab omnibus ordinibus sit, & gratiæ actæ quod de republica non desperasset: cui, si ductor Carthaginensium fuisset, nihil recusandum supplicii foret. Lib. xxii. n. 61.

Capua was one of the allied cities, which surrendered to Hannibal : But the stay he made there with his troops during the winter proved very fatal to him. That manly courage, which no misfortunes, no fatigues, had been able to subdue, was entirely enervated by the pleasures of Capua, which the soldiers ran into with the greater gust from being the less accustomed to them. This fault of Hannibal, in the opinion of good judges, was greater than the mistake in not marching directly to Rome after the battle of Cannæ. For the delay might seem only to have retarded the victory, whereas this last circumstance absolutely lost him the power of conquering. * Thus Capua was to Hannibal what Cannæ had been to the Romans.

Scipio chosen General, restores the affairs of Spain.

The death of the two Scipio's, the father and uncle of him I am about to speak of, seemed likely to ruin entirely the Roman affairs in Spain, which hitherto had been very successful. 'Tis a question, whether it occasioned greater mourning at Rome, or in Spain. For the defeat of the two armies, the almost certain loss of so considerable a province, and the view of the public ills, made up a part of the citizens grief ; d whilst Spain regretted and lamented their generals, and Cn. Scipio in particular, who had governed them long, and was the first who taught them, and made them relish the Roman justice and moderation.

c Quos nulla mali vicerat vis, perdere nimia bona ac voluptates immodicæ : & eo impensius, quo avidius ex insolentia in eas se merserant. — Majusque id peccatum ducis apud peritos artium militarium habitum est, quàm quòd non ex Cannensi acie protinus ad urbem Romanam duxisset. Illa enim cunctatio distulisse modò victoriam videri potuit ; hic error vires ade-

missæ ad vincendum. Lib. xliii. n. 18.

* Capuam Annibali Cannas fuisse. Ib. n. 45.

d Hispaniæ ipsos lugebant desiderabantque duces : Cneum tamen magis, quo diutius præfuerat eis, priorque & favorem occupaverat, & specimen justitiæ temperantiæque Romanæ primus dederat. Lib. xlv. n. 36.

Tears

* Tears flowed afresh at Rome, when they met to appoint a fucceffor to thofe two great men. The affairs of that province appeared fo desperate, that no body prefumed to offer himfelf as a candidate for the place; and the mournful filence, which reigned in the whole affembly, made them more fenfibly regret the lofs they had fufained. In this univerfal confternation, Publius Corn. Scipio, a youth of four and twenty, the fon of Publius who was lately flain, riles up, and ftanding in an higher place than the reft, offers to go and command in Spain, if the people would accept of his fervice. This courageous offer gives life and joy to the affembly, and all without exception unanimoufly elect him general. But as foon as the firft heat was over, and the people reflected upon Scipio's age, they began to repent of what they had done. Some even drew a fcornful prefage from his name and family, when they confidered that they fent him into a province, where he was to fight over the graves of his father and uncle. Scipio perceiving they grew cool, made a fpeech to them fo full of confidence, and fpoke with fo much difcretion of his own age, and the honour they had done him, as alfo of the war that he undertook, that he at once entirely difperfed the people's fears, and rekindled the ardour, with which they had conferred the command upon him. The fame Scipio fome years before having demanded the edilefhip before the time expreffed by the laws, and the tribunes for that reafon oppofing his demand, "If the people," fays he, think proper to chufe me Edile, "I am old enough."

Scipio's arrival in Spain infpired the troops with frefh courage. ‡ They difcerned with joy the lines and re-

e Liv. lib. xxvi. n. 18, 19.

f Si me, inquit, omnes Quirites Ædilem facere volunt, fatis annorum habeo. Lib. xxv. n. 2.

g Brevi faciam, ut quemadmodum nunc nofcitatis in me patris

patruique fimilitudinem oris vultusque, & lineamenta corporis; ita ingenii, fidei, virtutisque exemplum expreffum ad effigiem vobis reddam. Lib. xxvi. n. 3.

semblance of his father and uncle in his countenance ; and in the first speech he made them he told them, that he hoped they would soon likewise discern in him the same spirit, the same courage, and the same integrity.

His promises were not without effect. His first enterprize was the siege of Carthageria, the richest and at the same time the strongest city in Spain. It was the repository of the enemies arms, their arsenal, magazine, treasury, and place of security, where they laid up whatever was necessary for the subsistence of their armies, and where all the hostages of Princes and people were also detained. Thus the conquest of this city alone would in a manner make him the master of all Spain. This important and difficult expedition, which till then had been looked upon as impossible, cost him only one day. ^h The booty was immense ; infomuch that Carthageria itself was regarded as the least part of the acquisition. Scipio began by returning thanks to the Gods, not only for having made him master of the most opulent city in the country in one day, but for having before amassed in it the strength and riches of almost all Africa and of all Spain. He then made his acknowledgments to the troops, and loaded them with praises, rewards and honours, according to their condition and merit.

ⁱ Then causing the prisoners to be brought before him. He spoke very obligingly to them, and comforted them, by representing to them, “ that they “ were fallen into the hands of the Roman people, “ who chose rather to gain the affections of mankind “ by benevolence and justice, than subject them by “ fear, and to bind nations to them by the honour-

^h Ut minimum omnium, inter tantas opes belli captas, Carthago ipsa fuerat. Lib. xxvi. n. 47.

ⁱ Scipio, vocatis obsidibus, universos bonum animum habere jussit: venisse eos in populi Romani

potestatem qui beneficio quam metu obligare homines malit: exterasque gentes fide ac societate junctas habere, quam tristi subjectas servitio, Lib. xxvi. n. 49.

“able title of friends and allies, than reduce them to the sad and shameful condition of slaves.”

It was on this occasion, that a lady venerable for her age and birth, the wife of Mandonius, brother to Indibilis King of the Illegetæ, came and threw herself at Scipio's feet with several young Princesses daughters of Indibilis, and others of the same quality, and besought him to order his guards to take a particular care of them. Scipio, who did not at first understand her meaning, answered that they should want for nothing. The lady then resuming her discourse, “That, ^k says she, is not our present concern; for in the condition to which our fortune has reduced us, with what ought we not to be contented? I am under an uneasiness of a very different kind when I consider the youth and beauty of these captives; for as for my own part, my age secures me against all apprehensions of fear and danger?” And at the same time she pointed to the young Princesses, who all revered her as their mother. “My own honour and the glory of the Roman people,” replied Scipio, “would engage me to take care, that what the whole world respects, should be regarded amongst us: But you give me new reason to be particularly careful in that point, from the virtuous attention I observe in you to preserve only your honour amidst so many other subjects of fear.” After this discourse he committed them to the care of an officer of approved wisdom, and ordered him to treat them with as much respect as if they were the friends or allies of the Romans.

^k Haud magni ista facimus, inquit; quid enim huic fortunæ non satis est? Alia me cura ætatem harum intuentem, (nam ipsa jam extra periculum injuriæ muliebris sum) stimulat. Liv. lib. xxvi. n. 49.

! Tum Scipio: Mearum populique

Romani disciplinæ causa facerem, inquit, ne quid, quod sanctum usquam esset, apud nos violaretur. Nunc, ut id curem impensius, vestra quoque virtus dignitasque facit, quæ ne in malis quidem oblitæ decoris matronalis estis. Ibid.

After

After this they brought him a Princess of exquisite beauty, who was betrothed to Allucius Prince of the Celtiberians. He immediately sent for her parents and the person designed for her husband, and told the latter that his bride had been kept in his house with the same decency as she could have been in her father's: "And I have used her thus," adds he, that I might be able to make you a present worthy of you and of me. Neither do I ask you any other acknowledgment for it, except that you become the friend of the Roman people. If you think me the man of probity that these nations have experienced my father and my uncle to have been, be assured, that there are many others like us in Rome, and that there is no people this day upon earth, whose friendship you ought more carefully to desire for you and yours, or whose enmity you ought more to stand in dread of." As the parents of the lady pressed Scipio to accept of a considerable sum which they had brought for her ransom, and had laid all that gold and silver at his feet, "This sum, says he to Allucius, I add to the portion you was to receive from your father-in-law," and obliged him to take it. As soon as the Prince was returned into his own country, he proclaimed the great virtues of Scipio wherever he went, saying, "that a young man resembling the Gods was come into Spain, conquering all before him by force of arms, and still more by kindness and civility;" and soon after raising a body of troops amongst his vassals, he returned to join him with fifteen hundred horse.

e Fuit sponsa tua apud me eadem, qua apud soceros tuos parentisque suos, verecundia. Servata tibi est, ut inviolatum & dignum me teque dari tibi donum posset. Hanc mercedem unam pro eo munere pacifcor; amicus populo Romano sis; & si me virum bonum credis esse, quales patrem patruumque meum jam antè hæ gentes

norant, scias multos nostri similes in civitate Romana esse: nec ulum in terris populum hodie dici posse, quem minus tibi hostem tuisque esse velis, aut amicum malis. Liv. lib. xxvi. n. 50.

f Venisse diis simillimum juvenem, vincentem omnia cum armis, tum benignitate ac beneficiis. Lib. xxvi. n. 50.

Scipio,

Scipio, having spent the winter in gaining the affections of the people, partly by making them presents, and partly by sending back their hostages and prisoners, took the field as early as the season would admit. The two Princes we have mentioned, Indibilis, and Mandonius, joined him with their troops, ^g and declaring that their persons only had hitherto remained with the enemy, but their inclination had been where they knew that virtue and justice were had in honour, they surrendered to him, and put themselves under his protection. Their wives and children were then brought out to them, and the excess of joy on both sides not allowing them to speak for a long while, was only expressed by tears and embraces.

Asdrubal, terrified with the rapid successes of the Roman army, thought the only means of putting a stop to them was by coming to a battle. This was what Scipio wanted and had well prepared for. Accordingly they came to an engagement. The Carthaginians were beaten and left above eight thousand men upon the field. Asdrubal fled towards the Pyrenæan mountains, in order to join his brother Hannibal in Italy. ^h 'Twas after this victory of Scipio's, that the people charmed with his valour and moderation, would have given him the title of King. Scipio told them that this name, which was so much revered by all other nations, was held in detestation by the Romans. That for his part, he was satisfied with having royal inclinations; that if they considered them as what did most honour to man, they might content themselves with ascribing them to him in secret, without giving him the name they were called by. These people, although Barbarians, were thoroughly convinced of his greatness of soul, in despising a character which was the admiration and envy of the rest of mankind.

^g Itaque corpus duntaxat suum ad id tempus apud eos (Carthaginienses) fuisse: animum jam pri-

dem ibi esse, ubi jus ac fas crederet coli. Lib. xxvii. n. 17.

^h Liv. lib. xxvii. n. 19.

Scipio dispatched his brother to Rome, with the news of his having conquered Spain. But he carried his views much farther, and considered this conquest only as a prelude and preparation for that of all Africa.

ⁱ Scipio's valour was not his only virtue, he had a wonderful address in conciliating esteem, and bringing over others into his views by the arts of insinuation, as he shewed in his famous interview with Syphax King of Numidia, in which ^k Asdrubal was present; who owned, that though he had formed to himself an idea of the military virtues of Scipio, he appeared to him still greater and more admirable in this conference, than he had ever done before.

Scipio returns to Rome, is chosen consul, and prepares for the conquest of Africa.

^l The fame of Scipio's victories and great virtues had got before him to Rome, and inclined all men in his favour. As soon as he arrived there he was chosen consul by general consent, and the province of Sicily assigned him. This lay directly in his road to Africa, and he made no scruple to own that his views and designs tended thither.

Fabius Maximus, either through an excess of circumspection, which was suitable enough to his character, or through mere jealousy, employed all his interest and eloquence in the senate to oppose him, and alledged several in appearance very strong reasons against him. Scipio refuted them all, and concluded the dispute by declaring that he would submit to the judgment of the Senate, upon which it was decreed that he should have Sicily for his province, with leave to pass into Africa, if he thought it for the good of the republick.

ⁱ Liv. lib. xxviii. n. 18.

^k This Asdrubal was not Han-

nibal's brother.

^l Liv. lib. xxviii. n. 38.—46.

He lost no time, and immediately set out for Sicily, still keeping in view his design of carrying the war into the enemy's country. Lælius was gone into Africa with some troops; and it was rumoured, that Scipio himself was arrived there with his army. Carthage trembled and thought herself lost. She was soon undeceived, but however the Carthaginians dispatched couriers to the generals in Italy, with orders to use their utmost endeavours to oblige Scipio to be recalled. Masinissa, who had entered into alliance with the Romans, and was very powerful in Africa, made warm instances to him to come thither, and even reproached him for having so long disappointed the expectation of his allies. Scipio did not stand in need of such remonstrances. He instantly made preparations for the war, and hastened his departure with all possible expedition.

Scipio's enemies in the mean while had spread a report at Rome, that he spent his time at Syracuse in luxury and pleasures; that the garrison of the city, after his example, wallowed in debauchery, and that licentiousness and riot reigned throughout the whole army. Fabius giving credit to these reports, broke out into violent invectives against Scipio, and advised that he should immediately be recalled. The Senate acted with more wisdom and moderation, and first resolved to be satisfied of the truth of the fact. They appointed commissioners, who when they came upon the spot, found all things in wonderful order, the troops perfectly well disciplined, the magazines furnished with provisions, the arsenals stocked with arms and clothes, the galleys extremely well equipped, and ready to set sail. This spectacle filled them with joy and admiration. They concluded, that if Carthage could be conquered, it must be by such a general and such an army; and they pressed Scipio in the name of the senate, from whom they had received their orders,

^m Nihil parvum, sed Carthagini- Lib. xxix. n. 1.

nis jam excidia agitabat animo. ⁿ Liv. lib. xxix. n. 19—25.

to hasten his departure, and gratify the expectation of the public, as soon as possible.

° Accordingly he set forward, and the Sicilians ran in troops to be witnesses of his departure. Scipio, who had already acquired such reputation by his victories, and in the opinion of the people was destined to still greater events, drew upon him the eyes and attention of all mankind. They principally admired the boldness of the scheme, which only he was capable of forming, and had never entered into the head of any other general, of reducing Hannibal to quit Italy by an expedition against Carthage, of carrying the war into Africa itself, and ending it there. Scipio first offering prayers and libations to the Gods at the stern of his ship, set sail with the acclamations, vows, and benedictions of the whole people.

° The passage was short and favourable, and as soon as Scipio saw the coast of Africa, lifting up his eyes and hands towards heaven, he besought the Gods to favour his enterprize. The report of his landing threw the whole coast into consternation, and terrified even Carthage itself.

Scipio first ravaged all the plain country, and then made himself master of a very opulent city in Africa, where he took eight thousand prisoners. But what gave him the greatest satisfaction was the arrival of Masinissa, a very brave Prince, who joined him with a considerable body of horse.

° The Carthaginians presently sent Asdrubal against him, with an army of above thirty thousand men; but their great dependance was upon Syphax, who actually came up very soon after, with fifty thousand foot and ten thousand horse. His arrival obliged Scipio to raise the siege of Utica, a maritime city, which he had begun to attack.

° When the winter was over, Scipio resumed the siege, Asdrubal was encamped very near him, and Sy-

o Ib. n. xxvi. 27.

p N. 28.

q N. 35.

r Lib. xxx. n. 3—17.

phax lay not far off. The last offered some conditions of peace, of which the principal was, that the Romans should quit Africa, and Hannibal return from Italy. Nothing in reality could be more opposite to the views and designs of Scipio, but he seemed to give ear to those proposals, and designedly protracted the negotiation by raising every day some fresh difficulty. In the several interviews between the parties, he had disguised some experienced officers in the habit of slaves, with orders, when they came to the enemy, to examine carefully all that was to be seen of the two camps, their extent, the distance between them, and the materials which the soldiers barracks were built with, and withal to take notice of the discipline observed among them, with the orders of their guard by day, and their watch by night. When he was fully informed of all he wanted to know, he broke off the truce under pretence that his council advised him to make peace only with Syphax; and to remove all suspicion from the enemy, he made shew as if he intended to attack Utica by sea. When he judged it time to execute his enterprize, he ordered Lælius and Masinissa, to set fire to the camp of Syphax, whilst he himself did the same to that of Asdrubal. As night came on, they marched out with their fires. The measures which Scipio had taken were so just, that his design succeeded beyond his expectation. The two powerful armies of the enemy were destroyed by fire and sword, and scarce three thousand escaped out of the fifty thousand and upwards, of which they consisted. Those who attempted to pass from one camp to the other, as judging that they alone had been surpris'd, fell into an ambuscade, which he had laid in the midst of the space that divided the two camps. The spoils were immense. Several cities presently surrendered to him of their own accord; and a second victory gained over the same generals, and the new army they had raised with great difficulty, made Scipio absolutely master of the whole country.

Lælius

Lælius
besiege
then
was
heard
sently
the C
s P
Carth
The
had re
treme
by th
marc
drew
fall t
“ fro
“ of
to his
the g
ed fr
to his
Asdr
head
He v
of It
whic
bitter
him
ever

s L
t A
potium
mente
nam.
u l
lacrym
torum
quem
causa

Lælius and Masinissa pursued Syphax to his capital, besieged him there, and took him prisoner. It was then the famous story of Sophonisba fell out. Syphax was carried to Rome, and as soon as the people there heard the news of so complete a victory, they presently ran into all the temples to return thanks to the Gods.

* Hannibal at the same time received orders from Carthage, which obliged him to depart immediately. The face of affairs was much changed in Italy. He had received several blows which had weakened him extremely. He had the mortification to see Capua taken by the Romans almost before his eyes; nor could his march towards Rome divert them from the siege. He drew near the city without any effect, and then let fall this expression, "That the Gods sometimes took from him the inclination, and sometimes the power of taking Rome." But what was most grievous to him, he learned that at the same time he lay before the gates of the city, a body of recruits was dispatched from thence for Spain. But the finishing stroke to his misfortunes was the entire defeat of his brother Asdrubal's army, of which he was informed by the head of that general's being thrown into his camp. He was therefore obliged to retire to the extremities of Italy, where he^u received his orders from Carthage, which he could not hear without breaking out into bitter sighs and tears, foaming with indignation to see himself thus forced to abandon his prey. No exile ever expressed a greater concern for quitting his own,

s Lib. xxx. n. 20.

t Audita vox Annibalis fertur, potiundæ sibi urbis Romæ modò mentem non dari, modò fortunam. Lib. xxvi. n. 11.

u Frendens, gemenisque, ac vix lacrymis temperans, dicitur legatorum verba audisse. Rarò quemquam alium, patriam exilii causa relinquentem, magis mœstum

abiisse ferunt, quàm Annibalem hostium terra excedentem. Respexisse sæpe Italiæ littora, Deos hominesque accusantem, in se quoque ac suum ipsius caput execratum, QUOD NON CRUENTUM AB CANNENSIS VICTORIA MILITEM ROMAM DUXISSET. Lib. xxx. n. 20.

than

than Hannibal did for quitting his enemy's country: he often turned his eyes towards the coasts of Italy, complaining both of the Gods and men, and pronounced a thousand execrations against himself, for not leading his soldiers directly to Rome, whilst they were fresh reeking with Roman blood after the battle of Cannæ.

^w When he arrived in Africa, he proposed an interview with Scipio. The time and place were agreed on. These two generals, who were not only the most illustrious of their time, but might deservedly be parallel'd with the greatest Princes and most famous commanders that ever were, stood silent for some time as astonished at the sight of each other, and taken up with mutual admiration. At last Hannibal broke silence, and commending Scipio in a very artful manner, laid before him a lively description of the disorders of war, and the ills it had brought both upon the conquerors and the conquered. He exhorted him not to be dazzled with the splendor of his victories; that though hitherto he had been successful, he ought to apprehend the inconstancy of fortune; that without going far for examples, he himself, who was now speaking to him, was a flagrant proof of it; that Scipio was then what Hannibal had been at Thrasimene and Cannæ; that he ought to make a better use of the opportunity, than he had done himself, by making peace at a time, when he was master of the conditions. He concluded with declaring that the Carthaginians were ready to give up Sicily, Sardinia and Spain, to the Romans, with all the islands that lay between Africa and Italy; that they could now resolve, since the Gods would have it so, to confine themselves within the limits of Africa, whilst they saw the Romans masters of so many foreign kingdoms, both by sea and land.

^x Scipio answered in fewer words, but with no less dignity. He reproached the Carthaginians with their

^w Lib. xxx. n. 29, 30.

^x N. 33.
perfidiousness

perfidiousness in plundering certain Roman gallies before the truce was expired. He imputed all the ill of the two wars to them only and their injustice. And then thanking Hannibal for his advice in regard to the uncertainty of human events, he concluded by bidding him prepare for the battle, unless he chose rather to accept of the conditions he had already offered, to which he made some addition by way of punishment for the breach of the truce.

^y The generals then each of them encouraged their troops. Hannibal enumerated the victories he had gained over the Romans, the generals he had slain, and the armies he had cut to pieces. Scipio represented the conquest of Spain, their success in Africa, and the confession the enemies made of their own weakness, by demanding a peace. ^z And all this he said with the air and tone of a conqueror. No armies had ever more powerful motives to distinguish themselves in the field. This day was to give the finishing stroke to the glory of the one or the other of the generals, and decide whether Rome or Carthage should give law to the nations.

^b I do not undertake to describe the order of battle, nor the valour of the two armies. It is easy to imagine that two such experienced officers omitted nothing that might contribute to the victory. After a very obstinate engagement, the Carthaginians were at last obliged to give way, leaving twenty thousand of their men upon the field of battle; a like number being taken prisoners by the Romans. Hannibal escaped during the tumult, and returning to Carthage after six and thirty years absence, he owned himself conquered beyond remedy, and that Carthage had no other part to take, but to sue for peace upon any conditions. Scipio gave him great commendations, and

^y N. 32.

^z Celsus hæc corpore, vultuque ita læto, ut vicisse jam crederes, dicebat. Lib. xxx. n. 32.

^a Roma an Carthago jura gentibus darent, ante crastinam noctem scituros. Ib. n. 32.

^b N. 34, 35.

declared that Hannibal had exceeded himself in that day's conduct, though his success had not been answerable to his valour.

^c For his part he knew how to make the best of his victory and the consternation of his enemies. He ordered one of his lieutenants to march with his army to Carthage by land, whilst he conducted the fleet in person to its walls. When he was not far off, he was met by a vessel covered over with ribbands and olive branches, with ten ambassadors in it of the most considerable persons in Carthage that were coming to implore his mercy. He sent them back without any answer, only ordered them to attend upon him at Tuneta, where he should stop. The Carthaginian deputies, to the number of thirty, came to wait upon Scipio at the place appointed, and asked peace of him in very submissive terms. He called his council together, and advised with them what step he should take. The major part were of opinion that he should destroy Carthage, and treat the inhabitants with the utmost severity. But the consideration of the time that the siege of so well fortified a city would take up, and Scipio's apprehension of having a successor appointed him during the siege, made him incline to clemency. He granted them a truce, and allowed them time to send deputies to Rome.

^d The deputies being arrived there, and laying open the occasion of their coming, the senate and people gave Scipio full powers to act as he thought best, with permission to bring back his army after the conclusion of the treaty. The peace was accordingly concluded at last. The Carthaginians gave up to Scipio above five hundred vessels, which he caused to be burnt within sight of Carthage. A mournful spectacle for the inhabitants of that unfortunate city. He then caused such of the Latin allies to be beheaded, and of the Roman citizens to be hanged, as had gone over to the enemy, and were now delivered up.

c N. 36—38.

d N. 40—43.

Thus

Thus ended the second Punic war, which had lasted full seventeen years. Scipio returned to Rome through infinite crowds of various nations, whom curiosity to see him on his passage had drawn together; and the most magnificent triumph was decreed for him, that had ever been seen at Rome. Nothing was wanting to it but the presence of King Syphax, who died at Tivoli some days before. The surname of Africanus was then given him; but whether by the army, or by the people, or by his friends and those of his own family, is uncertain. This however is sure, that he was the first to whom the honour of taking the name of a conquered nation was granted.

The war against Philip King of Macedon.

This war began immediately upon the conclusion of that with Carthage, and lasted only four years. The second Punic war was the occasion and cause of this. Philip, as is usual with politic Princes, who regulate their conduct by their interests, and pay a greater regard to advantage than to equity in their undertakings, seeing two such powerful states at variance as the Carthaginians and Romans, had waited for the decision of fortune before he declared himself on either side, as being fully resolved to join with the strongest. His interest was the more concerned in this war, as Italy lay near his dominions, which were divided from it only by the Ionian sea. Three considerable victories gained by Hannibal one after another, made him judge that the war would end in his favour, and determined him to embrace his party. He

e N. 45.

f In hanc dimicationem duorum
opulentissimorum in terris populo-
rum omnes reges gentesque ani-
mos intenderant: inter quos Phi-
lippos Macedonum rex Is,
patrius populi mallet victoriam esse,
incertis adhuc viribus, fluctuatus a-

nimo fuerat. Posteaquam tertia
jam pugna, tertia victoria cum
Poenis erat, ad fortunam inclina-
vit, legatosque ad Annibalem mi-
sit. Liv. lib. 23. n. 33.

g Liv. lib. xxiii. n. 33. 34. &
38, 39.

therefore sent ambassadors to him, but by good fortune they were taken by the Romans, upon their return home with letters from Hannibal to Philip upon them, and carried to Rome. This happened soon after the news of the bloody defeat at Cannæ. ^h The senate was sensible that their dangers must considerably increase by the addition of the Macedonian war to that of Carthage. However, instead of being discouraged by such an apprehension, the Romans turned their thoughts wholly upon the proper means of carrying the war into Macedonia, that they might thereby hinder Philip from passing into Italy: The taking of the ambassadors gave them time for it. Philip was under a necessity of sending others, who at last returned to him with the treaty they had concluded with Hannibal. ⁱ Polybius has preserved it entire, and it well deserves to be read. There is mention made in it of all the Gods of both parties, under whose inspection this treaty was made; and it is particularly expressed that Hannibal expected an happy conclusion of the war from the assistance of the Gods.

The Romans did not fail to send a fleet against Philip, which took off his inclination for passing into Italy, by obliging him to think of defending his own country. This Prince, during the Punic war, had employed his time in making expeditions into Greece, where under pretence of supporting the Achaëans against their enemies the Ætolians, he made himself master of several considerable cities.

* As soon as peace had been concluded with the Carthaginians at Rome, the first thing that fell under their deliberation was the affair with Philip: The complaints of the Athenians, who implored the assistance of the Romans, occasioned it; and it was decreed that war

^h Graves cura Patres incessit, cernentes quanta vix tolerantibus Panicum bellum Macedonici belli moles instaret. Cui tamen adeo non succubuerunt, ut extemplo a-

gitaretur quemadmodum ultro inferendo bello averterent ab Italia hostem. Lib. xxiii. n. 38.

ⁱ Polyb. lib. vii. p. 502.

^k Liv. lib. xxxi. n. 1, &c.

should be declared against Philip. ^l And the Romans, who were always attentive to matters of religion, especially in the entrance upon new wars, omitted nothing which was usually practised, and ordered public prayers and sacrifices to be offered up in all the temples of the Gods.

The consul appointed to march into Macedonia set forward in the beginning of the spring. I shall not give here a particular account of all that passed during the course of the war. Peace was several times proposed, and several interviews had, but all to no purpose. ^m At last the battle of Cynocephalus decided the fate of Philip. The pro-consul T. Quintius Flaminius commanded the Roman army. The Macedonians were conquered, and the King obliged to fly. His first care in that moment of trouble and confusion was to send to Larissa to burn all his papers, lest they should prove prejudicial to his friends and allies, in case they fell into the hands of the Romans; and ⁿ Polybius takes notice of this particular, as a proof of this Prince's wisdom and prudence in adversity; whereas before his prosperity, having filled him with vanity and pride, had changed the discretion and moderation of his conduct in the beginning of his reign into violence and tyranny.

^o Philip then turned his thoughts towards peace in earnest. He found Flaminius very much disposed to it; as it was then certainly known that Antiochus King of Syria intended to pass into Europe and declare war against the Romans. The conditions were the same with those which had already been offered, and among the rest, that all the Grecian cities, both in Europe and Asia, should enjoy their liberty, and that Philip should recal the garrisons he had placed in them. This treaty was confirmed at Rome, where

^l Civitas religiosa, in principiis maximè novorum bellorum, decrevit supplicationes, &c. Lib. xxxi. n. 9.

^m Lib. xxxiii. n. 7—10.

ⁿ Lib. xvii. p. 767.

^o Liv. lib. xxxiii. n. 11, &c.

his son Demetrius, whom he had sent an hostage thither, continued for several years, after this great affair had been concluded, and contracted a particular friendship with the Romans.

^P The courier, who carried the ratification of the treaty, arrived very opportunely in Greece, at the time they were upon the point of celebrating solemn games at Corinth. The natural curiosity of the Greeks for such spectacles as these, and the convenient situation of the place, as it might be approached by sea on both sides, made the assembly always very numerous. But the impatience of knowing what was to be the fate of all Greece for the future, had drawn thither at that time an incredible concourse of people. When the Romans had taken their seat upon the day appointed, the herald advanced into the midst of the amphitheatre, and after silence imposed upon the whole assembly by the sound of a trumpet, he pronounced the following words, with a loud voice. **THE SENATE AND PEOPLE OF ROME, AND T. QUINTIUS THE GENERAL, HAVING CONQUERED KING PHILIP AND THE MACEDONIANS, DECREE THAT THE PEOPLE OF GREECE SHALL HENCEFORWARD LIVE UNDER THEIR OWN LAWS FREE AND EXEMPT FROM ALL SLAVERY.** And at the same time read over a list of all the people that had been brought under subjection by Philip. Such agreeable and unexpected news, seemed rather a dream than a reality. They could neither believe their eyes nor their ears, and every one wanted to see and hear the herald again, that they might be fully assured of their happiness. When the matter was ascertained, there arose such joyful exclamations, and so frequently repeated, that it evidently appeared

p N. 30.—33.

q Ut facile appareret, nihil omnium bonorum multitudini gratius, quam libertatem, esse. Ludicrum deinde ita raptim perac-

tum est, ut nullius nec animi nec oculi spectaculo intenti essent: adeo unum gaudium præoccupaverat omnium aliarum sensum voluptatum, Liv. lib. xxxiii. n. 32

there

there was no blessing which so nearly affected mankind as liberty. The plays were performed in great hurry, nobody concerning themselves any more about them, nor giving the least attention to them, to such a degree had one single joy extinguished in their minds the sense of every other pleasure. When the plays were ended, they all ran, almost universally, in a body to the Roman general, every one striving to draw near their deliverer, to pay him their compliments, to kiss his hand, and present him with crowns and garlands of flowers, insomuch that his health would have been endangered, if the vigour of his age (for he was scarce then three and thirty years old) and the joy of so glorious a day, had not supported him and enabled him to undergo the fatigue.

THE WAR AGAINST ANTIOCHUS KING OF SYRIA.

* The Romans, who had hitherto prudently dissimbled their discontent, and shut their eyes to several enterprizes of Antiochus, that they might not have at once two powerful enemies upon their hands, as soon as they saw themselves freed from the war with the Macedonians, began to open their minds more freely to him, and let him know, that he must quit the cities of Asia, which had ^f belonged to Philip or Ptolemy; that he must suffer the Grecian towns to enjoy their liberty; and that he must no longer attempt to enter Europe, or bring an army thither.

† This Prince, of his own disposition sufficiently inclined to war, was farther induced to it by the earnest solicitations of the Ætolians, ^u and the advice of Hannibal, who had retired into his dominions, ever since the Romans, who were informed of his carrying on private intrigues and intelligence with the King of

r Liv. lib xxxiii. n. 44, 45.

f Lib. xxxiv. n. 58.

t N. 60, &c.

u Lib. xxxv. n. 19.

Syria, had, against the opinion of Scipio, required the Carthaginians to deliver up that implacable enemy of Rome, who could not suffer peace, and would infallibly cause the ruin of his country. Antiochus publickly declared himself at last, marched his troops into Greece and took several cities.

The Romans then, who had long been in expectation of this event, declared war against him in form, having first consulted the Gods upon the success of the enterprize, and implored their assistance by publick prayers and sacrifices.

Hannibal advised, in a general council held upon this occasion, that Antiochus should immediately fit out his fleet and land a body of troops in Italy, which he offered to command in person, whilst the King should remain in Greece with his army, always making a shew of intending to pass thither, and being constantly in actual readiness to do so, when it should be convenient. This advice was neglected, as likewise all the councils he afterwards gave; and whether it was through mistrust or jealousy, and an apprehension lest a stranger should have the whole glory of the enterprize, he made no use of Hannibal, who might have been of more use to him than all his armies.

Besides, this Prince, very inopportunately puffed up by the first success of his arms, and forgetting at once the two great projects he had formed of making war against the Romans, and delivering Greece, yielded himself to be carried away by a passion he had entertained for a young woman at Chalcis, passed the winter quarter in that city, in celebrating his nuptials with great feasts and rejoicings, and by that means enervated the strength and courage of his troops.

The following campaign shewed the effects of it. His troops emasculated by luxury and pleasure, were not able to stand before the Romans, but were beaten upon several occasions. The King himself fly-

w Lib. xxxv. n. 42.

x Lib. xxxvi. n. 1, &c.

y Lib. xxxvi. n. 11.

ing from city to city, and country to country, and always briskly pursued, was at last obliged to return into Asia. And his fleet had no better success by sea.

^z The next year Lucius Cornelius Scipio, and C. Lelius were chosen Consuls. Scipio Africanus offered to serve as lieutenant, under his brother, in case they would assign Greece to him, without disposing of the provinces by lot, according to custom. This proposal was joyfully received by the people, who were fully persuaded that the victorious Scipio would be of greater service to the consul and the Roman army, than the conquered Hannibal to Antiochus. His request was therefore granted by an almost universal consent, and five thousand old soldiers who had served under him, followed him as volunteers.

The effect answered their expectation. The consul prepared to carry the war into Asia. ^a But it was first necessary to be assured of Philip's dispositions, through whose country the army was to pass. They found him in a very good disposition. He supplied the troops with all necessary refreshments, and took particular care to treat the generals and officers with a royal magnificence. He accompanied them not only into Macedonia, but into Thrace, and as far as the Hellespont.

^b Antiochus took a great deal of pains to draw over Prusias King of Bithynia to his interest, by making him apprehensive that Scipio's conquests might hereafter be dangerous to himself, and ^c represented to him that the design of the Romans was to destroy all the kingdoms of the earth, and establish an universal Empire. The letters of the two Scipios, which were given into his hand at the same time, and the arrival of the Roman ambassador, who came very opportunely, whilst he was in suspense, made a greater impression upon

^z Lib. xxxvii. n. 1, & 4.

^a N. 7.

^b N. 25.

^c Venire eos ad omnia regna

tollenda, ut nullum usquam orbis terrarum nisi Romanum imperium esset. Lib. xxxvii. n. 25.

him than the reasons and promises of Antiochus. He saw plainly that an alliance with the Romans was the most secure and useful step he could take, and concluded it immediately.

^d The several shocks that Antiochus had received both by sea and land, made him seriously incline to peace. ^e The magnanimity of Scipio Africanus, his moderation after his victories in Spain and Africa, the high degree of glory to which he had attained, and with which he had reason to be satisfied, made him hope that by his means the negotiation might be carried on with the greater facility. Besides, he had the general's son in his hands, who probably had been taken prisoner in some engagement, and offered to give him back to his father without a ransom, if the peace was concluded. The Romans, who never abated any thing in the conditions they had once proposed, kept close to those they had offered the King at the beginning of the war; and thus the negotiation proved ineffectual. Scipio in return to Antiochus's civility sent him word that as a father and a private man he would omit no opportunity of expressing his gratitude; but as a person employed by the publick, and a commanding officer, he must expect nothing from him; and lastly, the sole council he could give him as a friend, was to renounce the war, and refuse none of the conditions of peace that were offered him.

^f The Romans marched several days. The King was encamped at Thyatira, and learning that Scipio Africanus was left sick at Elea, he sent back his son to him. The joy of once more seeing a son whom he tenderly loved, made no less impression on the body than the mind of the father. After he had long held him in his embraces, and satisfied his affection: "Go

^d N. 34.—36.

^e In Scipione Africano maximam spem habebat; præterquam quod & magnitudo animi, & satietas gloriæ placabilem eum maxime faciebat; notumque erat gen-

tibus qui victor ille in Hispania qui deinde in Africa fuisset. N. 34.

^f N. 37.

^g Non solum animo patrio gratum munus, sed corpori quoque salubre gaudium fuit. N. 37.

" say

“ says he, to the deputies, assure the King of my gratitude, and tell him, that for his present I can give him no other mark of it than by advising him not to fight till my return to the camp.

^b In the mean time, the consul was daily advancing, and at last came up with the army of Antiochus. The King kept several days in his camp not caring to hazard a battle. The winter was approaching, and the consul apprehensive, lest the victory should escape out of his hands. Seeing therefore his troops full of ardour, he led them against the enemy. The battle was long and obstinate, but the victory at last turned intirely on the side of the Romans. The King lost that day fifty thousand foot, and four thousand horse, without reckoning the prisoners; he retreated in disorder with the few troops, which were left him, first to Sardis, and then to Apamea. This victory was followed by the surrender of the strongest cities of Asia.

ⁱ Deputies soon after arrived from Antiochus, with orders to accept of such conditions of peace, as the Romans should please to lay upon him. These were the same as had been offered from the beginning, that the King should give up all that he possessed in Europe, with all the cities he had in Asia on this side mount Taurus, which should henceforward be the boundary of his kingdom; that he should pay the Roman people fifteen thousand Euboick talents, for the expences of the war, and four thousand to King Eumenes; but first of all, that he should give up Hannibal, without which the Romans would hearken to no proposals. This treaty was confirmed at Rome. ^k The honour of a triumph was granted to Lucius Scipio, and he took the surname of Asiaticus.

The end and death of Scipio.

^l Though Scipio had shewed so much integrity and disinterestedness in the war with Antiochus, he was

b N. 38--44. i N. 45. k N. 58. l Liv. lib. xxxviii. n. 50.--53.

notwithstanding accused of having held intelligence with that Prince. Some time after his return to Rome, the two Petillius's, tribunes of the people, brought an accusation against him upon this score. They said, that Antiochus had sent him back his son without a ransom, and made court to him as to one who decided every thing at Rome in respect to peace and war. That in the province, he rather behaved with the authority of a dictator, than the submission of a lieutenant; that his motive in going to the war was to persuade Greece, Asia, and all the people of the East, that one man alone was the prop and support of the empire, which he had before made known to Spain, Gaul, Sicily and Africa. ^m That Rome the mistress of the world owed its glory and security to Scipio; that a single word of his mouth had more authority than the decrees of the senate or the orders of the people; and lastly, finding no particular of his life that was capable of reproach, they endeavoured to make his power odious.

Scipio without saying a single word to the points on which he was accused, made so sublime a discourse upon the great enterprizes he had happily put an end to, that all the world agreed there never was a more pompous encomium given, or a more just one. ⁿ For he reported those actions, with the same elevation of mind, and the same greatness of soul, that he had shewed in doing them. Nor was any one offended at hearing him commend himself, as his speaking in that manner arose from a necessity of defending himself, and not a desire of extolling. The whole time was spent in debates, and night coming on, the judgment was referred to another day.

^m Unum hominem caput columnęque Romani Imperii esse: sub umbra Scipionis civitatem dominum orbis terrarum latere; nutus ejus pro decretis patrum, pro populi jussis esse. Infamia intactum, invidia, qua possunt, urgent, Liv.

lib. xxxviii. n. 51.

ⁿ Dicebantur enim ab eodem animo ingenioque, à quo gesta erant: & aurium fastidium aberat, quia pro periculo, non in gloriam, referebantur. n. 50.

When that day came, Scipio appeared with a number of clients and friends, and after silence proclaimed, "It was on the same day with this," says he to the tribunes, "that I conquered Hannibal and the Carthaginians near Carthage. As therefore it is not reasonable to spend it in debate and contest, I shall go directly to the capitol give thanks for this victory to Jupiter, Juno and Minerva, and all the Gods who inhabit there. Attend me in this duty of religion and gratitude, as many of you as have leisure, and pray the Gods to give you commanders like me; if it be true that from the time of my being seventeen years old, in proportion as you have conferred honours upon me exceeding my years, I have also endeavoured to anticipate your suffrages by my services." Having spoke thus, he went straight to the capitol, whither the whole assembly followed him to the very officers of the tribunes, who saw themselves deserted by all mankind except their slaves. This was the most glorious day in Scipio's life, and in point of real grandeur had something more splendid and memorable in it, than that whereon he entered Rome triumphant over Syphax, and the Carthaginians.

From that day, which may be looked upon as the last of so glorious a life, he retired to Liternum to avoid the jealousy and malignity of his accusers, with a resolution not to be present at the trial of his cause, which had been put off. He had too high a spirit, and had hitherto supported too great a character in the republick, to be able to descend to the form of a trial.

When the day of judgment was come, his brother Scipio laid the cause of his absence upon a troublesome illness, which would not permit of a journey to Rome. His accusers laying hold of his retirement to render him still more odious to the people, required that he

o Major animus & fortuna erat, in humilitatem causam dicentium.
ac majori fortunæ assuetus, quam Lib, xxxviii, n. 52.
ut reus esse sciret, & summittere se

should

should be taken by force from his country house, and brought to Rome against his inclination to answer to the accusations he stood charged with. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, one of the tribunes of the people who had ever been the enemy of Scipio, not being able to admit that he should be treated with such indignity, declared in his favour, and full of resentment against his colleagues: "What, tribunes, says he, shall this conqueror of Spain and Africa be trod on by you?" "Has he defeated four Carthaginian generals, cut to pieces and put to flight four great armies in Spain, conquered Syphax, Hannibal, and Antiochus (for his brother is willing to divide the honour of this last victory with him) only to fall by the hatred and envy of the two Petillii?" "Are then no merits, no honours, sufficient to procure a secure retreat; a sacred and inviolable asylum for great men, where their old age, if it cannot command respect, may at least be protected from insult and outrage?" This discourse was received with general applause, and the senate soon after returned their thanks to Sempronius, for preferring the publick interest to his private resentment. His accusers not being able to bear the reproaches, made them on all sides, desisted from their prosecution.

Scipio pass'd the rest of his life at Liternum, without so much as desiring to see Rome any more, and caused a tomb to be erected there for him, that he might not be buried in an ungrateful country.

The Death of Hannibal.

Hannibal not thinking himself any longer secure in the dominions of Antiochus, retired to Prusias King of Bithynia. ^q But the Romans did not suffer him

^p Nullis ne meritis suis, nullis venerabilis, inviolata saltem senectus eorum confidat? Lib. xxxviii. n. 53.
^q Liv. lib. xxxix. n. 51.

to rest there, but sent Quintius Flaminius to that King to complain of the refuge he gave him. It was by no means difficult for Hannibal to divine the subject of the embassy, but he did not expect that he should be delivered into the hands of his enemies. He instantly attempted to escape by flight, but perceived, that the seven private passages he had made to his palace, were all seized by the soldiers of Prusias, who designed to make his court to the Romans by betraying his guest. He then caused the poison to be brought him, which he had long kept by him to make use of upon occasion, and holding it in his hands: "Let us deliver, says he, the Roman people from an uneasiness which so long torments them, since they have not patience to wait for an old man's death. The victory which Flaminius gains over a man disarmed and betrayed, will not be much for his honour. This day alone shews how much the Romans are degenerated. Their fathers advised Pyrrhus to guard against a traitor, who designed to poison him, at the very time that Prince was making war upon them in the heart of Italy. And now they have sent a person of consular dignity to engage Prusias, to put his friend and host to death, and commit an abominable crime." And then uttering imprecations against Prusias, and calling upon the Gods, who were the guardians and avengers of the sacred rites of hospitality, to punish him, he drank up the poison and died.

Such was the end of the two greatest men of their age, who both fell by the jealousy of their enemies, and experienced the ingratitude of their country.

The war against Perseus the last King of Macedon.

Perseus had succeeded his father Philip in the kingdom of Macedon, and twenty years were now passed since the peace made with Antiochus.

* The Romans having long dissembled several causes of discontent they had against Perseus, resolved at last to make war upon him, unless he gave them satisfaction. † This Prince had neither honour nor religion, and made no scruple to employ calumny, murder and poison for the attainment of his ends. Blinded and corrupted by the flatteries of his courtiers, he thought himself a great soldier, and capable of subduing the Romans. For which reason, he answered their deputies with such haughtiness and pride, as obliged them to declare war against him upon the spot. Some small successes in his first campaign served only to make him the more adventurous. ‡ However he followed the counsel which was given him, which was to make the best use of the advantage he had gained in a battle, in order to obtain more favourable conditions of peace, rather than to hazard all upon an uncertain hope. He therefore made the ^u consul very advantageous offers. ^w In the council of war, which was held upon this occasion, the Roman constancy took place. The character of the nation in those times was to shew great courage and magnanimity under misfortunes, whilst they valued themselves upon their moderation in prosperity. The answer therefore to the King was, that he had no peace to expect, but by submitting entirely to the discretion of the Roman people, and leaving the decision of his fate to them. All hope of accommodation being at an end, both sides prepared for continuing the war. The new consul entered Macedonia and marched to attack the King in his own country. However, as the affair was of much longer

r Liv. lib. xlii. n. 25—31.

f Hunc per omnia clandestina grassari scelera latrociniorum ac veneficiorum cernebant. Liv. lib. xlii. n. 18.

t Ausi sunt quidam amicorum consilium dare, ut secunda fortuna in conditiones honestæ pacis uteretur, potius quàm spe vana erec-

tus in casum irrevocabilem se daret. Lib. xlii. n. 62.

u Publius Licinius Crassus.

w Romana constantia vicit in concilio. Ita tum mos erat, in adversis vultum secundæ fortunæ gerere, moderari animos in secundis. Ibid.

x Lib. xliv. n. 1, &c.

duration than had been expected, the Romans grew very uneasy.

y Paulus Æmilius being chosen consul, and the war against Perseus committed to his care, they conceived better hopes, and he put himself into a condition not to deceive them. Before his departure, he thought proper to make a speech to the people, wherein he besought them not to give credit to any flying reports, that should be rumoured against his conduct. That there was a kind of idle unexperienced men, who could make war in their closets at their ease, and if their views and schemes were not followed, were apt to censure the general in publick companies and pass sentence upon him. That he did not refuse to receive advice, but it must be from persons that were upon the spot.

z When he arrived in Macedonia and drew near the enemy, the troops full of ardour desired to charge them immediately, and a young officer of great merit, named Nafica, pressed him to lay hold of the opportunity, and not let an enemy escape, whose flights and precipitate retreats, had given so much exercise to his predecessors. He commended the warmth of the young officer and the soldiers, but did not comply with their desire. The march had been long and painful in a very hot summer's day, and the army extremely fatigued with dust, drought, weariness, and the excessive heat of the sun. He therefore did not judge it convenient to engage his troops in a battle, fatigued and exhausted as they were, against an enemy, who being fresh and lying still were in their full force.

a Some days after, they came to a battle. Paulus Æmilius shewed all the wisdom and courage, that were to be expected from so experienced a commander. The long and obstinate resistance of the enemy, shewed they had not entirely degenerated from their ancient reputation. The great shock lay against the Macedonian phalanx, which was a kind of square battalion

y N. 17—22. z N. 36. a N. 37—42. Plut. in vit. Æmil. Pauli.

thick

thick set with pikes and lances, and which it was most impossible to break through; they were so accustomed to join all their bucklers together, and present a kind of iron wall to the enemy. Paulus Æmilius owned afterwards, that this brazen rampart, and that forest of pikes had filled him with dread and astonishment; and though he put a good countenance upon it, he could not at first help feeling some doubt and uneasiness upon the success of the battle. In short, all his first line being cut to pieces, the second was discouraged, and began likewise to give way. The consul perceiving that the inequality of ground, obliged the phalanx to leave openings and intervals, divided his troops into platoons, and ordered them to throw themselves into the void places of the enemies battle, and not to attack them altogether in front, but by detachments, and at different places at the same time. The order timely given, gained the victory. The Phalanx, thus separated and disjoined, were no longer able to sustain the efforts of the Romans. What followed was bloodshed and slaughter, and it is thought there fell that day above twenty five thousand men, on the side of the Macedonians.

^b Perseus withdrew before the battle begun; after some vain efforts, he suffered himself to be taken prisoner, and surrendered to the conqueror; and this he did in so base and cowardly a manner, as drew upon him the contempt of all that saw it, instead of exciting their compassion, as might have been expected in such a condition. ^c He was carried to Rome with his children; and served to adorn the triumph of Paulus Æmilius.

^b Lib. xlv. n. 48.

^c N. 40. Plut. in vit. Pauli.

C H A P. II.

Reflections.

I Question whether the reader, when he sees me meddling with war and politicks, will not be tempted to apply to me what Hannibal said upon a like occasion. It was at the time when he retired to Antiochus at Ephesus, ^d where every body striving to entertain him agreeably, it was one day proposed to him to hear a philosopher called Phormio, who made a great noise in the city, and passed for a fine speaker. He was so complaisant as to go where he was desired. The philosopher spoke upon the duties of a general of an army, and the rules of the art military, and made a very long discourse. The whole audience were charmed with his eloquence, and Hannibal was asked what he thought of it. His answer, which he gave in Greek, was ill expressed in point of language, but full of a soldier-like liberty. "I have seen, says he, many old men that wanted sense and judgment; but of all the old men that ever I saw, this is the most senseless and injudicious." How extravagant indeed must it have been in a philosopher, who had never seen either camp or army, to attempt to entertain an Hannibal, with precepts concerning the art of war? I should deserve a like reproach, and perhaps more justly too, if the reflections I make were my own. But as I select almost every one of them from the most learned men of antiquity, who were some of them very skillful and experienced in the art of war, I think myself very secure under the shadow of their great names, and that I may talk with them of war and politicks.

My reflections shall turn upon two points. I shall first endeavour to point out the character, the virtues,

^d Cic. lib. ii, de Orat. n. 75, 76.

and

and as occasion offers, the faults also of those who have had the greatest share in the events I have spoke of, such as Hannibal, Fabius, Scipio, Paulus Æmilius, Antiochus, Philip and Perseus. I shall then endeavour to explain the principles of the government and policy of the Romans, especially in what relates to the manner of their conduct in the time of war, with reference to their citizens, their allies, and their enemies. And for all this, I cannot have a better authority, nor a surer guide than Polybius, who was an eye-witness of part of the events here treated, was familiarly acquainted with the great men who were the principal actors in them, studied the character and constitution of the Roman people with a great deal of care, and served as a guide and master to Livy, whose reflections I shall likewise make great use of.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

The different qualifications of the persons spoke of in this third portion of Roman history.

WE here plainly see, that neither wealth, illustrious extraction, nor even the majesty of a throne, make men truly valuable; and that, how glorious and dazzling soever all this vain splendor may be, it is entirely obscured and effaced by real merit and solid virtue. What an idea does the history we have related leave us of the Princes it speaks of?

ANTIOCHUS King of Syria.

Without dwelling upon the other faults of this Prince, a single circumstance may lead us into a judgment

ent of his character. * Livy says, that the first degree of merit in a man who commands, is to be able himself to act what is proper; that the second is at least to know when to follow good counsel; but to be able to do neither the one nor the other, is the mark of a little mind, without design, reflection, or prudence. Upon this principle, what must we think of Antiochus? He had undertaken a war against the most powerful, warlike, and successful people in the world. Chance had brought Hannibal to his court, the greatest general mankind had ever seen. In his long war against the Romans he had given proofs of his valour, prudence and perfect skill in the art of war. To these great qualities he joined an inherent hatred of the Romans, and an earnest desire of revenging himself upon them. How serviceable must such a man have been to a Prince of the least judgment?

Antiochus at first received Hannibal with great joy, and paid him all the honours due to a general of so high a reputation. In the council of war, which he called, Hannibal persisted in the opinion he had always had, that the Romans could not be conquered except in Italy. He supported his opinion with unanswerable reasons, and offered his service to make a descent in Italy, whilst the King should continue in Greece, to perplex the Romans with the apprehension of a powerful diversion. Antiochus did not disapprove this advice. † But it was represented to him that he ought not to rely upon Hannibal; that he was an exile and a Carthaginian, whose fortune or genius might suggest to him a thousand different projects every day; that besides the very reputation he had acquired in war, and which of course would follow him, was too great for a lieutenant; that the King ought to be the sole

e Sæpe ego audiui milites, eum primum esse virum, qui ipse consulat quid in rem sit; secundum eum, qui bene monenti obediat: qui nec ipse consulere, nec alteri parere sciat, eum extremi ingenii

esse. Lib. xxii. n. 29.

The same thought occurs in Hesiod, Op. & Di. v. 291. in Herodotus, lib. vii. and in Cic. pro Cluent. n. 84.

† Liv, lib. xxv, n. 42.

head,

head, and general; that all mens eyes and attention should be fixed only upon him; whereas, was Hannibal employed, that stranger alone would have all the glory of their good success.

This was enough to turn the head of Antiochus. He was taking him on his weak side. A mean jealousy, the sign and fault of little minds, stifled every other thought and reflection in him. He no longer set any value upon Hannibal, nor made any use of him. The event sufficiently avenged the latter, and shewed how unfortunate it is for a Prince to lay open his heart to envy, and his ears to the poisonous discourse of flatterers.

PHILIP and PERSEUS Kings of Macedon.

These Princes, who sat upon the throne of Macedon, which had formerly been so illustrious, and succeeded to the dominions of the old Philip and his son Alexander, two of the greatest Princes that ever were, wretchedly supported the glory of their predecessors, and shewed that there is a great difference between reigning and being really a King.

^g Philip, according to Polybius, had all the qualifications necessary in forming a great Prince, and executing great designs. To omit the advantages of his person, and an air of majesty natural to him, he had a lively and discerning spirit capable of the greatest things, ^h a surprising grace in his discourse, and a memory which let nothing escape him; a perfect knowledge in the art of war, with a courage and boldness that nothing could daunt. But all these fine qualities soon degenerated in him, and gave place to the most excessive vices, injustice, fraud, perfidiousness, cruelty and irreligion, which, of the great

^g Polyb. p. 329.

^h It was in all probability, this talent that led him into a fault, which is blameable indeed in private persons, but far more dangerous in Princes, and altogether

unbecoming the dignity of a King; I mean the taking pleasure in railery and jesting. *Erat dicacior natura, quam regem decet; & ne inter seria quidem risu satis temperans*, Liv, lib. xxxii. n. 44.

nce he might have been, made him an insupportable
ant to his subjects.

His son Perseus inherited only his faults, with the
tion of one vice peculiar to himself, I mean a
lid and insatiable avarice. This passion, which
ne basest and the most unworthy of a Prince, he
ried to an incredible excess. He suffered all the
at preparations, which had been made with so
ch care, for the support of the war against the
mans, to be lost and ruined for fear of drawing
tain sums out of his coffers; and by that means
rthrew the hopes the Macedonians had conceived
in them. From the same motive, he sent back
enty thousand select troops, which he called in to
assistance, but could not resolve with himself to
in the manner agreed on. He broke his word
o with Gentius King of the Illyrians, and thought
nself very dexterous in amusing him with the hopes
three hundred talents, which he refused to give
n at last, though he might have hired with them
the forces of Illyria against the Romans. In
ich, as Plutarch observes, he did not shew him-
the heir and imitator of Alexander the Great, or
ilip, who by constantly practising this maxim,
*that victory should be purchased with money, and not
money with victory*, subdued almost all the whole
world.

We know what was his end. He besought Paulus
amilius not to make him a spectacle to the Romans,
d spare him the disgrace of being led in triumph;
if favour he asks is in his own power, replied the
oman, meaning that he had no more to do than kill
nself; an action which in the darkness of Paga-
m was looked upon as the proof of a great soul.
e could not resolve to do this, and therefore adorn-
the triumph of his conqueror, and became an ob-
ect of contempt to all the spectators, who scarce
ought fit to cast their eyes upon him. All the
mpassion fell upon his children, who were the

more

more deserving of pity, as their tender years did not allow them as yet to be fully sensible of their misfortune.

PAULUS ÆMILIUS.

This general was the son of the famous Paulus Æmilius, who fell in the battle of Cannæ. He lived in an age, says Plutarch, that abounded with great men, and took pains to be inferior to none of them. For the attainment of dignities, he did not strive, as the custom then was, to distinguish himself by his eloquence at the bar, or to gain the favour of the people by flattering condescensions, though very capable of succeeding that way. He thought it his duty to proceed by a more honourable and worthy method, to recommend himself by his valour, justice, and a firm adherence to every branch of duty, wherein he exceeded all the young men of his time.

Being admitted into the college of the augurs, he thoroughly studied, and reformed the ancient practices of divine worship, upon a full persuasion, that nothing was more dangerous than innovation in matters of religion, and that negligence in small matters leads to the violation of the most important rules.

He was no less exact and severe in restoring the observance of all the old regulations of military discipline, shewing himself terrible and inexorable to all those who disobeyed him, and ⁱ holding it for a maxim, that to conquer his enemies, was a necessary consequence of carefully forming his citizens under a strict discipline.

A very long interval of time, which passed between his two consulships; gave him an opportunity of applying himself particularly to the education of his children. He put them under the care of the ablest masters in every kind, sparing in this point for no

ἰ μικρὸν δὲ πέρεργον ἡγούμενος διύειν τὴν πόλιν, Ibid.
τὸ νικᾶν τὴν πολέμειον, τὴ παι-

expence,

Ex hi
urum c
7. lib. xi
VOL.

spence, though possessed but of a very moderate fortune. He assisted in all their exercises as much as the publick affairs would give him leave, designing by this means to be himself their principal master, and leaving fathers (however engaged in business) this great example, of looking upon the education of their children as the most essential part of their duty, and for this reason not entirely to be trusted to the care and integrity of others.

The great theatre, whereon the merit of Paulus Æmilius was displayed in its full lustre, was Macedon. When obliged to accept of the consulship, he began by requiring that commissioners of ability and understanding should be dispatched thither, who should inform him from their own knowledge of the situation of the Macedonian affairs, of the number and quality both of the Roman and the enemies troops by sea and land, of the state of the provisions, magazines and arsenals, of the disposition of the allies, in a word, of every thing that concerned the army, without which it was impossible to take just measures. It was one of the important instructions, which Cambyfes King of Persia gave his son Cyrus, when he set out for his first campaign, never to engage in any enterprize, without being first secure of all the means and helps that were requisite to make it succeed.

We have already observed, that Nasica very much pressed Paulus Æmilius to fall upon the enemy, as soon as he was arrived near the Macedonian camp, under an apprehension lest the enemy should escape from his pursuit. He was by no means offended at the liberty which this officer took in this remonstrance.

It was a great principle with him, and he declared as much when he left Rome, that a commanding officer should hearken to advice more than any man.

“ I am far, said he to them, from thinking that

* Ex his bene cognitis certa in
rum consilia capi posse ratus.

7. lib. xliv. n. 18.

1 Xenophon, lib. i. Cyropæd.
m Liv. lib. xliv. n. 22.

“generals should not receive advice; on the other
 “hand, I am persuaded there is more pride than
 “wisdom in attempting to do every thing of one’s
 “own head.” He therefore answered this young
 officer in a very obliging manner. “I have for-
 “merly, said he to him, thought as you think at
 “present, and you also will one day think as I do
 “now: Experience has taught me when ’tis proper
 “to engage, and when to decline fighting. You
 “shall know at a proper time the reasons of my
 “conduct; at present rely upon your general.”
 ’Tis a pleasure to me to quote such passages as these,
 as they seem very proper to teach young persons how
 to behave themselves, and particularly to avoid those
 airs of insolence and pride towards their inferiors, in
 which authority and greatness are often improperly
 made to consist, and also to receive the advice that is
 given them with docility and politeness.

A man that has but little understanding, is full of
 his own opinions, and the more shallow his concep-
 tion, the less docile he is. ° He thinks that in at-
 tempting to give him advice he is reproached with the
 want of ability, and takes offence as if injured from
 another’s not seeming convinced, that as he is the
 highest in authority, he is also of the most discern-
 ing capacity. A man of a superior genius is in a quite
 different way of thinking. He knows that an ex-
 pression of another sometimes gives a great insight in-
 to an affair. He is always ready to hear whatever is
 proposed, to set a just value upon all that is laid before
 him, and to compare it with his own reasons; and in
 this he makes a right understanding and judgment
 * consist.

We may observe in the description of the battle
 which put an end to the Macedonian war, as Poly-
 bius has done in several places, that wisdom and

n Ibid. n. 36.

o Ne alienæ sententiæ indigens
 videretur, in diversa ac deteriora

transibat. Tacit. Annal. lib. 4.
 c. 10.

p Polyb. p. 36, 37.

temper are the proper qualifications of a general, especially in the heat and fury of a battle, and that the victory does not depend upon the hundred thousand arms which make up an army, but upon the head of the general. Thus, we see in the battle we are speaking of, that the timely orders given by the general, to throw themselves into the vacant spaces of the Macedonian phalanx, and attack it only in small bodies, saved the Roman army, and gained the victory. It is to such passages as these, that Polybius would have a reader be principally attentive; and he rightly observes that one of the surest means of obtaining perfection in the knowledge of the art of war, is to study the actions and genius of the great men who have made a figure in history.

The use which Paulus Æmilius made of his victory and leisure, is a great example to generals, governors of provinces, and all persons in authority, and teaches them how to make a proper use of their power, grandeur and command. He took that opportunity, says the historian, to visit Greece, and passing through the cities, placed his whole delight in relieving the people, reforming disorders, and diffusing his liberality wherever he came; an employment, adds the same historian, alike benevolent and glorious, and which could proceed only from a surprizing fund of humanity; *Διασωσιν ἐνδοξον αἶμα καὶ φιλανθρώπων.*

Upon his return from Greece, he celebrated the publick games, to which he invited the people and Kings of Asia, and gave them a sumptuous entertainment, supplying that great expence abundantly out of the King's treasures, as Plutarch says, but deriving only from himself the good order observed in it. But what principally was admired, was his politeness, and agreeable and engaging manner of behaviour, his care to treat every one according to their rank, and to oblige all, who could scarce comprehend how it was possible for a man that was qualified for such great things to make such a figure in

small ones. But the most pleasing effect of his magnificence was to see, that amidst so many curiosities and spectacles that were capable of attracting their eyes, they found nothing so deserving their attention and admiration as himself. 'Twas upon this occasion, as they were commending with astonishment the elegant disposition of his entertainment and diversions, that he let fall these remarkable words, " That the
" same turn of mind suggested how to draw up an
" army in the field, and dispose an entertainment, so
" as to make the one formidable to the enemy, and
" the other agreeable to the guests."

What I have here related of the polite, noble, and insinuating behaviour of Paulus Æmilius, is highly glorious for a general, and contains a great lesson for all who govern. The language of favour and obliging manners is heard by all mankind, that of merit is not so universal. 'Tis not possible to bestow benefits upon all: his stock must be exhausted who is always giving: But goodness, humanity and justice are perpetual and general benefits, whose source is never dry, and from which no person whatsoever is excluded. 'Tis a great advantage to have an happy genius improved by study and reflection, a fruitful and inexhaustible variety of charms and graces for all sorts of men in every condition, and of every character. ^q To know how to apply them, to blend and diversify them, that every one may find something in them wherein himself is concerned; to dispence the common marks of goodness and affection to all, by carrying an agreeable air in the countenance, which by a kind of mute but publick eloquence wins and charms whoever has to do with it; such gentle and popular behaviour, instead of being injurious to the dignity of great men,

^q Apud subjectos, apud proximos, apud collegas, variis illecebris potens; says Tacitus, speaking of Mucianus Governor of Syria.

Hist. lib. 1. cap. 10.

^r Vultu, qui maximè populari demeretur, amabilis, Sen. de Clem. Lib. i. cap. 13.

serves to exalt and render it more estimable. *Comitate & alloquiis officia provocans incorrupto ducis honore*, says Tacitus, speaking of the most amiable Prince that ever was.

We cannot too often make youth read the beautiful discourses which Livy and Plutarch put into the mouth of Paulus Æmilius, after his victory, which teach us how a Prince should bear bad fortune, and what reflections we ought to make in great prosperity. I shall here give a part of them.

^t Perseus, when he appeared for the first time before his conqueror, threw himself in an humble posture at his feet, and dropt several cowardly expressions, and unworthy supplications, which Paulus Æmilius could neither suffer nor hear, but looking upon him with a countenance full of sorrow and indignation: “Wretch that you are, says he to him, why do you acquit fortune of the greatest reproach you could throw upon her, or why justify her by such actions, as shew that you deserve your misfortunes, and have been unworthy of your past prosperity? Why do you degrade my victory, and sully the glory of my actions, by shewing yourself so mean, that the Romans cannot but blush at their having such an adversary? Learn then, that virtue in misfortune attracts the respect of its enemies, and that meanness of spirit, how successful soever it may be, acquires only contempt from the Romans.” However he raised him up, and giving him his hand, committed him to the custody of Tubero.

He then returned to his tent with his sons, his sons in law, and some young officers of his army, where, after he had reflected some time, without speaking; at last breaking silence, “Is it possible, says he, my children, that a man should be so far blinded by prosperity as to swell with pride, and set a value upon himself for having conquered

“ nations, ruined cities, and subdued kingdoms ?
 “ Can we think, after the great example that fortune has just given all soldiers of the inconstancy
 “ of human affairs, that there is any thing permanent
 “ and solid in her greatest favours ? At what time
 “ can we flatter ourselves that we are secure, since
 “ we have frequently the most to fear in the very
 “ moment of victory ; and the fatal destiny which
 “ overthrows one to day and another to-morrow, in
 “ the very height of joy often prepares for us the
 “ severest disgraces ? When a few minutes have sufficed to pull down the throne of Alexander, who
 “ had attained the highest degree of power, and subjected the greatest part of the world ; and we now
 “ see his successors, who but a while ago were encompassed with formidable armies, reduced to the
 “ necessity of receiving their bread every day from
 “ the hands of their enemies ; shall we presume to
 “ believe our good fortune constant and durable,
 “ and superior to the vicissitudes of the world ? for
 “ you, my children, the uncertainty of what the
 “ Gods prepare for us, and of the issue of a fortune
 “ that now smiles upon us, should moderate the excesses of joy and insolence of heart, which are the
 “ natural consequences of victory.”

These last words were a kind of preface and prediction of the misfortunes which hung over his head. In short, of the four sons which Paulus Æmilius had, the two eldest, by the first marriage, named Scipio and Fabius, were adopted into other families ; and of the two others, which were the hopes of his, the one died four days before his triumph, and the other three days after it. There was no person whatever but who was inwardly affected with so mournful an accident, and let fall some tears at the fate of the unhappy father. Paulus Æmilius alone, suppressing his grief, expressed a constancy which made him appear still greater than ever. He told the people, that terrified with reflecting upon such unheard of success and expecting

pecl
 foug
 than
 “ P
 “ t
 “ f
 “ b
 “ c
 “ S
 “ a
 “ k
 “ q
 “ I
 “ h
 “ f

full
 after
 had
 for
 Thi
 nobl
 of a
 offic
 “ wh
 then
 no o
 mod
 from
 Plut
 T
 Nor
 lus
 I m
 time

u B
 contul
 9. Th
 and tw
 money

peſſing ſome great reverſe of fortune, he had be-
ſought the Gods to let it rather fall upon his family
than upon the republick. “ Fortune, added he, by
“ placing my triumph between the funerals of my
“ two children, as though ſhe meant to divert her-
“ ſelf with human events, fills me indeed with trou-
“ ble and forrow, but aſcertains a full ſecurity to my
“ country, having emptied all her quiver upon us.
“ She has taken a pleaſure in expoſing the conqueror
“ and the conquered alike, as a ſpectacle to all man-
“ kind ; with this difference however, that the con-
“ quered Perſeus has ſtill his children, the conqueror
“ Paulus Æmilius none remaining. But the publick
“ happineſs alleviates my grief for my domeſtick miſ-
“ fortunes.

’Tis eaſy to judge how greatly ſuch a citizen, ſo
full of love and zeal for his country, was lamented
after his death. ’Twas then they knew how far he
had carried the generous contempt he always expreſſed
for riches, which might be called his prevailing virtue.
This great man, who was deſcended from one of the
nobleſt and moſt ancient families of Rome, deſcended
of a houſe that had been honoured with the higheſt
offices and employments ; this conqueror of Macedon,
“ who by the immense ſpoils which he brought from
thence had long enriched the publick “ treasury, left
no other wealth to his children, than the ancient and
moderate patrimonial eſtate which he had received
from his anceſtors, without having increaſed it, ſays
Plutarch, ſo much as by a ſingle drachma.

Theſe were the ſentiments of the ancient Romans :
Nor was this noble diſintereſtedneſs the virtue of Pau-
lus Æmilius alone, but that of his whole family, and
I might add, of almoſt all the great men of his
time. When he had made himſelf maſter of the pro-

u Bis millies centies HS. ærario
contulit Vell. Patern. Libr i. cap.
9. This ſum might amount to five
and twenty millions of the French
money.

w The people of Rome were
diſcharged from all taxes till the
war between Anthony and Octa-
vius. Plut.

digious treasures which Perseus had scraped together all the present he gave his son-in-law Tubero was a silver cup of five ounces weight. Plutarch observes that this cup was the first piece of silver plate that came into the Ælian family, and 'twas necessary that virtue and honour should introduce it at last.

FABIUS MAXIMUS.

* Polybius admirably describes the character of Fabius in few words, when relating what he thought of him after the great action by which he saved Minucius his rival and enemy, he says, that the Romans then evidently saw how great an advantage the prudence of a general and a firm and well-grounded judgment have over the rashness and senseless presumption of a meer soldier. What indeed is principally to be admired in Fabius, and properly constitutes the general, are a prudent foresight, profound reasoning, a plan pursued, a design formed, not rashly, but upon fixed and certain Principles, *στρατηγικὴ πρόνοια, καὶ λογισμὸς νενεχῆς*, upon which quality ^y Polybius in another place makes the success of great actions to depend; *εἰὰν σὺν ᾧ τις πράττῃ τὸ πρότερον*; and which Fabius himself says ought to be the prevailing virtue in a general, *z propediem effecturum, ut sciant homines, bono imperatori haud magni fortunam momenti esse, mentem rationemque dominari.*

To this first virtue Fabius added a second still more peculiar to him, which was a firm adherence to the resolution he had once taken upon good reasons, a constancy which no future accident was capable of shaking, *λογισμὸς ἐς ὥς*. And Plutarch expresses himself almost in the same terms, by saying, that Fabius constantly persisted in his first designs and resolutions, nor could any thing alter his steadiness. Hannibal, who was a good judge of merit and military know-

x Pag. 225.

y Pag. 551.

z Liv. lib. xxii. n. 25.

ledge,

ledge, soon did justice to Fabius, and began to fear, ^a says Livy, when he saw that the Romans had sent a general against him, who made war not by accident, but by principle and rule; *qui bellum ratione non fortuna gereret.*

To comprehend aright the prudence of Fabius, we must take a view of the condition of the two armies. Hannibal had twice beaten the Romans. His troops, full of ardour and courage, were eager for battle. They were in an enemy's country, in want of money and provisions, their numbers daily decreasing, and all communication with Carthage cut off, so that they could have no supplies from thence. And thus their only refuge lay in victory. As for the Romans, the two preceding defeats had almost entirely discouraged them, and they were afraid to look the Carthaginians in the face. To lead them to battle in this disposition, was in effect to carry them to slaughter. It was necessary by slight skirmishes to dispel their fears gradually, to restore their courage, to fill them with confidence, and enable them to support their ancient reputation. Besides they wanted for neither provisions nor troops, and had supplies of every thing ready at the proper times. And this led Fabius to the wise resolution of not hazarding a battle, *ερασιγικὴ πρόνοια καὶ λογισμὸς νανεχῆς.*

But what steadiness of soul had he not occasion for in persevering constantly in this resolution! His enemies make a jest of him, his own officers and soldiers insult him, Rome in general declares against him, by making the general of his horse equal to him in authority in an unprecedented manner. Yet all does not move him. He continues firm as fate. Those railleries, insults and injurious treatment are no arguments, nor make any alteration in the situation of affairs; and before he changes his plan he must be convinced by reason; *λογισμὸς ἐς ὅς.*

The success fully justified his conduct. The justice his citizens and his very enemies afterwards paid him, was a sufficient recompence for all the reports they had vented against him. And by consenting to pass but a small time for a coward, he has deserved to be considered by all succeeding times, as the wisest and most prudent general that Rome ever produced.

Thus he made good the truth of what Livy says upon another occasion, that a seasonable contempt of glory is repaid with usury and advantage. ^b *Spreta in tempore gloria etiam cumulatione redit.*

But what I think most admirable in Fabius is, the noble and generous manner of his behaviour towards a declared enemy, from whom he had received the most sensible affront: An action great indeed, as Plutarch observes, and wherein valour, prudence, and goodness were equally displayed. He might have let Minucius perish on the occasion into which his own rashness had engaged him, and have punished him by the hands of his enemies for the affront he had received from him. These would have been the sentiments of a little genius and a mean soul. Fabius flies to the assistance of his rival, and extricates him from his danger. Let us compare the glory which Fabius acquired by this action, the joy he felt in having saved the republick, the pleasure of seeing his enemy at his feet, acknowledging his fault, and the whole army saluting him their deliverer and father, with the base and shameful satisfaction of a revengeful person, who sacrifices every thing, and even the publick, to his resentment.

The conduct of Fabius towards Scipio does not appear so blameless and noble; and it is difficult to acquit his constant opposition to the design that young Roman had formed of carrying the war into Africa from all mixture of jealousy. There is reason to believe, says Plutarch, that he first opposed Scipio

^b Liv. ii. n. 47.

through an excess of prudence and precaution, as being alarmed at the danger, to which he thought the republick was likely to be exposed ; but that afterwards he too obstinately persisted in it, and went farther than he ought, instigated by an immoderate emulation to check the glory and greatness of a young general that gave him umbrage.

There are several reasons to believe, that Fabius in this dispute acted more from passion than reason. He had at first used his utmost endeavours to engage Crassus, the colleague of Scipio in the consulship, to insist upon his right of taking the provinces by lot, according to the custom ; not voluntarily to give up to Scipio the command of the army in Sicily, and to be in readiness to pass himself into Africa, if it should be at last judged convenient. Not being able to succeed in this first attempt, he employed all his interest to prevent the funds necessary for the war from being assigned to Scipio ; and when afterwards Scipio's enemies, whilst he was in Sicily, laid their complaints against him before the senate, Fabius, without any examination, very injuriously and extravagantly advised to recal him immediately and deprive him of the command. These complaints however were found to have no foundation. And lastly, when Scipio was passing into Africa, and Rome rung of his glorious actions and victories, the language and conduct of Fabius was still the same, and he was not ashamed to demand that a successor might be sent him, and for no other reason, says Plutarch, but this, *That it was dangerous to confide matters of such consequence to the fortune of a single man, and that it was difficult for one and the same general to be always alike successful.*

It cannot be denied but that Fabius was one of the greatest men that the Roman republick ever produced, but these instances of jealousy and envy against the infant glory of a young warrior of such hopes, are a blot in his reputation, and a sensible proof of what we have elsewhere advanced, that nothing is more

rare, nor at the same time more heroick than to behold unmoved, or even with joy the glorious actions and good successes of such as are engaged in the same pursuits with ourselves. A much greater degree of virtue was necessary in Fabius to defend himself against being jealous of a merit that might eclipse his own, than was necessary in the case of Minucius for behaving with moderation towards his rival, over whom he found he had every advantage in point of merit.

HANNIBAL and SCIPIO.

I have thought proper to join these two great men, and once more engage them in a war with each other, because as both of them had virtues which were very much alike, by thus viewing them in the same light, it will be more easy to come at the knowledge of their characters, and to judge which of the two deserves the preference. I do not attempt however to make an exact comparison between them, but only to set down the principal circumstances relating to both. In this parallel I shall examine their military, moral and political virtues; that which forms the great general, and that which makes the honest man.

I. Military virtues.

1. *Extent of mind for forming and executing great designs.*

I begin with this quality, because properly speaking it is that which makes great men, and has the largest share in the success of affairs; it is what Polybius calls, as I have already observed, *τὸ πρῶτον τὸ ποιεῖν*. It consists in having great views; in forming a plan at a distance; in proposing an end and design, which is never out of sight; in taking all the measures, and preparing all the means necessary

to make it succeed ; in knowing when to seize favourable occasions, which are always on the wing, and never return ; in introducing into this scheme even sudden and unforeseen accidents ; in a word, in foreseeing all that may happen, and in watching every thing without being embarrassed or disconcerted by any event. For as the same ^c Polybius observes, the concurrence of all the wisest measures that can be concerted and executed, is scarce sufficient to make a design succeed ; whereas the omission of one single circumstance, how slight soever it may appear, is often enough to prevent its success.

Such was the character of Hannibal and Scipio. Both formed great projects, bold and singular, of vast extent, long duration, capable of perplexing the strongest head, but alone salutary and decisive.

Hannibal discerned from the beginning of the war that the only means of conquering the Romans was by attacking them in their own country. He disposed of every thing that was necessary at a distance for the carrying on this great design. He foresaw every difficulty, and every obstacle. The passage of the Alps was no stop to his progress. So wise a commander, as ^c Polybius observes, would have been careful not to have engaged himself so far, if he had not been before assured that those mountains were not impracticable. The success answered his views ; and we know with what rapidity he carried on his conquests, and how near Rome was brought to her destruction.

Scipio formed a design, which seemed no less bold, but met with a better success ; and this was to fall upon the Africans in Africa itself. How many obstacles seemed to oppose the pursuit of this project ? Was it not natural, said they, to defend his own country before he attacked that of the enemy, and to secure peace in Italy, before the war was carried into Africa ? What refuge would the empire have left, if the conqueror

Hannibal should march against Rome? Would there then be time to recal the consul to their assistance? What would become of Scipio and his army, if he lost the battle? And what might not be apprehended from the Carthaginians and their allies, united together, and fighting for their liberties, in the sight of their wives, their children, and their country? These were the reflections of Fabius, which appeared very plausible, but did not stop Scipio; and the success of the enterprize shewed sufficiently with what wisdom it had been formed, and with what ability conducted; and it was visible that in all the actions of this great man, there was nothing which arose from chance, but all was the effect of that solid reasoning and consummate prudence, which distinguish the conduct of the great captain from the casual successes of the meer soldier.

II. *Profound secrecy.*

One of the most certain means to make an enterprize succeed is secrecy; and Polybius requires that a general should be so impenetrable upon this article, that not only friendship, and the most intimate familiarity should never be able to draw an indiscreet word from him, but that it should not be even possible for the most subtile curiosity to discover any thing of what he has in his mind, either in his countenance or his manner of behaviour.

The siege of Carthagera was the first enterprize of Scipio in Spain, and in a manner the first step to all his other conquests. He spoke of it only to Lælius, and intrusted him with it only, because it was absolutely necessary. It could be likewise only by silence and a profound secrecy, that another enterprize succeeded of still greater importance, as it drew along with it the conquest of Africa, which was when Sci-

to burnt the two camps by night, and cut in pieces both the armies of the enemy.

The frequent successes which Hannibal had in laying ambuscades for the Romans, and thereby destroying so many generals with their best troops, in concealing his marches from them, in surprizing them by unforeseen attacks, in removing from one part of Italy to another, without finding any obstacle on the enemy's part, are a proof of the profound secrecy with which he concerted and executed all his enterprizes. Subtlety, refined disguise, and stratagem were his prevailing talents, and all this could not succeed but by an impenetrable secrecy.

III. *To know well the character of the generals against whom one is to engage.*

It is a great piece of skill, and an important part of the knowledge of war, to be thoroughly acquainted with the character of the generals who command the enemy's army, and to know how to take advantage of their faults. For, says Polybius, it is either the ignorance or negligence of commanders which makes the generality of enterprizes miscarry. Hannibal possessed this science to perfection, and it may be truly said that his continual attention to the genius of the Roman generals was one of the principal causes which gained the battles of Trebia and Thrasimene. ^s He knew all that passed in the enemy's camp, as well as in his own. When Paulus and Varro were sent against him, he was soon informed of the different character of those two commanders, and of their divisions, *diffimiles discordesque imperitare*; and he did not fail to make his advantage of the eagerness and impetuosity of Varro, by laying baits for his rashness, in suffering him to gain some slight advantages, which were followed by the famous overthrow at Cannæ.

^s Omnia ei hostium haud secus, quam sua, nota erant. Liv. lib. xii, n. 41.

Nec quicquam eorum, quæ apud hostes agebantur, cum fallebat. Ib. n. 28.

The information Scipio had of the want of discipline in the enemy's camps, inspired him with the thought of setting fire to them by night; the success of which enterprize was followed with the conquest of Africa.
^h Hæc relata Scipionis spem fecerant castra hostium per occasionem incendendi.

IV. *To keep up an exact discipline in the army.*

Military discipline is in a manner the soul of the army, which connects and unites all the parts of it together, which puts them in motion, or keeps them at rest, as there is occasion, which points out and distributes to each their proper functions, and contains them all within the bounds of duty.

It is allowed, that our two generals excelled in this particular; but it must be owned that Hannibal's merit in this point, seems far superior to Scipio's. ⁱ Thus it has always been looked upon as a master-piece in the art of war, that Hannibal, during his sixteen years war in a foreign land, at such a distance from his own country, with such various success, at the head of an army made up, not of Carthaginians, but a confused body of several nations, who were neither united by customs, language, habits, arms, ceremonies, or sacrifices, and had even very different objects of worship; that Hannibal, I say, should have so united them together, that there never arose any sedition, either among themselves or against him, though provisions were frequently wanting, and their pay often delayed. How necessary was it for a strict discipline to be firmly established, and inviolably observed among the troops, to obtain this effect?

^h Lib. xxx. n. 3.

ⁱ Liv. l. 28. n. 12.

V. *To live after a plain, modest, frugal and laborious manner.*

It is a very ill taste, and argues little elevation of mind, to make the grandeur of an officer or a general, consist in the magnificence of his equipage, furniture, dress, or table. How is it possible for such trifles to become military virtues? What else do they require besides great riches? And are those riches always the rewards of merit, and the fruit of virtue? It is a shame to reason and good sense, it is a disgrace to so warlike a people as we are, to copy the manners and customs of the Persians, by introducing the luxury of cities into the camp and army. May not an officer or commander better employ the time, care and expence, which all this apparatus necessarily draws along with it, and does he not owe them to his country? Commanders of old thought and acted in a very different manner.

Livy gives Hannibal an encomium which I am afraid several of our officers may have cause to blush at. "There was no labour, says he, sufficient to fatigue his body or sink his spirits. He supported heat and cold equally. He eat and drank out of necessity and want, and not out of pleasure. He had no set hour of going to rest, but took that time for sleep which was unemployed in business; neither was it suborned by silence, or the softness of his couch. He often lay upon the ground, wrapt up in a soldier's coat, amidst the centinels and guard. He was distinguished from his equals, not by a greater magnificence of dress, but by better horses and arms.

Polybius, after commending Scipio for the shining virtues, which were admired in him, such as his liberality, magnificence and greatness of soul, adds, that those who knew him thoroughly, no less admired in him his sober and frugal life, which enabled him to

κ' Ἀρχὴς, καὶ νῆπτος, καὶ τῇ διαβολᾷ περὶ τὸ πρὸτερον ἐντεταμένους. Polyb. p. 577.

apply himself wholly to public business. He was not very nice about his apparel, it was manly and military, and very suitable to his person which was tall and majestic. ¹ *Præterquam suapte natura multa majestas inerat, adornabat promissa Cæsaries habitusque corporis non cultus munditiis, sed virilis vere ac militaris.* What ^m Seneca relates of the simplicity of his baths and his country house, shews us what he was in the camp, and at the head of his troops.

It is by leading a sober and frugal life in this manner, that generals are enabled to discharge that part of their duty, which ⁿ Cambyfes so carefully recommends to his son Cyrus, as extremely proper to encourage the troops, and make them love their officers, and that is to set an example of labour to the soldiers, by supporting like them, and even more than they, cold, heat, and fatigue; wherein ^o he says, the difference will always be very great between the general and the soldier, as the labours of the last are attended only with travel and pain, whereas the other in being exposed a spectacle to the eyes of the whole army, gains by it both honour and glory; motives that very much take off from the weight of the fatigue and render it lighter.

Scipio, however, was no enemy to discreet and well tempered mirth. ^p Livy, speaking of the honourable reception King Philip gave him, when he passed with his brother through his dominions, in their march against Antiochus, observes that Scipio was very much pleased with it, and admired the graceful and insinuating manners with which the King of Macedon im-

¹ Liv. lib. xxviii. n. 35.

^m Senec. Epist. 86.

^x Xenophon. in Cyrop. lib. i.

^o Itaque semper Africanus (*the second Scipio*) Socraticum Xenophontem in manibus habebat: cuius imprimis laudabat illud, quod diceret, eosdem labores non esse æquè graves imperatori & militi, quod ipse honos laborem leviorē

faceret imperatorum. Cic. lib. ii. Tusc. Quæst. n. 62.

^p Venientes regio apparatu accipit, & prosecutus est Rex. Multa in eo & dexteritas & humanitas visa, quæ commendabilia apud Africanum erant; virum sicut ad cetera, egregium, ita à comitate, quæ sine luxuria esset, non aversum. Liv. lib. xxxvii. n. 7.

proved his entertainment: Qualities, adds Livy, which this illustrious Roman, who was in other respects so great, very much esteemed, provided they did not degenerate into pomp and luxury.

VI. *To know equally how to employ force and stratagem.*

It is a just observation of Polybius, that in matter of war finesse and stratagem are often more serviceable than open force and declared designs.

This was Hannibal's excellency. In all his actions, enterprizes and battles, dexterity and cunning had ever the greatest share. † The manner in which he deceived the wisest and most considerate officer that was sent against him, by setting fire to the straw that was tied round the horns of two thousand oxen, to extricate himself from a false step he had taken, may suffice alone to shew how dexterous Hannibal was in the science of stratagems. † Scipio was no less acquainted with it; as we may learn from the circumstance of his setting fire to the two camps of the enemy in Africa.

VII. *Never to hazard his person without a necessity.*

† Polybius lays it down as an essential and capital maxim for a commanding officer, that he should never expose his person, when the action is not general and decisive, and that even then he should keep at as great a distance from danger as possible. He confirms this maxim by the contrary example of Marcellus, whose rash bravery, which ill suited a general of his age and experience, cost him his life, and had like to have ruined the republic. Upon this occasion he observes that Hannibal, who, without doubt, can never be suspected of fear, and too great a fondness for life, in all his battles was ever careful of the secu-

q Liv. lib. xxii. n. 16, 17.

† Lib. xxx. n. 3.—6.

f Pag. 603.

rity of his person ; and t he makes the same remark of Scipio, who in the siege of Carthagera was obliged to act in person, and expose himself to danger, though he did it with the utmost prudence and circumspection.

Plutarch, in the comparison he draws between Pelopidas and Marcellus, says, that the wound or death of a general, should not be a bare accident, but a means contributing to success, and influencing the victory and safety of the army ; *ἡ μάχη ἀλλὰ πρᾶξις*. And he laments, that the two great men he was speaking of should have sacrificed all their other virtues to their valour, in being lavish of their blood and lives, without a necessity, in dying for themselves, and not for their country, to which generals are as accountable for their deaths, as for their lives.

VIII. *Art and dexterity.*

It were necessary to be a professed soldier to point out, in the different engagements of Hannibal and Scipio, their ability, address, and presence of mind, their watchfulness to make an advantage of all the motions of the enemy, of all the sudden occasions offered by chance, of all the circumstances of time and place, and, in a word, of all that might contribute to the victory. I am very sensible that a soldier must take a great deal of pleasure in reading the description in good authors of those famous battles which have decided the fate of the universe, as well as the reputation of the great captains of antiquity ; and that to study under such masters, and be able to improve as well from their faults, as their good qualities, is a great means of attaining perfection in the art of war. But such reflections are beyond my power, and do not properly belong to me.

X. To b

I place
cause a g
he tong
necessa
he ough
nired m
domines
qual to
which I
To j
historia
the tale
historia
quence
which I
had an
in him
Scipio,
his age
second
with th
ried in
that he
ever,
to take
first au
spoke
spect,
and p
expres
and p
those,
terror

t Liv.

X. To have the talent of speaking and conciliating others to his purposes with address.

I place this quality amongst the military virtues, because a general should transcend in every thing; and the tongue, no less than the head and hand, is often a necessary instrument for the discharging his duty as he ought. 'Tis one of the things which Hannibal admired most in Pyrrhus. *Artem etiam conciliandi sibi homines miram habuisse.* And he makes this talent equal to the perfect knowledge in the art of war, by which Pyrrhus was most distinguished.

To judge of our two generals by their speeches, as historians have preserved them, they both excelled in the talent of speaking. But I question whether those historians have not lent them a little of their own eloquence. Some very ingenious repartees of Hannibal, which history has handed down to us, shew that he had an excellent wit, and that nature alone wrought in him what others attain by art and study. As to Scipio, he had a mind better improved, and though his age was not altogether so polite as that of the second Scipio Africanus, yet his intimate acquaintance with the poet Ennius, with whom he chose to lie buried in one common grave, gives us reason to believe that he did not want a taste for polite learning. However, ^u Livy observes, that upon his arrival in Spain to take upon him the command of the troops, in the first audience he gave the deputies of the province, he spoke with a certain air of grandeur commanding respect, and at the same time with so much simplicity and persuasion, that without letting drop one single expression that had the least tincture of haughtiness and pride, he immediately calmed the fears of all those, whom the view of the past ills had kept under terror and disquietude. ^w Upon another occasion,

^t Liv. lib. xxxv. n. 14.

^u Lib. xxvi. n. 19.

^w Lib. xxviii. n. 18.

when

when Scipio had an interview with Asdrubal, in the apartment of Syphax, the same historian observes, that Scipio could wind and turn them as he pleased, with so much dexterity, that he alike charmed his host and his enemy with the force and turns of his eloquence. And the Carthaginian afterwards owned that this particular discourse had given him a much higher idea of Scipio than all his victories and conquests, and that he did not question but Syphax and his kingdom were already in the power of the Romans, such art and ability had Scipio to draw over others to his party. One single fact like this is a sufficient proof how useful it is to persons designed for the army, carefully to cultivate the art of speaking; and 'tis difficult to comprehend, why officers, who in other respects have great talents for war, should sometimes seem to be ashamed of knowing any thing more than their own profession.

The conclusion.

It would be proper here to give a judgment, whether Hannibal or Scipio excelled most in military virtues. But such a decision is beyond my ability. I have heard say, that in the opinion of good judges, Hannibal was the most consummate general that ever was in the knowledge of war; and that the Romans attained perfection in his school after having served their first apprenticeship against Pyrrhus. It must be owned, no general ever succeeded better in the choice of ground for drawing up an army, or in putting his troops upon the services for which they were most suited, or in laying an ambuscade, or providing a remedy under misfortune, or in maintaining discipline among so many different nations. He drew from himself alone, the subsistence of his troops, the pay of his soldiers, the remounting of his cavalry, the recruits of his foot, and all the necessary ammunition for maintaining a heavy war in a distant country, a-

gainst

gainst
cessive
home,
him in
called

I o
Hanni
bal m
ficult
to ma
as an
been
theatr
try, a
no str
cour,
attach
gour,
the f
rage
short

a pov
up a
he w
when
at the
losses
the c
ney,
had
mak
bal's
was
ceive
thes
vant
B
one
othe

gainst a powerful enemy, for the space of sixteen successive years, and in spite of a powerful faction at home, which refused him every thing, and crossed him in all his enterprizes. Thus he may certainly be called a great general.

I own too, that in making a just comparison of Hannibal's design with Scipio's, the design of Hannibal must be allowed to be more bold, hazardous, difficult and destitute of all resources. He was obliged to march through Gaul, which he was to look upon as an enemy's country, to pass the Alps which had been thought unsurmountable by any other, to fix the theatre of the war in the midst of an enemy's country, and in the very bosom of Italy, where he had no strong places, no magazines, no certainty of success, nor any hopes of retreat. Add to this that he attacked the Romans at the time of their greatest vigour, when their troops, quite fresh and animated with the success of the preceding war, were full of courage and confidence. As for Scipio, he had but a short passage to make from Sicily into Africa. He had a powerful fleet, and was master at sea. He kept up a free communication with Sicily, from whence he was supplied with his ammunition and provision whenever he pleased. He attacked the Carthaginians at the close of a war, wherein they had suffered great losses, at a time when their power was already upon the decline, and they began to be exhausted of money, men and courage; Spain, Sardinia and Sicily had been taken from them, and they could no longer make any diversion there against the Romans. Asdrubal's army was lately cut to pieces, and Hannibal's was extremely weakened by several shocks it had received, and an almost general want of necessaries. All these circumstances seem to give Hannibal a great advantage over Scipio.

But there are two difficulties still to be got over, the one drawn from the generals he conquered, and the other from the faults he committed.

May

May not the victories which have rendered the name of Hannibal so famous, be properly said to bear much owing to the imprudence and rashness of the Roman generals, as to his own valour and wisdom? When they sent a Fabius against him, and then a Scipio, the first put a stop to his progress, and the other overcame him.

The two faults which Hannibal committed in not marching immediately to Rome after the battle of Cannæ, and suffering his soldiers to be corrupted and enervated at Capua, are likewise supposed to take off very much from his reputation. For these faults may be reckoned essential, decisive and irreparable, and both of them contrary to the principal quality of a general, which is capacity and judgment. As for Scipio, I do not know, that during the whole time he commanded the Roman army, he was chargeable with any thing like this.

I do not therefore wonder, that Hannibal in the judgment he gave of the most accomplished generals, after having assigned the third place to himself after Alexander and Pyrrhus, and Scipio asking him what would he say then if he had conquered him? I do not wonder that he should reply, "I would then have taken place of Alexander and Pyrrhus, and of all the generals that have ever been." * A fine flattering encomium in favour of Scipio, whom he distinguished from every other commander, as being superior to them all, and not proper to be brought into comparison with any.

§ II. Moral and civil virtues.

Here Scipio triumphs, whose goodness, mildness, moderation, generosity, justice, chastity, and religion are justly boasted of. Here, I say, we have his

* Et perplexum Punico astu responsum, & improvisum assentionis genus Scipionem movit, quod è grege se Imperatorum velut inestimabilem secrevisset. Liv. lib. xxxv, n. 14.

triumph, or rather the triumph of virtue, which is by far preferable to all the victories, conquests and dignities in the world. 'Tis the beautiful expression of Livy, when speaking of the deliberation of the senate, that was assembled to determine which of the Romans was the man of the greatest probity. *Haud parvæ rei judicium senatum tenebat, qui vir optimus in civitate esset. Veram certe victoriam ejus rei sibi quisque mallet quam ulla imperia, honoresve suffragio seu patrum seu plebis delatos.*

The reader will not much hesitate here, in whose favour he ought to declare, especially if he consults the frightful description which ^z Livy has left us of Hannibal. "His great virtues, says this historian after he had given an encomium of him, were equalled by most enormous vices; inhuman cruelty, a more than Carthaginian perfidy, no regard for truth, nor any reverence for what was most sacred. He had no fear of the Gods, no respect for oaths, nor any religion. *Has tantas viri virtutes ingentia vitia æquabant; inhumana crudelitas, perfidia plusquam Punica, nihil viri, nihil sancti; nullus deum metus, nullum jusjurandum, nulla religio.*

We have here a strange portrait, but I question whether truly copied after nature, and whether prejudice has not in some measure drawn it in too black colours. For the Romans in general may be suspected of not doing the justice to Hannibal that was due to him, and of saying a great many ill things of him, because he did a great many to them. Neither Polybius nor Plutarch, who have frequent occasion to speak of Hannibal, charge him with the horrid vices that Livy imputes to him. The very facts related by Livy contradict the character he has given of him. To take notice only of one single imputation, *Nullus deum metus, nulla religio*, there is proof to the contrary. Before he set out from Spain he took a journey to Cadiz to discharge the vows he had made to Hercules,

^y Liv. lib. xxix. n. 14.

^z Liv. xxi. n. 4.

and made new ones to him, in case that God would favour his enterprize. ^a *Annibal Gades profectus, Herculi vota exsolvit, novisque se obligat votis, si cætera prosperè evenissent.* Is this step like the proceedings of a man without religion, or the fear of the Gods? What could oblige him to leave his army to undertake so tedious a pilgrimage? If it was hypocrisy to impose upon a superstitious people, it would have been more advantageous to him to have put on this mask of religion in the sight of all his troops assembled together, as the Romans did in the lustrations of their armies. ^b Presently after Hannibal has a vision, which he believes sent from the Gods to declare to him what was to happen, and the event of his enterprize. He lay several years near the rich temple of Juno Lacinia, and not only took nothing from it in the most pressing necessities of his army, but was also so careful of it, though it stood without the town, that none of the soldiers ever stole any thing from it; and even left there a magnificent monument before his departure out of Italy. He paid the same respect to all other temples; and we no where read, ^c as I remember, that his troops ever plundered any in the confusion of a war, diversified by so many events. ^d He evidently acknowledged the power of the Deity, when he declared that the Gods sometimes took from him the inclination, and sometimes the power of taking Rome. ^e In the treaty he made with Philip, having first appealed to the Gods as witnesses, he plainly declares that he expected all the success of his arms from their protection; ^f and lastly, when he comes to die, he invokes all the Gods, who are revengers of the breach of hospitality. All these facts and several others of a like nature, absolutely overthrow the crime of irreligion, which Livy lays to his charge. And the same may be said of his perjuries and unfaithfulness in keeping of treaties.

^a Liv. lib. xxi. n. 21.

^b Ib. n. 22.

^c Lib. xxviii. n. 46.

^d Lib. xxvi. n. 11.

^e Lib. xxiii. n. 33. This circumstance is mentioned by Polybius.

^f Lib. xxxix. n. 51.

I do not know that he ever broke one, though the Carthaginians did, but without his being concerned in it. However, I shall not here draw a parallel between these two generals with reference to their civil and moral virtues. I shall satisfy myself with relating some of those, which were most eminent in Scipio.

I. Generosity and Liberality.

This is the virtue of great minds, as the love of money is the vice of the base and dishonourable. Scipio understood the true value of money, which is to gain friends and buy mankind. The contributions which he made in a proper season: The ransoms he generously restored to those who came to redeem their children or relations, gained him almost as many hearts as his victories. By this means he entered into the views and character of the Roman people, who chose rather, as he expresses it himself, to oblige mankind by civility than fear; *qui beneficio quàm metu obligare hominès malit.*

II. Goodness, Gentleness.

All men cannot be partakers of our benefits, but we may express our good inclination towards all. 'Tis a sort of coin that several are satisfied with, and does not exhaust the treasury of the general.

Scipio had a wonderful talent in conciliating the inclinations and gaining the hearts of others by a civil and engaging behaviour.

He was very obliging to the officers, set a just value upon their services, extolled their bravery, rewarded them with presents or commendations, and behaved thus even towards those, who might have given him some jealousy, had he been capable of it. He always honourably treated that famous officer Marcius, and kept him near his person, who after the death of

his father and uncle, had supported the affairs of Spain; thereby shewing, says the historian, how remote he was from any apprehensions of fear or distrust. ^h *Ut facile appareret nihil minus quam vereri ne quis obstaret gloriæ suæ.*

He knew how to temper even reprimands with such an air of kindness and cordiality, as rendered them amiable. ⁱ The rebuke he was obliged to give Mafiniffa, for giving way to a blind passion, in marrying Sophonisba, the declared enemy of the Roman people, is a perfect model of the manner of behaving and speaking upon such delicate conjunctures. We find in it all the refinements of eloquence, all the precautions of prudence and wisdom, all the regard of friendship, with all the dignity and noble superiority of command, without the least expression of haughtiness and pride.

His goodness distinguished itself even with chastisements. He never employed correction but once, and that much against his own inclination. 'Twas in the sedition of Sucrone, which necessarily required a publick example. "And then, he ^k said, it was "like tearing out his own bowels, when he found "himself obliged to expiate the fault of eight thousand "by putting thirty to death." It is remarkable here that Scipio does not make use of the words *scelus*, *crimen*, *facinus*, but of *noxa*, which is far more gentle, and signifies a *fault*. He even does not go so far as to determine absolutely whether it was a fault, and he leaves room to think it only imprudence and folly, *oſto millium seu imprudentiam, seu noxam.*

He thought it far better to contribute to the preservation of a single citizen, than to kill a thousand of the enemy. ⁱ Capitolinus observes that the Emperor

^h Lib. xxvi. n. 20.

ⁱ Lib. xxx. n. 14.

^k Tum se haud secus quàm viscera secantem suæ, cum gemitu & lacrymis triginta hominum capitibus expiassè octo millium seu imprudentiam, seu noxam. Lib.

xxviii. n. 32.

ⁱ Antoninus Pius Scipionis sententiam frequentabat, qua ille dicebat, malle se unum civem servare, quàm mille hostes occidere. Capitol. c. 9.

Antoninus Pius used frequently to repeat this maxim of Scipio and put it in practice.

III. *Justice.*

The exercise of this virtue is properly the function of persons in high station and authority. It was by this virtue that Scipio rendered the Roman government so gentle and agreeable to the allies and conquered nations, and made himself to tenderly beloved by the people, who considered him as their protector and father. He must have had a great zeal for justice, as he was so exact in shewing it to his very enemies after an action which took away all pretensions they could have to it. The Carthaginians during a truce, which was granted them at their earnest entreaty, knowingly and by order of the republick, took and plundered certain Roman vessels, that were put to sea; and to make the insult still greater, the ambassadors, which were sent to Carthage to complain of it, were set upon as they came back and narrowly escaped being taken by Asdrubal. The ambassadors of Carthage, as they were returning from Rome, fell into the hands of Scipio, who was very much pressed to make use of reprisals. "No," says he, though the Carthaginians have not only broke the truce, but have also violated the law of nations in the persons of our ambassadors, I will not treat theirs in a manner unworthy either the maxims of the Roman people, or the rules of moderation I have hitherto constantly observed."

IV. *Magnanimity.*

It shone out in all the actions of Scipio, and in almost all his words; but the people of Spain were more especially affected with it, when he refused the title of

m *Et si non induciarum modo situtis populi Romani, nec suis fides à Carthaginienſibus, ſed etiam jus gentium in legatis violatum eſſet: tamen ſe nihil nec in-*

ſtitutis populi Romani, nec ſuis moribus indignum in iis facturum eſſe. Lib. xxxiii. n. 25.

King, which they offered him upon being charm'd with his valour and generosity. They saw plainly, says Livy, what a greatness of soul there was in thus looking down with disdain upon a title, which is the highest object of admiration and desire with the rest of mankind.

° It was with the same air of grandeur, that when he was obliged to defend himself before the people, he spoke so nobly of his military expeditions, and instead of making a timorous apology in behalf of his conduct, he marched directly to the Capitol, with all the people at his heels, to thank the Gods for the victories they had enabled him to gain.

V. Chastity.

It is not easy to comprehend that a pagan should have carried his love to this virtue so far as Scipio did. The story of the beautiful young Princess, who was kept in his house with as much care as if she had been in her father's, is known to all the world. I have related it in another place, as likewise the beautiful discourse he made to Masinissa upon the same subject.

VI. Religion.

I have often quoted the famous discourse of Cambyfes King of Persia to his son Cyrus, which is deservedly looked upon as containing an abridgment of the most useful instructions that can be given to a general of an army or a minister of state. This excellent discourse begins and ends with the subject of religion. as if every other branch of advice were useless without this. Cambyfes recommends to his son, before all, and above all, religiously to discharge every duty that the Deity requires of men, never to undertake any en-

n Sensere etiam barbari magnitudinem animi, cujus miraculo neminis alii mortales stuperent, id ex tam alto fastigio aspernantis. Lib. xxvii. n. 19.
o Lib. xxxviii.

terprize, great or small, without consulting the Gods, to begin all his actions with imploring their assistance, and conclude them with giving them thanks, as all good success arises from their protection, which no man can claim, and consequently ought to be referred to them. And this, indeed, was constantly observed by Cyrus with the utmost exactness, as we have said already in speaking of this Prince; and he owns himself, in the discourse from whence this is taken, that he entered upon his first campaign with a full confidence in the goodness of the Gods, because he could truly give this testimony of himself, that he had never neglected their worship.

I know not whether our Scipio had read the *Cyropædia*, as it is certain the second Scipio did, who made it his ordinary study; but it is visible, that he exactly copied after Cyrus, and especially in this point of religious worship. ^p From the time he took upon him the *Toga virilis*, that is, from his seventeenth year, he never entered upon any business, either publick or private, without going first to the Capitol and imploring the assistance of Jupiter. ^q We have in Livy the solemn prayer he made to the Gods, when he set out from Sicily for Africa; and the same historian does not fail to observe, that immediately after the conquest of Carthage he publickly returned thanks to the Gods for the good success of that enterprize. *Postero die militibus navalibusque sociis convocatis, primum diis immortalibus laudesque & grates egit.*

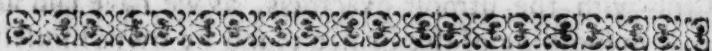
It is not our business here to enquire what the religion either of Cyrus or Scipio was. We know very well, that it could be no other than a false one. But the example that is given to all commanders, and in general to all mankind, of beginning and ending all their actions with prayers and thanksgiving, is of no less force. For what would they not have said and

^p Liv. lib. xxvi. n. 19.

^r Lib. xxvi. n. 48.

^q Lib. xxix. n. 17.

done, if like us they had been guided by the lights of true religion, and had enjoyed the happiness of knowing the true God? After such examples, how shameful would it be for Christian generals to seem less religious than those ancient commanders amongst the pagans?



ARTICLE the SECOND.

The principal characters and virtues of the Romans with respect to war.

THE space of time, whereof I have abridged the history, and which Polybius chose for his subject, was, as I have already observed, the flourishing times of the Roman republick, * which rendered Rome the mistress of the universe, and forced all nations to own, that a people, so far superior in merit and virtue, deserved also the superiority in power and authority. It was indeed, after this time, that the Roman power, which had contended with its neighbours for several ages, within a very narrow compass, spread itself abroad like a river, or a sea which has broke its bounds, and over-run almost the whole three parts of the world with an incredible rapidity.

Plutarch, in a treatise entitled, *De fortuna Romanorum*, gives a glorious description of the grandeur of the Roman empire, of which it may not here be improper to give an abstract. The most powerful nations of the world, says he, with their utmost endeavours, contending for universal empire, gave occasion to an horrible confusion in the universe, till such time as the Roman republick uniting all people and kingdoms under her command, the whole took a firm situation, and a secure seat under a government, which taking

* Polyb. p. 160.

in almost every part of the world, made them enjoy the fruits of peace and order under her shadow, by the administration of the great men she produced, in whom every virtue shone forth.— After having observed that the rapidity, with which Rome extended her dominions, did not arise from men, but God, he goes on; Rome no more measures her victories by the multitude of the slain, the greatness of the spoil, or the number of conquered cities; her achievements are never at an end, in subduing nations, in enslaving kingdoms, in conquering great islands and vast regions. Nothing is seen there but triumphs upon triumphs, and conquests upon conquests. Philip is ruined by a single blow. Another drives the great Antiochus out of Asia. In the same year one month suffices for the conquest of Macedonia, another for subduing the kingdom of Illyria, and putting their two kings to the sword. " One of her generals only in the course of the same expedition, brings under subjection Armenia, Pontus, Syria, Palestine, Arabia, the Albanians and Iberians, and extends the bounds of her dominions as far as the Caspian and Red Sea. And what is very remarkable, adds the same author, this happy genius of Rome has not favoured her only for a few days and a short space of time, nor merely either by sea or land, nor after slow efforts and long delays, nor has suddenly forsaken her, as has happened in other empires, but born in a manner and grown up with Rome, has there taken and fixed her abode, has always presided over her government, has ever regulated her conduct, and constantly procured her the most glorious successes in war and peace, by sea and land, against Greeks and Barbarians.

This establishment of the Roman Empire, the greatest and most powerful that ever was, " Polybius says, was not the effect of chance, but the result of merit and virtue, the consequence of designs wisely concerted, valiantly executed, and carried on with unvariable

t Perseus & Gentius.

∴ u Pompey.

w Pag. 64.

E 5

attention

attention and ability. It is therefore useful and important, * continues he, to enquire what were the principles of the victors conduct, before and after the victory, the disposition of the people in regard to them, and what was thought of those who were at the helm of the republick.

We have already seen what the great men were, who during this interval contributed to the aggrandizing of the Roman Empire; it now remains to consider what was the genius and character of the Roman people.

We find it excellently described in ^y Sallust. “ We must not think, says Cato there, that our ancestors increased the power of Rome, in the manner they did, by their numerous armies; they had other advantages which made them truly great, and the republick with them; at home a laborious life, abroad a just and wise government, in deliberations a spirit exempt from passion and vice;—In the field as in the city, says the same historian in another place, good manners and good principles chiefly prevailed, and the absolute dominion that justice and virtue had over the Romans, rose less from the laws than their own natural disposition. In fine, they supported themselves and the republick, by a double means; in war by boldness and valour, in peace by justice and moderation.”

We must not conclude from what Sallust says here of this happy period of the republick, or from what we shall hereafter say upon the same subject, that all the Romans, or even the greatest number of them

x Pag. 160.

y Nolite existimare majores nostros armis remp. ex parva magnam fecisse. . . . Alia fuere, quæ illos magnos fecere, quæ nobis nulla sunt; domi industria, foris justum imperium; animus in consulendo liber, neque delicto neque lubrici obnoxius, Sallust. in bello

Catilin.

Domus militiæque boni mores colebantur. . . . Jus bonumque apud eos non legibus magis quam natura valebat. . . . Duabus his artibus, audacia in bello, ubi pax evenerat æquitate, seque remque publicam curabant. Ibid.

were such as are here described; but this was the spirit of the republick, the genius of those who governed them, * this small number drew all the rest after them, and produced these wonderful effects.

Neither must we imagine that the virtues we have been commending were very pure and solid. We set the full value upon them, and represent them as Roman virtues, not as Christian. And yet imperfect as they were, it pleased God, as St. Austin observes, to crown them with the empire of the world; a recompence worthy of the Romans, who expected no other, and as vain as their virtues. *Receperunt mercedem suam*, says the Gospel, *vani vanam*, as we may add with a father who expresses himself thus concerning these illustrious pagans.

Having taken these precautions, and made use of these preservatives, I shall now proceed to relate the principal virtues, wherein the Romans excelled in war. And this I shall do with all the brevity that I can.

I. *Equity and wise caution in undertaking and declaring war.*

The Romans never lightly, or rashly engaged in a war. Before all things they endeavoured to gain the favour of the Gods, expecting success only from their protection, and ² persuaded that as they presided in a particular manner over the events of war, they always inclined the victory to the side of justice and equity. Hence it arose, that they never took up arms without first sending heralds to the enemy, whom they named *Feciales*, to lay open their grievances and causes of complaint; nor did they declare war against them,

* Ac mihi multa agitati constabat, paucorum civium egregiam virtutem cupēta patuisse. Ibid.

² Vicerunt dii hominesque, & id, de quo verbis ambigebatur,

uter populus fœdes rupisset, eventus belli, velut æquus iudex, unde ius stabat, ei victoriam dedit. Liv. lib. xxi, n. 10.

but upon their refusal to make satisfaction. It was only because they would not omit these ceremonies, in which part of their religion consisted, that they suffered Saguntum to be miserably destroyed, whose ruin, as a judicious Carthaginian had foretold, recoiled upon Carthage itself, and drew on its destruction. The Romans were alike reserved in the cases of Philip, Antiochus, and Perseus, though these Princes were the aggressors, and had long before broken their treaties by several manifest infractions.

II. *Perseverance and constancy in a resolution once taken and decreed.*

^a The slower and more dilatory the Romans were at first, the brisker and more persevering they were in the execution. This appears evidently from the siege of Capua only. It was resolved by the Romans to attack that considerable city, the revolt of which being left unpunished for several years, seemed to reflect shame upon Rome. At the time that Italy was ravaged by such an enemy as Hannibal, and the horrors of the war were most sensibly felt by them, they abandoned all, and quitted Hannibal himself to lay siege to Capua, whither they sent the two consuls, at the head of two separate armies. The siege lasted above a year, and Hannibal used his utmost endeavours to save that city, which he had so much cause to value. As a last effort he marches towards Rome with a numerous army. "There is no beast," ^b says a citizen of Capua, "so intent upon his prey, but will quit his hold, if his den is attempted, and its young in danger of being carried off. But for the Romans, neither the siege of Rome, nor the cries and groans of their wives and children, which they heard almost in the camp, could divert them from the siege of Capua."

^a Quo lenius agunt segnius incipiunt; eo, cum coeperint, vero ne perseverantius sæviant, Lib,

xxi. n. 10.

^b Liv, lib, xxvi. n. 13.

c The conquest and exemplary punishment of that revolted city convinced the world of the perseverance of the Romans in pursuing their unfaithful allies with vengeance, and how unable Hannibal was to succour a city which had thrown itself under his protection.

But this character of perseverance and constancy appears to me most admirable in the Romans, in their treaties of peace with their enemies. The terms of it were expressed at the beginning of the war, and no future event could ever induce them to depart in the least from them. Neither the shocks they sometimes received made them diminish those conditions in any thing, nor did the considerable victories they obtained occasion any addition; so firm and invariable were this people in their resolutions, as judging them to be founded in reason and equity. The treaties they made with the Carthaginians, and with the three Princes whose overthrow followed upon that of Carthage, were all of this nature.

III. *The habit of inuring themselves to painful labours and military exercises; the incredible severity of their discipline, and the different rewards of merit.*

The Romans may properly be said to have been a nation of soldiers, born and trained up to war, from whence they derived all their glory and power, as it made their principal occupation. Their troops were not collected at random, but made up of citizens settled at Rome, or in the country, who fought for themselves whilst they were fighting for the state. They were enured to military labour from their infancy.

d *Robustus acri militia puer condiscat, &c.* e 'Tis surprising to see what burdens they were loaded with in a march. Every soldier carried provisions for several days, one palisade and sometimes more, with all the necessaries of life, besides his buckler, sword and helmet, which were not reckoned a burthen, because the

c Ibid, n. 16,

d Horat,

e Cic. Tusc. quæst. lib. ii. n. 37.
arms

arms were in a manner part of the soldier, and looked upon as members of his body. Their long sieges, painful marches, remote expeditions, the extraordinary weight of their arms, baggage and ammunition, their ordinary labour in fortifying the camp, though for a very short residence, and several other very fatiguing exercises of this nature, could not extinguish in them their love for the glory of their country; and so invincible a patience enabled them to conquer the whole earth.

It is easy to imagine what an impression those bloody executions made upon men's minds, ^f wherein fathers and consuls, to maintain and confirm the military discipline, which they looked upon as the principal support of the state, thought themselves obliged to shed the blood of their own children and of the principal officers of the army. After such examples a private soldier had no room to imagine that his disobedience could escape unpunished.

But what renders the Roman armies invincible, was this great principle early established, and inviolably observed among the troops, that it was an indelible reproach, and an unpardonable crime in a Roman to deliver up his arms and voluntarily surrender to the enemy, a principle which left no medium betwixt death and victory. Thus when it was proposed in the senate, after the battle of Cannæ, to redeem soldiers who had surrendered to Hannibal, to the number of about eight thousand, notwithstanding the pressing instances of their relations, and the want the ^e republic then was in of troops, they still firmly adhered to the old maxim of not redeeming the captives, as absolutely necessary in that conjuncture to confirm and preserve the military discipline; and they rather chose to arm a like number of slaves, than make the least en-

^f Quemadmodum . . . quantum in te fuit, disciplinam militarem, qua stetit ad hanc diem Romana res, solvisti . . . nos potius nostro delicto plectemur, quam respub-

lica tanto suo damno nostra peccata luat. Triste exemplum, sed in posterum salubre juventuti erimus. Lib. viii. n. 7.

^g Lib. xxii, n. 60.

croachment

encroachment on a principle, upon which the security of the state depended. They easily comprehended, says Polybius, that Hannibal's view in the offer he made of restoring the prisoners for a certain ransom was not so much to obtain a considerable sum of money, which notwithstanding he wanted extremely, as to remove from the Roman troops, that sense of honour and incentive to glory they carried with them to the battle, by letting them see there was a remedy left, and some hope of safety remaining for those who yielded to the enemy. ⁱ But the senate, by absolutely rejecting this proposal, resolved in refusing, to confirm authentically the ancient law of the Romans, either to conquer or die in the field. Such constancy and magnanimity, adds Polybius, disappointed Hannibal, and gave him more terror, than his victory had occasioned him joy and hope.

Add to these different motives, the marks of honour and rewards, which were publicly given after a battle, or any important action; the praises which the generals thought it their duty to bestow upon the officers, and even upon the common soldiers, as Livy observes of Scipio, and the glorious testimonies they gave in a full senate, at their return from their campaign, in favour of such as had distinguished themselves most. All this inspired the troops with inexpressible ardour, emulation and courage. By this means private officers acquired the merit of the general, as was seen upon an important occasion, which preserved Spain to the Romans. After the death of the two Scipio's, their affairs there seemed absolutely desperate. ^k A private Roman knight, at that time very young, but of courage and magnanimity above his age and condition, who had served several years under Cneius Scipio, and had learnt the art of war under him, was chosen general by common consent, and by his valour and prudence saved the army. This

ⁱ Polyb. pag. 500.

^k Τοῖς παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐπομοδίησαν

ⁱ νικᾷ μαχομένους, ἢ θνήσκουσιν. 1b.

^k Lib. xxv. n. 37.

was Marcius, upon whom our Scipio set a great value, when he came into Spain, and ever after distinguished in a peculiar manner. Able officers were formed in this manner under able generals.

IV. Clemency and moderation in victory.

It was the maxim of the Romans to treat the people and princes, who submitted to them with mildness and clemency; as also to make those who persevered in their resistance, feel the whole weight of their greatness and power. This the poet has beautifully expressed in the following verse, which may be looked upon as the motto of the Roman people,

1 *Parcere subjectis, & debellare superbos.*

“ To spare the vanquish’d, and subdue the proud.

1. Though extremely incensed against the Carthaginians, when their deputies appeared in the senate, in the quality of suppliants, and in an humble and pathetic tone, implored the mercy of the Roman people, their vengeance and indignation gave way to sentiments of gentleness and clemency, and peace was granted them; though it was certain that it would not have been difficult for the Romans to have destroyed Carthage, and completed the conquest of Africa. ’Twas on this occasion that Asdrubal, surnamed Hædus, who spoke as the principal deputy, complimented the Roman people in the following manner. “ It is very rare, said he, that prosperity and moderation meet together, and that men should at the same time be successful and wise. The Roman people are in-

1 *Æn. lib. viii. v. 853.*

m Rarè simul hominibus bonam fortunam bonamque mentem dari. Populum Romanum eo invictum esse, quòd in secundis rebus sapere & consulere meminerit. Et hercule mirandum fuisse, si aliter fa-

cerent. Ex insolentia, quibus nova bona fortuna sit, impotentes lætitiæ insanire: populo Romano usitata ac prope jam obsoleta ex victoria gaudia esse; ac plus penè parcendo victis, quàm vincendo imperium auxisse. Lib. xxx. n. 42.

“ vincible,

“vincible, because they suffer themselves not to be
“blinded with their good fortune. And indeed it
“would be surprizing, added he, if they acted other-
“wise: For such only are dazzled and transported
“with prosperity, as are unacquainted with it.
“Whereas the Romans are so accustomed to conquer,
“that they are scarce any longer sensible of the plea-
“sure arising from victory; and it may be said to
“their glory, that they have in a manner augmented
“their empire more, by pardoning the conquered
“than by conquering.”

2. ⁿ The Romans kept nothing to themselves of the conquests they gained over Philip of Macedon. For the whole fruit of their victories, they reserved only the pleasure of enriching their allies, and the glory of restoring liberty to Greece. And that this present so magnificent, extraordinary, and till then unheard of, might not be subject to suspicion, or future change of sentiments, they withdrew their garrisons out of all their cities, without so much as excepting one.

They used the like moderation after they had conquered Antiochus. They exempted all the people of Asia, as far as mount Taurus, from their subjection to him. They gratified their allies with fleets, sea-ports, cities, and whole provinces, without keeping to themselves either galley or city, or requiring any tribute, jurisdiction or homage for so many countries as were conquered and freed by their arms.

4. ^o As soon as they had subdued Macedon, they reduced all the taxes and customs they paid their Kings to half the amount. They renounced the immense profits, which arose from the gold and silver mines, for this only reason, because they were a burthen to the inhabitants. They granted every city the right of governing themselves by their own laws, of creating their own magistrates and officers, of holding provincial assemblies for the absolute regulation of publick business, and they granted these people, who had

ⁿ Liv. lib. xxxiii, n. 30.

^o Ibid. xlv. n. 18.

long been enemies, all the privileges of entire liberty.

5. ^p The Romans treated the Illyrians with like humanity and moderation, after their victory over Gentius. They suffered them to enjoy the same exemptions, and liberty, though they had held out so long against them; and after they had withdrawn all the Roman troops, they established the same form of government there as in Macedon.

V. *Valour and Magnanimity in adversity.*

This is the most peculiar character of the Roman people, and shews besides a force and constancy which nothing could shake or destroy.

This disposition was never shewn in a more wonderful manner than after the battle of Cannæ. That battle gave the last blow to the preceding defeats, which had already extremely weakened the state. Two consuls with their armies were entirely overthrown. The republick had neither soldiers nor generals. Several of the allies were gone over to the victorious side. Hannibal was master of Samnium, and almost all Italy. Such a blow, so terrible a misfortune would have crushed any other people but them. ^q Yet neither the defeat of so many armies, nor the defection of their allies could incline the Roman people to hearken to peace. They shewed not the least sign of weakness or discouragement. But all in general conspired to promote the publick good. The resolution was as quick as unanimous to defend themselves, and not lend an ear to any proposal of accommodation.

^r What Polybius says, upon the occasion of another battle, was then verified; that the Romans both in general and particular, are never more terrible, than when they are exposed to the greatest dangers, and seem most upon the brink of destruction.

^p Liv. lib. xlv. n. 26.

^q Lib. xxii. n. 61.

^r Polyb. pag. 227.

VI. Justice and adherence to their engagements the principles of the Roman government; the springs of the love and confidence of the citizens, allies, and conquered nations.

It is an opinion very anciently established amongst abundance of persons, and not entirely eradicated by Christianity itself, that justice and policy are scarce capable of being allied together; that a man designed for administration should not make himself a slave to the laws; that exact probity and a scrupulous adherence to their word and solemn engagements, would often lay a Prince and minister under great difficulties; that the interest of the state should always be the rule and motive of governments; in a word, that it is impossible to manage publick business without committing some injustice, *Rempubicam regi sine injuria non posse.*

Tully in his books *de republica*, which is an extract from Plato's admirable work upon the same subject, has fully refuted this opinion. It is not only according to him a false and contradictory notion to believe, that no one can succeed in the administration of publick affairs without sometimes acting unjustly, but he looks upon the opposite principle as an incontestable truth, and as the basis and foundation of all the rules that can be laid down in matter of politicks, namely, that A STATE CANNOT BE GOVERNED WELL WITHOUT A STRICT OBSERVANCE OF JUSTICE IN ALL THINGS. ' *Nihil est quod adhuc de repub. putem dictum, & quo possim longius progredi, nisi sit confirmatum, non modo falsum esse illud, sine injuria non posse, sed hoc verissimum, sine summa justitia rempublicam regi non posse.*

To give the greater weight and authority to his arguments, he had put them into the mouth of Lælius and Scipio Africanus, the grandson by adoption of him we have so long been speaking of. 'Tis easy to

f Fragm. Cic. apud S. Aug. lib. ii. c. 21. de civit. Dei.

discern how much we have suffered by the loss of so excellent a work, which was copied by such an able hand, after so perfect an original. These two illustrious friends, Lælius and Scipio, who were the admiration of their own age, and may well be proposed to ours as the models of great generals and great statesmen, lay down this maxim as an indisputable principle in point of government, That there is nothing more pernicious to a state than injustice, and that no republick can ever be well governed, or even subsist without justice: *Nihil tam inimicum quam injustitiam civitati, nec omnino nisi magna justitia gerant stare posse rempublicam.*

Such were the rules and maxims of the Roman people in the prosperous days of which we have been speaking, and this idea their allies and the conquered nations had of them. 'Livy observes, that the loss of the three first battles gained by Hannibal, which spread such universal terror and consternation, did not however shake the fidelity of the allies. *Nec tamen is terror cum omnia flagrarent, bello fide socios dimovit.* The reason he brings for it is very glorious to the Roman people, and gives us in a few words, the idea of a perfect government. For the allies, says he, finding they were under a just and moderate government, without difficulty obey'd a people, that was far superior to them in merit, which is the only bond of fidelity. *Videlicet quia justo & moderato regebantur imperio, nec abnuebant, quod unum vinculum fidei est, melioribus parere.* The conquered nations were of the same opinion, and comparing the Roman dominion with that under which they had formerly lived, and the Roman generals with their ancient masters, they looked upon the former as men sent down from heaven, such justice, goodness and humanity did they shew towards them; and they blessed themselves for having fallen under the power of a people, who strove to engage mankind to obey them more by kindness

than fear, and took pains to deserve the love and confidence of foreign nations, by a mild and just government, instead of making them bear the yoke of a sorrowful servitude. ^u *Venisse eos in populi Romani potestatem, qui beneficio quam metu obligare homines malit, exterarumque gentes fide ac societate junctas habere, quam tristi subiectas servitio.*

But perhaps it might be the interest of a Roman senate, to behave thus towards their allies, and the conquered nations which lay at a distance, and they shewed less regard to their citizens and natural subjects, who for this reason were less attached to the republick, and bore it the less affection. On the contrary, 'tis in this particular, the Roman people is most to be admired; and what I am about to say, will clearly shew, that the greatest resource of a state is the affection of the people, their love to the government, and the confidence they have in the publick faith; and that to give the least blow to it, is in point of politicks the most capital, pernicious and irreparable fault.

After the battle of Cannæ, all seemed absolutely desperate. The fidelity of the greatest part of the allies was overwhelmed by so terrible a blow. The state had neither generals, troops nor money, and yet new raised troops and fresh recruits were indispensably necessary. They were obliged to fit out fleets, to furnish provisions, arms and clothes. But though the state was in want of every thing, it did not want credit, and found ready and sure supplies in the affection of the citizens.

^w The consul urged, that the magistrates ought to set the example to the senate, and the senate to the people, of assisting the republick in the extremity to which they were reduced; that the way to engage the lower people to contribute of their substance to the support of the state, was to begin with doing it themselves; that thus they ought all to bring their gold

^u Lib. xxvi. n. 49.

^w Lib. xxvi. n. 36.

and silver into the publick treasury. This was immediately done, and with so much zeal, that the receivers and notaries were scarce sufficient to answer the eagerness of the publick, every one striving for the honour of subscribing first: The order of senators, and then the people did the same, without requiring for all this any publick edict.

* Of the thirty colonies in Italy, eighteen sent deputies to Rome, to declare they were ready to furnish the troops required of them, and even more if it was judged necessary; that thanks to the Gods, they wanted neither means nor courage to do it. *Ad id sibi neque opes deesse animum etiam superesse.* These deputies were received both by the senate and people, with loud acclamations and extraordinary marks of joy and honour. Livy has thought proper to preserve the names of these colonies in his history, & that they might not, says he, want the honour so many ages after which is so justly their due. For the other twelve colonies, who refused to raise the levies required, the senate thought it most suitable to the dignity of the Roman people, to punish them only by taking no notice of them. *Ea tacita castigatio magis ex dignitate populi Romani visa est.*

They received at the same time letters from the two Scipio's, who commanded in Spain, by which though they undertook to supply the soldiers pay of themselves, they required clothes and provisions to be sent them immediately, or otherwise it would be impossible to preserve the province. The republick were unable to supply them in the condition it then was. The prætor called an assembly, and laid before the people the necessities of the publick, and the impossibility the state was in of supplying them, if it wanted credit as well as money. He exhorted those

* This was some time after.

* Itaque, nisi fide staret res-

y Ne nunc quidem post tot seculis publica, opibus non staturam, fiantur, fraudulenturque laude sua. Lib. xxiii. n. 48.
Lib. xxvii. n. 12.

who in times past had increased their estates by farming the revenues of the Roman people, now to lend the republick a part of the substance they had gained by it, and to make advances for Spain, with a promise, that these sums should be exactly repaid them, as soon as the state should be in a condition to do it. Three powerful companies offered their assistance, and the armies in Spain were as plentifully supplied, as in the times of the greatest opulence.

^a This noble disinterestedness and ardent zeal reigned equally in all the orders and bodies of the state.

^b The fleet were in want of seamen and provisions. It was agreed to lay a general tax upon every member of the state, in proportion to the rank and revenue of every private man, and the thing was executed without delay or murmur.

The publick buildings were fallen to decay for want of a proper fund for the repairing of them. The undertakers cheerfully went about it, without requiring any money for their work, till the war should be ended.

In this common emulation and general disposition of the state, to aid and support the publick treasury, they first brought in the orphan's money, and then the widows: ^c those who had it in possession, judging they could not deposite it in a more secure and sacred asylum, than in that of the publick credit.

This generosity passed from the city into the camp. Every horseman, centurion and officer refused their pay, and whoever took it was looked upon as a mercenary wretch.

The event shewed that they had reason to rely upon the republick. Every debt, every sum of money advanced, with every obligation, was discharged with the utmost exactness. They would have even paid off

^a Hi mores eaque caritas patriæ per omnes ordines velut tenore uno pertinebat. Lib. xxiii. n. 49.

^b Lib. xxiv. n. 11.

^c Nusquam eas tutius sanctiusque deponere credentibus, qui deserebant, quam in publica fide. Lib. xxiv. n. 18.

some of them before the term agreed on ; and notwithstanding the scarcity of money, they offered the masters of the slaves that were restored to their liberty, to pay the full price for them ; but all declared they would not receive it till the war was terminated.

It is from such facts as these we must form a just idea of the Roman government. That single expression which I have quoted, and which might deserve to be engraven in letters of gold, *that they found no asylum more secure or more sacred wherein to deposit the money of orphans and widows, than that of the publick faith* : This single expression, I say, is the highest encomium that can be imagined of the Roman character. We learn from thence, that according to the constant maxim of all the great men of antiquity, the most famous legislators, and wisest politicians, the design and supreme rule of government is the good of the publick, and the safety of the people. *Salus^d populi suprema lex esto* ; the affection of the people also, and their confidence in the justice and integrity of those who governed them, are the firmest support, and sometimes the safety and sole resource of states.

VII. Respect for Religion.

We need but open the historians to be convinced, that religion prevailed in every thing amongst the Romans. Were they to undertake a war, or engage in a battle, they consulted the Gods, implored their assistance, and employed all the proper means of rendering them favourable. Had they obtained a victory or any advantage, they presently ordered publick thanksgivings, sacrifices and festivals, and the concourse of people in all the temples was incredible. Hannibal was scarce set out upon his return into Africa, but they blamed themselves for their delay in returning thanks to the Gods, for a benefit so long

^d Cic. lib. de leg. n. 8.

^e Lib. xxx. n. 21.

exped
ing p
Gods
negle
misfo
that
gentl
and
whic
noth
foun
what
peric
relig
it w
spirit
wha
who
thou
rities
honest
of a
nage
bein
gove
sure.

I
posit
action
reflec
sion,
ever
glori

f I
notum
inveni
sequen

expected, and so little hoped for. ^f It was a prevailing principle among them, that piety towards the Gods was the cause of all their good success, as the neglect of their worship brought upon them all their misfortunes. Hence it came to pass, says Polybius ^g, that the Romans, in any pressing necessity, so diligently applied themselves to gain the favour of Gods and men, and that in all the ceremonies of religion, which such sort of conjunctures required, there was nothing mean or unworthy their grandeur to be found. ^h And in another place he observes, that what raised the Roman people to such a degree of superiority above all other nations, was their respect for religion and fear of the Gods, though in other places it was often treated as the sign of a mean and narrow spirit. Among the Greeks, adds he, let them take what pains they please, to tie up the hands of those who are intrusted with the publick money, by a thousand precautions of signatures, witnesses, securities and overseers; it is all insufficient to keep them honest: whereas among the Romans, the religion of an oath only keeps their hands clean in the management of far more considerable sums; nothing being more rare at Rome than to have a general or a governor convicted of embezzling the publick treasure.

VIII. *The love of Glory.*

I shall conclude with this article, because the disposition I am now speaking of, was the soul of all the actions of the Romans. ⁱ St. Augustin makes this reflection in several places, and observes that this passion, I mean the thirst of glory, extinguished in them every other passion; that all their most beautiful and glorious actions, which have gained them the admi-

^f Intuemini horum deinceps annorum vel secundas res vel adversas, invenietis omnia prosperè evenisse sequentibus Deos, adversa spernenti-

bus. Lib. v. n. 51.

^g Pag. 262.

^h Pag. 498.

ⁱ De civ. Dei, lib. v. c. 12.

ration of all people and all ages, were entirely owing to this. The desire of being esteemed and commended, as defenders and protectors of liberty, justice and laws, and as enemies of injustice, violence and tyranny; this desire, I say, was a kind of curb, which restrained and moderated their ambition, and inspired them with those sentiments of goodness, clemency and generosity, with the simple relation of which we are still charmed after so many ages.

Was ever any day more glorious to the Roman empire, than when by her order liberty was restored to all the states of Greece, and the edict for it published amidst the joyful acclamations and applauses of so many people? How great an encomium was that then heard through all Greece, the sound of which soon after passed through the whole universe, ^k that there was a nation upon earth, which scrupled not to take upon itself the expences, fatigues and dangers of long and laborious wars, to procure the liberty of nations remote from their country; and who crossed the seas to prevent there being an unjust government or empire in any part of the world, and to establish justice, equity and laws universally?

Upon these motives the Romans acted in the flourishing ages of the republick. It was this spirit which animated their consuls and their generals. ^l They aspired to rule, but by the methods of honour and glory, and to this end they strictly observed justice and the laws; whereas in after ages ambition being no longer kept in, nor moderated by this restraint, it acted the last excesses of injustice, violence and cruelty, as may be seen under Marius, Sylla, Cæsar and Anthony.

^k Esse aliquam in terris gentem, quæ sua impensa, suo labore ac periculo, bella gerat pro libertate aliorum, nec hoc finitimis aut propinquæ vicinitatis hominibus, aut terris continenti junctis præ-

stet: maria trajiciat, ne quid toto orbe terrarum injustum imperium sit, & ubique jus, fas, lex potentissima sint. Liv. lib. xxxiii.

n. 33.

^l Sallust, in bello Catilin.

In the history of the Maccabees ^m we have a particular account of the virtues, by which the Romans raised their republic to that height of glory and power to which it attained. Their counsel and wisdom are particularly commended. Their unity to promote the publick good, their particular disinterestedness, their obedience to the laws and lawful authority, their faith in treaties, their patience in labour, their constancy in their resolutions, their courage and valour, and above all their love of equality, and remoteness from all ambition: These virtues, although defective in their end and motives, as they were not referred to God, but to vain glory, were notwithstanding very estimable in themselves, with respect to the rules and duties of civil society.

I cannot better conclude this article than with the solid reflection of St. Augustin ⁿ, upon the causes of the Roman power. " Though they were void, says he, of true piety, which consists in the sincere worship of the true God; they observed notwithstanding certain rules of probity and justice, which are the foundation of a state, contribute to its increase, and serve to establish it. And it pleased God to grant them an incredible success, to shew by the example of so great and powerful an empire, how useful civil and political virtues are, though separate from true religion, and to let other men thereby see how valuable they become, when exalted and ennobled by true religion, and in what manner they may thereby become citizens of another country, where truth is King, charity the law, and duration eternity. *Cujus rex veritas, cujus lex charitas, cujus modus æternitas.*"

^m Maccab. lib. 1. c. 8.

ⁿ S. Aug. Ep. 138, ad Marcell. c. 3.

The fourth Piece of Roman History.

The change of the Roman Republic into a Monarchy foretold and expressed by the historian Polybius, in the sixth book of his history.

I SHALL divide what I have to say upon this subject into two parts. In the first I shall give a short account of the principles which Polybius lays down upon the different sorts of governments, and on which he formed conjectures that foretold the change which was to happen in the Roman republic. In the second I shall explain, as briefly as I can, how this change actually came to pass, after the manner and for the reasons which Polybius had expressed.

I think myself obliged to inform my readers, in the beginning of this little dissertation, that when I speak of the different sorts of government, and the judgment to be formed of them, I only relate the sentiments of Polybius. For my own part, I adhere to the decision which is found in ° Herodotus, where the monarchical state is preferred to the other two.



CH A P. I.

The principles of Polybius upon the different sorts of government, and particularly that of the Romans.

THE different sorts of government are generally reduced to three kinds; the one where the King governs, which Polybius calls βασιλεια, *Regal govern-*

o Herod. lib. 3, c. 80.

ment

ment; another in which the nobility have the supreme authority, which is called an *aristocracy*; and a third which is called a *democracy*, where the whole power of the state vests in the people.

Every one of these forms of government has another which very much resembles, borders upon it, and into which it often degenerates, whereof mention shall be made hereafter.

A perfect government would be that which should unite in itself all the advantages of the three former, and avoid the dangers and inconveniencies they include.

Such was the government of Sparta. Lycurgus being sensible that the three forms of government, we have mentioned, had each of them great inconveniences, which were almost inevitable; that royalty sometimes degenerated into tyranny and arbitrary power; the aristocracy into an unjust dominion of some particular persons, and the power of the people into anarchy and confusion; Lycurgus, I say, contrived to introduce these three forms of government into that of Sparta, and in a manner blend them into one; insomuch that the royal authority was balanced by the power of the people, and a third order composed of the elders and wisemen of the republic served as a counterpoise to the two former, to hold them constantly in a kind of equilibrium, and hinder the one from rising too much above the other. This wise legislator was not mistaken in his views, and no republic ever preserved its laws, its customs, and its liberty so long as that of Sparta. The institutions of Lycurgus, indeed, were by no means proper for a state determined upon conquests and aggrandizing itself, which therefore did not enter at all into his scheme or design, as this wise legislator did not place the solid happiness of a people in it. It was his intention that the Spartans confining themselves within the natural bounds of their country, without any thoughts of invading the territories of another, should by their ju-

stice and moderation, still more than by their power, become the masters and arbiters of the fate of all the other people of Greece, which in his opinion was no less glorious than to carry the success of their arms abroad. Nor did they fall from their glory, till they departed from these wise views of their legislator. For when they were obliged to furnish provisions out of their own territories, to fit out fleets, pay seamen, and defray the expences of a long war, their iron money was no longer of any use to them; and this laid them under a necessity, as haughty as they were, of servilely making their court to the grandees of Persia, to obtain money of them, every where current, and of becoming voluntary slaves before they were subdued by force.

If the glory of a state, says Polybius, is made to consist in the aggrandizing and extending itself, in making conquests, in ruling over many people, and attracting the eyes of the whole earth, it must be owned that no government had ever so many advantages, nor was so calculated for the obtaining this end as that of the Romans. Like the government of Sparta, it united in one the three forms of authority we have mentioned. The consuls held the place of Kings; the senate formed the public council, and the people had a great share in the administration: There was only this difference in it, that it was not by a plan and design laid down from the beginning, as at Sparta, but by the consequence of events, that Rome assumed this form of government; every one of the three parties which made up the body of the state had a distinct power; the description of which may not here be disagreeable, as it may very much contribute to the understanding of the Roman history. Polybius is very particular upon this subject.

The power of the Consuls.

Whilst the consuls resided at Rome, they had the administration

administration of all public affairs. All the other magistrates, except the tribunes of the people, were subject to them, and obliged to obey them. Upon them turned whatever related to the deliberations of the senate. They admitted ambassadors into it; proposed the public affairs, and reduced its resolutions to form in writing. They carried them to the people, called assemblies for that purpose in which they were to deliberate of the common affairs of the public, laid before them the decrees of the senate for their examination, and according to the importance of the subject, after a deliberation, attended with many other formalities, concluded by the majority of voices. They presided in the creation of the magistrates of the republic, and for this reason were so frequently recalled from the army, and were not ordinarily allowed to be both absent from Italy.

As to war and military expeditions, the consuls had almost sovereign power; they had the care of raising armies, of settling the number of troops, which the allies were separately to furnish, and of nominating the principal officers to serve under them. When they were in the field they had the right of condemning and punishing without appeal. They disposed of the public money at their pleasure, and applied it as they judged convenient; the quaestor constantly attending them and supplying them with such sums as they required, out of the funds assigned to them for the service; so that considering the Roman republic, in this point, one would be almost inclined to think it governed by a regal and monarchical authority.

The power of the Senate.

The senate almost absolutely disposed of the finances and public treasure. They took account of all the revenues and expences of the state, and the quaestors could not deliver out any sum, except to the consuls, without a decree of the senate. The case was the

same with reference to all the expences the censors were obliged to be at for the support and repairs of the public buildings.

The senate nominated commissioners to take cognizance of all the extraordinary crimes which were committed at Rome and in Italy, and demanded the attention of the public authority, such as treason, conspiracy, poisoning and murders, and to pass sentence upon them. The affairs and causes of private men or cities, which had any relation to the state, were also adjudged by the senate. It was the senate which sent ambassadors, declared war against the enemies of the state, granted audience, and gave answers to the deputies and ambassadors of foreign people and Princes. It was the senate likewise which sent commissioners abroad, to hear the complaints of the allies, to regulate the limits and the frontiers, to see good order observed in the provinces, and to decide the pretensions of states and kingdoms. Thus a stranger, who should have come to Rome in the absence of the consuls, would have thought the government of the republic was entirely aristocratical, that is, in the hands of the elders and sages.

The power of the People.

The power of the people, however, was very considerable. They were sole masters and arbiters of rewards and punishments, which is the most essential part of government. They often fixed pecuniary mulcts upon such as had been possessed of the highest employments, and had alone the right of condemning the Roman citizens capitally. And in this last case there was a very laudable custom at Rome according to Polybius, and worthy our observation, which was, to leave a person who was accused of a capital crime the power of preventing judgment, and retiring into some neighbouring city, where he past the rest of his life in peace and liberty, in a voluntary banishment

ment. It was the people, who by their suffrages conferred all offices and honours, which in a republic are the most glorious rewards of probity and merit. They had alone the right of instituting and abrogating laws; and what is still more considerable, it was the people who deliberated of peace and war, who decided alliances, treaties of peace and conventions with foreign people and Princes. Who would not have thought such a government absolutely popular and democratical?

The mutual dependance of the Consul, Senate and People upon each other.

It is this mutual dependance of the different parts of a republic, wherein the security, strength and beauty of it consists. From this reciprocal want they have of one another, arises a kind of harmony between the different members and an unanimous concurrence, which holding them all strictly united amongst themselves, by the bond of common interest, renders the body of the state invulnerable, and not to be conquered by any foreign power.

We have already observed, that the power of the consul, in time of war, was almost sovereign, and yet he absolutely depended in several particulars both upon the senate and people. For on one side it was only by order from the senate that he could receive the sums that were necessary for the provisions, clothes and pay of the soldiers: And the denial, or delay of these succours, disabled the general from forming any attempt, or pursuing his designs as far as he could wish. The same senate, at the end of the year, could appoint a successor to the consul, or continue him in the command of the army, and thereby had it in their power to leave him the glory of ending the war, or to take it from him. Lastly, it depended upon the senate to cast a blemish upon the achievements of the generals, or advance their glory. For it was the senate which decreed the honour of a triumph, and

appointed the expences necessary for that pompous solemnity. On the other side, as it belonged to the people to declare war, to confirm or disannul the treaties made with Princes and foreign nations, and to call the generals to an account for their conduct, at their return from the army, it is easy to see how attentive it was necessary for them to be in conciliating the favour of the people.

As to the senate, though their power was so great in other respects, yet in several points it was subject to that of the people. In great affairs, and such especially as concerned the lives of the citizens, the intervention of their authority was requisite. When any laws were proposed, even such as tended to diminish the rights, honours and prerogatives of the senate, and the estates of the senators, the people were the judges whether they should be received or rejected. But the greatest instance of their power was, that if but one of their tribunes opposed the resolutions and designs of the senate, it sufficed to put a stop to them, so that after this opposition the senate could proceed no farther.

Lastly, the people likewise, in their turn, were nearly concerned to keep fair with the senators, both in general and in particular. The receivers of taxes, tributes and customs, in a word, of all the income and revenue of the state, the undertakers, who engaged to furnish the army with provisions, to repair the temples and other publick buildings, to keep up the highroads; these persons formed numerous societies, which were all taken out of the people, and subsisted a great number of citizens, some being employed in collecting the revenues, others serving for security to the farmers, others lending their money by way of advance, and putting it out to use in that manner. Now the censors were the persons who adjudged these farms to the companies, who offered to accept them, and also allotted to the undertakers the several works to be done; and it was the senate, which either

of itself, or by commissioners of their nomination, passed judgment without appeal, concerning the disputes which might arise upon any of these matters, so far as to disannul sometimes such agreements as became impracticable, and to grant a farther time for the payment, or to lower the rate of the leases, upon account of some ill accident intervening. And what was still more capable of inspiring the people with modesty and respect for the decrees of the senate, ^p the judges of the greatest part of the publick and private affairs of any consequence, were taken out of their body. The citizens were likewise obliged to keep fair with the consuls, upon whom they all depended, especially in time of war, and when they served under them in the army.

'Twas this mutual relation and agreement of all the orders of the republick which rendered the government of Rome the most accomplished that ever was in the world.

When we read, in the infancy of the republick, and the times immediately following it, of the almost continual seditions which so long divided the senate and people, and that kind of intestine war between the tribunes and consuls, we justly stand astonished how a state agitated by such frequent and violent convulsions, should not only be able to subsist, but to conquer, even at that very time, all the neighbouring people, and presently after to extend their victories into countries far more remote. Polybius gives a solid reason for it, which reflects a considerable honour upon the Roman people; and this is, that when the republick was attacked by an enemy from without, the fear of the common danger, and the motive of the publick good suspended their private quarrels, and entirely reunited them. The love of their country was then in a manner the soul which put all the parts and members of the state into motion,

p The form of judgment was changed in after times.

every one striving to discharge their duty in their several functions, either by forming resolutions with deliberation and wisdom, or by putting them in execution, with promptitude and alacrity; and it was this good understanding and unanimity, which constantly rendered the republick invincible, and gave success to all their undertakings.

It was this very constitution of the Roman government which maintained and subsisted the republick for some time, even after the citizens, delivered from the fear of a foreign enemy, grown haughty and insolent by their victories, emasculated by riches and pleasures, and corrupted by praise and flattery, began to abuse their power, and commit violence and wrong in a thousand instances. For in this condition the authority of the senate, and that of the people, being always counter-balanced by each other, when one of the two parties at any time endeavoured to extend its power, the other presently joined all its forces to pull it down, and keep it in order; and thus, by this mutual equality, this balancing power and authority, the republick always maintained itself in its liberty and independency.

Causes of the change of a Republick into a Monarchy.

It is with a state and a republick, says Polybius, as with the human body, which has its progress and increase, its time of strength and maturity, its declension and end; and usually when a state is arrived at the height of grandeur and power, it afterwards degenerates by more or less sensible declensions, and falls at last to ruin.

Thus, says Polybius, whilst the government of Carthage, like that of Sparta and Rome, was made up of the three sorts of power we have been speaking of, it was very potent and flourishing. But in the beginning of the second Punick war, and in the

9 Kings, formerly named *Suffets*, the senate and the people.

time of Hannibal, it might be said, in some measure, to be upon the decline. Its youth, flower, and vigour, were already faded; it had begun to fall from its former height, and tend towards its ruin. Whereas Rome was then, as I may say, in full strength and vigour, and making large advances towards the conquest of the world. The reason which Polybius gives of the fall of the one, and the increase of the other's power, is drawn from the principles he had laid down concerning the successive revolutions of states. Amongst the Carthaginians the people had at that time the principal authority in all publick affairs; on the other hand, at Rome the senate, that is, the company made up of men so much famed for wisdom, had then more credit than ever. From whence he concludes, that a people, guided by the prudence of old men, must necessarily have the advantage over a state governed, or rather hurried on by the rash counsels of the multitude. Rome accordingly, which properly speaking began then to extend its power, and make trial of its strength against foreigners, governed by the wise counsels of the senate, was at last superior in the total result of the war, though in particular it had the disadvantage in several engagements, and established its power and greatness upon the ruins of its rival.

But all things under the sun have their decrease and end, and the wisest and best constituted republicks as well as all the rest. Now the fall of states must arise either from internal causes and such as subsist in the state itself, or from causes that are foreign and external. It is not easy for human wisdom however penetrating to foresee the latter, as they depend upon numberless uncertain and obscure events; whereas the former have, if I may be allowed to say so, a fixt order and almost certain prognosticks.

To pass a right judgment upon the cause of changes in states, we need only attend to the manner in which these states are usually formed and established,
and

and we shall then be surprized to see by what unforeseen and unexpected revolutions things return almost always to the first point from whence they set out.

It is natural ^r when a multitude of men are found together in the same country, without laws, government, or any subordination, and by a necessary consequence exposed to a great deal of wrong and violence, that the strongest among them, as always happens among animals, should become their head. This man employing afterwards his power and authority to protect and succour the rest, to defend them against violence and injustice, to procure them rest and tranquillity, to favour constantly such as are judged to be men of the greatest probity, and to be exact in treating every one of his subjects according to their merit; they then with one consent confirm the authority he had at first usurped, and of violent had made just and reasonable. They then swear to pay him an entire obedience, and a perfect submission, which is so much the more firm and sure, as it is founded upon the interest of those who engaged to submit to it. ^s Such is usually the origin of monarchy, and such the steps by which it is converted into regal sway, which in the governing of willing subjects chuses rather to employ the wisdom of councils, than terror and force; which motives conduced most in making Romulus a King.

In after times the successors of this authority, at first so mild and beneficial, observing their power to be thoroughly established, and plentifully enjoying all kind of happiness and honours, begin to abuse their power, commit numberless wrongs, exercise abundance of cruelty, and become the object of the people's hatred. It is easy to discern in this description,

^r We see in Herodotus, that the kingdom of the Medes was thus established in the person of De-
joces,

ἡ Μόνην τὴν ἐξ ἐκόντων συγχωρε-
μένην, καὶ τῇ γνώμῃ τὸ πλεῖον ἢ
φόβῳ καὶ βίᾳ κυβερωμένην.

the character of Tarquinius Superbus the last King of the Romans.

The royal authority being thus changed into tyranny, conspiracies are formed against the tyrants and persons of the greatest distinction, greatness of mind, valour and fortitude place themselves at the head of the conspirators, men of that character bearing the unjust treatment of their masters with the greatest impatience. The people then seeing that they owe their quiet and liberty to their courage, willingly submit to their government, and cheerfully intrust the supreme authority in their hands; as it actually happened when the Tarquins were expelled Rome. And thus an aristocracy is formed, or a government by wise men and elders, such as those grave old men were, of whom the senate was composed.

This sort of government may have a longer duration and stability, but at last it degenerates in its turn like the rest, and instead of those prudent experienced and disinterested old men, who had no other view but the good of their country, a small number of men distinguished from the rest only by ambition, pride and avarice, industriously engross authority to themselves, which paves the way to an oligarchy; of which we have seen some first essays and images in the violent conduct of the decemvirs, and in the cruel avarice of the wealthiest senators, which forced the people more than once to stand upon their defence against their vexations, by those famous retreats upon the Sacred and Aventin hills, and this is what is called an oligarchy.

When a republick is in this condition, and the citizens are alike disgusted and tired with all the preceding forms of government, it is natural that they should turn their views and desires towards a democracy, by striving to increase the power of the people in general, and to equal their rights and privileges with those of the nobility. So long as the sense and remembrance of past ills remains, good order subsists
for

for some time, and an equality is kept up amongst the citizens. But those who come after, and are little affected with the advantages of the old liberty and popular equality, which are now grown stale through use, seek to raise themselves above others, and such are generally the most wealthy. As the legitimate admission to honours arising from virtue and merit is often denied them, they employ their great wealth in buying the votes of the people, and use their utmost endeavours to corrupt them by bribes and donations. When once these ambitious men, abandoned to their lust of power, have obtained their ends of the multitude by the temptation of gain, there are no longer any excesses of which they are not capable. The commonwealth falls in this manner into the greatest of misfortunes, which is when the populace becomes supreme dispensers of all things; and this is called ochlocracy.

Polybius observes, that this change of manners, which draws after it an alteration of government, is the usual consequence of the good success and long prosperity of a state. When a republick, says he, having past through great dangers becomes victorious after long and heavy wars, and arrived at the height of glory and power, has no more enemies to dispute empire with it, but has subjected all to itself; such a prosperity, if it is long and lasting, never fails to introduce luxury and ambition into this republick, which infallibly induce the ruin of the most flourishing states. Luxury to furnish the expences, which daily become greater and more enormous, soon degenerates into avarice, and is forced to have recourse to injustice and rapine; and ambition to compass its ends omits nothing that may gain the favour of the people, flattery, complaisance, bribery and corruption. Hence it follows, that the multitude on one side provoked by the unjust exactions of the rich, and on the other corrupted and grown insolent by the flatteries and bribes of the ambitious, consult only their own passions

sions
ear to
author
and de
licenti
laws.
others
head,
wants
seems
pedier
him.
proscr
ling c
and n
the v
maste
fire o
the p
liber
arbitr
Su
the f
now

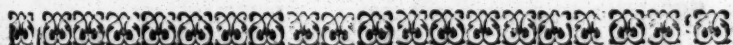
W

The

V
peat
Ror
the
heig

sions and caprice in publick debates, refuse to give ear to their first magistrates, and to submit to their authority ; and assuming the specious name of liberty and democracy, give themselves up to an unlimited licentiousness, and intirely shake off the yoke of the laws. Accustomed to live upon the substance of others, and fatten in ease and idleness, if they find a head, who is not in a condition to supply all their wants of himself, but being bold and enterprizing, seems capable of gratifying their desires by other expedients, they adhere to him, and support and advance him. Hence arise seditions, murders, banishments, proscriptions, new divisions of lands, and disannulling of debts ; till at last somebody more powerful and mighty than any of the rest starts up, who assumes the whole authority to himself, and becomes sole master of the government. Thus the too eager desire of liberty, or to speak more properly, the abuse the people make of it, ends in the loss of that very liberty and the establishment of a new sovereign and arbitrary government.

Such were in short the revolutions, which changed the face and nature of the Roman republick, as it now remains for us to shew.



CHAP. II.

The change of the Roman Republick into a Monarchy.

WHAT Polybius had foreseen came to pass in the manner and for the reasons he had repeated. It was the very grandeur and prosperity of Rome which occasioned the loss of its liberty. From the time that the Roman republick was arrived at that height of glory, to which the courage and virtue of
its

its ancient generals and magistrates had raised it, it began to decline at first by imperceptible degrees; but afterwards by such as were more obvious, and ended at last in the open violation of the ancient maxims of the government, and the infraction of the fundamental laws of the state.

When the republick, ' says Sallust, had raised itself by labour and justice; when mighty Kings had been conquered in war, and fierce nations and numerous people subdued by force; when Carthage the rival of Rome was intirely conquered, and all, in a word, made subject to the Roman empire both by sea and land, there arose a surprizing revolution in the whole body of the state. Those whom neither labour nor dangers, nor so many adversities could ever conquer, were subdued by the softness of repose and the allurements of plenty and prosperity. Avarice and ambition, the fatal springs of every evil, increased in proportion to the power of Rome. Avarice banished integrity, probity, and every other virtue from the republick, and substituted in their place pride and pomp, a contempt of religion, and a shameful commerce which exposed every thing to sale; and ambition in its turn introduced dissimulation, fraud and treachery, and soon after violence, cruelty and murder.

It was thus, according the fine thought of Juvenal, that luxury, a more fatal and cruel scourge than war, ravaged the Roman empire and revenged the conquered world.

———*Sævior armis*

Luxuria incubuit, victumque ulciscitur orbem.

It remains therefore only to shew how just the conjectures were which Polybius wisely formed, concerning the change which he foresaw would happen in the

t Sallust, in bello Catilin.

republick,

republick
causes
them
wrote
clearly
the first
precede
perfect

Riches

I sh
in the
terester
ty, fir
that ti
they w
citizen
charac
virtues
section
passed
from
superior
" F
and b
and g
verty
of mar
the fr

Th
the R
" Th
ture g

u Po
corperun
potentia
tus, pa
nocenti

republick, to give a particular account of the principal causes which brought on that revolution, as we find them either in contemporary authors, or in such as wrote soon after that great event. By this we shall clearly see the surprizing difference there was betwixt the first ages of the Roman republick and those which preceded its ruin, and have at the same time a more perfect idea of all the states through which it passed.

Riches attended with luxury in Building, Furniture, Diet, &c.

I shall not here repeat what I have already observed in the preceding volume, concerning the noble disinterestedness of the Romans, and their esteem of poverty, simplicity, frugality and modesty. Virtues at that time so common and so generally practised, that they were less ascribed to the particular merit of some citizens than to the genius of the nation, and the happy character of those early ages; but at the same time, virtues so sublime and carried to so high a point of perfection, that in the latter ages of the republick they passed for fables and fictions; so remote were they from the taste that then prevailed and seemed so far superior to human weakness.

" From the time that riches were had in honour, and became the only introduction to offices, power and glory, virtue was no longer held in esteem. Poverty was looked upon as a reproach, and innocence of manners as the effect of a melancholy humour. And the fruit of these riches was luxury, avarice and pride.

The epocha of this change of disposition amongst the Romans, was that of the grandeur of the empire.

" The first Scipio laid the sure foundation of their future greatness, the last by his conquests opened the

u Postquam divitiæ honori esse ceperunt, & eas gloria, imperium, potentia sequebatur; hebescere virtus, paupertas probro haberi, innocentia pro malevolentia duci

cœpit. Igitur ex divitiis juventutem luxuria, atque avaritia, cum superbia invasere. Sallust. in bello Jugurth.

w Vell. Patere. lib. ii. n. 1.

door

door to luxury. From the time that Carthage, which kept Rome in exercise by disputing the empire with it, was entirely destroyed, the declension of manners proceeded no longer by slow degrees, but was sudden and precipitate. Virtue immediately gave way to vice, the ancient discipline to looseness of manners, and the active laborious life to idleness and pleasure.

And whereas the ancient Romans strove rather to honour the Gods by piety than magnificence, ^x *celebantur religiones pie magis quam magnifice*, the immense riches, which were the fruits of their later conquests, were employed in raising lofty temples to the Gods, and magnificent buildings for the decoration and embellishment of Rome.

It is difficult, not to say impossible, but what is made the object of admiration must sooner or later become the taste of private persons. Thus an historian observes, that from the time they began to use marble in the building of temples, and raised theatres and portico's, the luxury of private persons followed close at the heels of the public magnificence, ^y *publicaque magnificentiam secuta privata luxuria est*. The madness for building was carried to a prodigious excess, and mere private men made it their diversion, and at the same time their glory, to lavish away vast sums of money in levelling mountains, and filling up seas.

Their luxury was the same in every other particular, and it was the army that returned victorious out of Asia, which introduced it into Rome, or at least made it far more common there than it had been before. ^z Livy enumerates the several kinds of rich furniture which from that time came into use: the comedians, singing women and players upon instruments began then also to make part of the entertainment at meals; the meals themselves no longer retained the air of the ancient simplicity, but were made at a great expence and with a large apparatus. A cook, who was looked

^x Liv. Lib. iii. n. 57.

in bello Catilin.

^y Vell. Pat. lib. ii. n. 1. Sallust.

^z Liv. lib. xxxix. n. 6.

upon by the ancients as a vile slave, was then held in esteem and honour, as an officer not to be dispensed with ; and what before had been a low employment, became an art very much studied and esteemed. And yet all this was nothing in comparison of the excess they afterwards fell into.

^a Cato the Censor took a deal of pains to lay before the senate the fatal consequences of the luxury, which in his time began to be introduced into the republick. Seeing the great progress of their arms in Greece and Asia, provinces abounding with the dangerous baits and allurements of every kind of pleasure, and that the Romans began to lay hands upon the treasures of Kings ; “ I fear, ” said he, that we shall become the “ slaves of those riches instead of their masters, and “ that the conquered nations will conquer us in their “ turn by communicating their vices to us.” His apprehensions were not imaginary, and all that he had foretold came afterwards to pass.

Taste for Statues, Pictures, &c.

^c It was the conquest of Syracuse which produced this unhappy effect ; though the statues and pictures, which that great city was filled with, were spoils justly acquired by the right of war ; and Marcellus was so cautious as to carry off but a small number of them, only to adorn a temple at Rome, without reserving any either for the ornament of his own house or gardens, those works of art, which were so much valued and sought after, became fatal to the empire, by inspiring the Romans with an admiration and taste of those vain ornaments.

^a Liv. lib. xxxiv. n. 4.

^b Hæc ego, quo melior lætiorque in dies fortuna Reipublicæ est, imperiumque crescit ; & jam in Græciam Asiamque transcendimus, omnibus libidinum illecebris repletas & regias etiam attractamus gazas : eo plus horreo, ne illæ ma-

gis res nos ceperint, quàm nos illas.

^c Hostium quidem illa spolia, & parta belli jure : cæterum inde primum mirandi græcarum artium opera, licentiæque hinc sacra profanaque omnia vulgò spoliandi, factum est. Liv. lib. xxv. n. 40.

^d Fabius,

^d Fabius, by his generous contempt of them, after the conquest of Tarentum, shewed more prudence than Marcellus had done at Syracuse. For when an officer asked Fabius what he would have done with a great number of statues which were found in the city, and were so many Gods of a large stature, represented as fighting with each other, in a particular attitude, “*Let us leave the Tarentines, says Fabius, their angry Gods.*”

The second Scipio, in the conquest of Carthage, behaved in a manner still more worthy the old Roman greatness. ^e After he had severely prohibited his men from seizing, or even buying any thing of the spoils, he ordered the inhabitants of Sicily to come and claim the statues, which the Carthaginians had formerly taken from them; ^f and restoring to the Agrigentines the famous bull of Phalaris, he told them, that this monument of the cruelty of their ancient Kings, and the mildness of their present masters, should inform them which was the greatest advantage, to be under the yoke of the Sicilians, or under the government of the Roman people. Not, ^g says Cicero, that this great man, who had a mind so well improved, wanted either places for these curious works of art, or judgment to discern all their beauties. But surpassing not only in disinterestedness, but in delicacy of taste, all our most refined connoisseurs, he judged that these works were wrought, not to satisfy the vain curiosity, much less the luxury of mankind, but to serve as ornaments in temples and cities. And as an ^h historian judiciously observes, it were much to be wished, for the benefit and honour of the republick, that they had ever retained the noble contempt of Scipio, or even the ignorance and gross taste of Mummius. This last, in transporting the most valuable part of the spoils of Corinth to Rome, was so little acquainted with the

^d Liv. lib. xxvii. n. 16.

^e Cic. Ver. iv. n. 86.

^f Ver. vi. n. 73.

^g Ver. iv. n. 87. & Ver. vi. n. 98.

^h Vell. Patere, lib. i. n. 13.

value and excellence of performances of this sort, that he told the undertakers who were employed to bring them over, that if any of them were lost, they should be obliged to make them good at their own expence. The republick would have been happy if this pretended good taste had never been introduced among them, as it opened a door to such rapine and violence, as highly dishonoured the Roman people among strangers.

What Cicero relates of the horrible excesses into which this passion of collecting valuable vessels and pictures led Verres, during the time of his prætorship in Sicily, is scarce credible. The generality of the other governors were not far behind hand with him in this kind of robbery. ¹ But how great a difference was there between such magistrates and the ancient Romans, who thought it a duty and an honour to leave this kind of ornaments to their allies, and even to the people tributary to them, that the one might be sensible of the mildness of the Roman government, and the other have some consolation under their slavery?

Insatiable avarice, injustice, rapine, ill-treatment of the Allies and conquered Nations.

* 'Tis a very just reflection in Tully, that the oracle of Apollo, which declared that Sparta should never be ruined but by avarice, gave a prediction which concerned all other wealthy nations, besides the Lacedæmonians. This oracle was verified in the case of the Roman republick more than in any other state. All the historians, who speak of its ruin agree that avarice was the cause of it, and that this avarice arose from riches and luxury. ¹ In short, from the moment that any one grows passionately fond of magnificence, grand equipages, fine furniture, plenty and elegance

ⁱ Ver. vi. n. 134.

^k Lib. ii. de Offic. n. 77.

^l Delectant magnifici apparatus, vitæque cultus cum elegantia & co-

pia; quibus rebus effectum est, ut infinita pecuniæ cupiditas esset, De Offic. lib. i. n. 25.

in eating and drinking, 'tis a natural and necessary consequence that he will set no bounds to his love of money, which buys all these things, and without which they cannot be procured ^m.

Sallust owns, after a great many reflections upon the causes of the grandeur and power of the ancient Romans, who often defeated numerous armies with a small body of troops, and with a very moderate revenue supported long wars against very wealthy Kings, without losing courage in the least from any adversity; Sallust, I say, owns that Rome was indebted for this grandeur and power to a small number only of illustrious citizens, whose excellent merit and solid virtue had rendered poverty victorious over riches, and a small body of soldiers superior to innumerable armies. But, adds he, from the time the citizens have suffered themselves to be corrupted by luxury and idleness, Rome, like a woman past child-bearing, has ceased to produce great men; and though it has still subsisted some time after, it has been only in consequence and by means of its ancient grandeur which continued to support the republick, notwithstanding the weakness and vices of its governors.

It is worth while to compare those happy times of the republick when poverty was generally had in honour, with the later ages, when pomp, luxury and magnificence reigned, in conjunction with a mean and fordid avarice. What great men were those consuls and dictators who were taken from the plough? What noble sentiments, what magnanimity in the two Scipios, in Fabius, and in Paulus Æmilius? Did these ancient Romans set any value upon money? When ⁿ Pyrrhus endeavoured to corrupt the senate by presents, was there one single person in the city tempted to receive them? The case was much altered in the time of Jugurtha, who found means to gain the votes of almost all the senators by the influence of his bribes; ^o so that

^m Sallust. in bello Catilin.
ⁿ Liv. lib. xxxiv. n. 4.

^o Sallust. in bello Jugurth.

when he was forced to leave Rome, turning his eyes back upon it from time to time, he called it a city ready to be sold to the highest bidder, and which only wanted a purchaser.

So long as this noble disinterestedness lasted, those who had the command of the troops, and the government of the provinces, instead of seeking to enrich themselves with the spoils of the allies or conquered people, looked upon themselves as their fathers and guardians. ^p 'Twas then the principle of the Roman people to conquer less by force of arms than benefits, and to prefer the gaining of friends before the making of slaves. Neither the marches of their troops, nor the encampment of their armies, nor their winter quarters, nor the residence of the generals in any city were any expence to the inhabitants. It was this conduct that acquired the Roman empire so much honour and esteem. The senate then, says Tully, was the refuge and asylum of Kings, people, and nations. Our magistrates and generals then placed their chief glory in defending the provinces, and supporting their allies with inviolable justice and fidelity. ^a Thus we were the protectors rather than the masters of the world.

Let us hear the same Tully, and he will tell us how much things were altered in his time. ^r All the provinces, says he, groan, all free people are in desolation, all kingdoms loudly complain of the violences and vexations they suffer from us. In the large extent of countries, which are terminated by the ocean, there is now no place so remote, whither the avarice and injustice of our generals and magistrates have not penetrated. It is now no longer possible to sustain, I say, not the power, the arms, the invasion of nations, but their cries, their complaints, and their reproaches. It is difficult, ^s says he in another place, to tell you

^p Sallust, *ibid.*

rat nominari. De Off. lib. ii. n. 27.

^q Itaque illud patrocinium orbis terræ verius, quam imperium pote-

^r Verr. iv. n. 207.

^s Pro Lege Manil. n. 65.

how odious the unjust and violent conduct of the governors, whom we send into our provinces, have made us to all foreign nations. There is no temple which they have held sacred, no city which they have respected, no private house has been barred or inaccessible to their avarice. This was the state of the republick in late times, and if we enquire into the first cause and origin of all these disorders, we shall find what I cannot repeat too often, that they were the insatiable love of riches and luxury.

Immoderate ambition, a boundless desire of rule, attended with factions, seditions, murders, and the entire subversion of liberty.

* Tully, after Plato, lays down two essential rules to be observed by persons employed in government. The first is to have no other view than the publick good, without the least regard to their own private interest; the second, to extend their cares equally to the whole body of the state, without favouring one part more than another. For, adds he, a governor is a kind of guardian, and under that character must consider the interest of the person committed to his care, and not his own. And he who should take care of one part of the citizens only, and neglect the rest, would introduce discord and sedition, than which nothing can be more pernicious to states.

These may properly be said to be the fundamental laws of every wise and well ordered government, and it was the exact observation of these rules, that formed the character of the good citizens and great men of the republick, as it was upon this plan, and these principles, the republick was first formed and established. ^u When the authority of annual magistrates was substituted in the place of regal power, which was become unsupportable, the senate was considered as the perpetual and publick council of the state, to be in a man-

* Offic. lib. i. n. 85.

^u Cic. Orat. pro Sext. n. 137.

ner the soul and head of the republick, the guardian and defender of the laws, the protector of the liberty and privileges of the people; and all the citizens were admitted into this illustrious body, without any other distinction than that of virtue and merit. The magistrates gloried in respecting the authority of the senate, and were looked upon as the ministers of that august council, and the different orders of the state contributed their peculiar lustre to exalt the glory of the highest and most noble assembly. 'Twas this concert and union in promoting the publick good, which so long preserved a good understanding in the republick, which gave success to all the wars they undertook, and spread the glory and terror of the Roman name throughout the world. An opposite conduct produced the quite contrary effect.

^w Before the destruction of Carthage the disputes among the citizens for power and authority were not carried to any excess of violence. The fear of foreign powers was a restraint which kept them within the bounds of moderation, and inspired a respect for the laws. ^x 'Till then the Romans had not ventured to shed the blood of their citizens, and the highest excess of their civil dissensions was carried no farther than to quit the city, and retire to the top of some neighbouring mountain. When Rome saw herself delivered from all apprehensions of foreign enemies, licentiousness and pride, the usual consequences of prosperity, soon disturbed the union and concord which had till then prevailed. The nobility and people, the one under a pretext of supporting their dignity, and the other their liberty, fought each of them separately to enlarge their authority, and engross all power to themselves. ^y And most part of those, who set themselves

^w Sallust. in bello Jugurth.

^x Nondum erant tam fortes ad sanguinem civilem, nec præter externa noverant bella, ultimæque rabies secessio ab suis habebatur. Liv. lib. vii. n. 40.

^y Per illa tempora, quicumque

republicam, agitavere, honestis nominibus, alii sicuti jura populi defenderent, pars quo senatus auctoritas maxuma foret, bonum publicum simulantes, pro sua quisque potentia certabant. Sallust. in bello Cat,

at the head of the two parties, under the specious title of defenders of the publick good, laboured in reality at nothing more than the establishment of their own private power; and amidst these two factions the republick torn by their divisions, and given up as a prey to the ambition of her citizens, was always in a state of subjection to the most powerful. ^z It must not be asked which of the heads of these parties had most right and justice on their side; all were alike unjust, and all usurpers of a power, which did not belong to them. He who was the strongest, and remained the conqueror, was always sure to be applauded.

^a We learn from hence, that nothing is more capable of extinguishing justice and the laws, than the passion for power and dominion over others; a passion the more dangerous, as it is covered over with the appearance of virtue and glory, and for that reason generally draws in such as suppose themselves distinguished from the rest of mankind by more noble sentiments and a superior greatness of mind.

We shall now see these fatal dispositions disclose themselves by little and little, increase as it were by degrees with time, and at last end in the entire subversion of liberty.

The GRACCHI.

Tiberius and Caius Gracchus, descended by their mother from the famous Scipio Africanus, supported the honour of their birth by an extraordinary merit. They had each of them great capacity, a noble soul, joined to a disposition intirely disinterested, with an ir-

^z Boni & mali cives appellati non ob merita in rempublicam, omnibus pariter corruptis; sed uti quisque locupletissimus, & injuria validior, quia præsentia defendebat, pro bono ducebatur. Sallust. in frag.

^a Maximè addocuntur plerique, ut eos justitiæ capiet oblivio, cum

in imperiorum, honorum, gloriæ cupiditatem inciderunt. . . . Et autem in hoc genere molestum, quod in maximis animis splendidissimisque ingeniis plerumque existunt honoris imperii, potentiae, gloriæ cupiditates. Offic. lib. 1.

n. 26.

resistible

resistible force of eloquence, to which were added a lively and ardent zeal for justice, a natural compassion for the miserable, and an irreconcilable hatred against all oppression, which opposition improved into a personal animosity against the oppressors. It cannot be denied, but that these two illustrious brothers had very upright intentions, and that they had no other end in what they undertook, but an apparently necessary reformation; and that in short they provided a remedy for several disorders by wise regulations. But engagements formed at first with good views, and afterwards carried on with too much warmth, led them farther than they designed. They pursued what they had begun through a virtuous disposition, with an inflexible obstinacy, and by this means their great qualities, which might have been very useful to the state, had they been conducted with discretion and moderation, became fatal and pernicious to it.

The principal subject of the discord that arose upon their account, was the law they proposed concerning the distribution of lands, which, for that reason, was called the Agrarian law. When the Romans had got possession of the lands of their neighbours by conquest, it was customary with them to sell one part of them, to add the rest to the domain of their republick, and to give these last to the poorest of the citizens, to make the best they could of them, upon condition that they paid into the publick treasury a small acknowledgment of rent every year. The rich having begun to encroach upon them, to advance their rents, and by that means to drive the poor out of their possessions, a law was made, requiring that no citizen should possess above five hundred acres of land. This law laid a restraint upon the avarice of the rich for some time, but they afterwards found means to evade it, by causing the farm of those lands to be adjudged to themselves under borrowed names; and at last holding them openly themselves, the poor were reduced to extreme misery, and Italy in danger of being overstocked with

the slaves and Barbarians, whom the rich made use of to cultivate the lands, of which they had dispossessed the citizens.

This practice was most shamefully scandalous, and the law proposed by the Gracchi seemed extremely reasonable. They were at first content to ordain, that the rich should quit the lands they had usurped, upon receiving from the publick the price of the possessions they so unjustly held, and that the citizens who stood in need of them should enter upon them in their stead. "Why,"^b said they to the people, the wild beasts find "holes and dens to creep into in the mountains and "forests of Italy; and shall those brave Romans, who "are exposed to fight and die for the defence of Italy, "enjoy no more than the light and air which cannot "be taken from them, and be obliged to wander in "the fields with their wives and children without "house or home? They only fight and die to in- "crease the revenue and support the luxury of the "rich, and these pretended masters of the world (for "so they are called) have not one single inch of "ground which is properly their own."

There are sometimes disorders in a state which cannot be remedied without ruining the state itself: As in some diseases of the human body, the cure cannot be attempted without an almost certain danger of death. The men of the greatest probity at Rome, and such senators as were most inclined to promote the publick good, saw plainly how fatal the consequences would be of the laws proposed by the Gracchi; and their misfortune was, as^c Tully observes, that they did not agree in opinion and conduct with that most sound and wise part of the republick: "It cost both of them their lives; and their tragical end seemed to erect the standard of bloody dissensions, and give the citizens the signal of rising in arms against each other to satisfy the ambition of particular men. From

^b Plut. in vit. Gracch.

n. 41.

^c Cic. Orat. de Harusp. resp.

^d Vell. Paterc. lib. ii. n. 1.

that time the laws gave way to violence; the most powerful lorded it over the rest; the civil dissensions, which till then had ended in pacifick treaties, came to be decided only by force of arms; and as ill examples continually increase, the citizens blood was soon after seen to flow in large streams through the streets of Rome, and Roman armies to march with their ensigns displayed against each other.

II. MARIUS and SYLLA.

Marius and Sylla, both born with excellent talents, are an instance of the excess of rage and cruelty, to which ambition may rise, when it is not retained within just bound by sentiments of honour and probity and a love for the publick good. They seem to have had all the other qualities necessary to form great men.

* Defect of birth in Marius was hid by the most eminent virtues. Inured from his infancy to a severe life, and afterwards brought up not in studying of Greek, nor after the delicate manner then practised at Rome, but in the laborious exercises of the camp, he presently became a master in the art of war, and carried his skill in it to as great a height of perfection as any officer had ever done. Capable of the greatest enterprizes in the field, moderate in his particular conduct, and far removed from pleasure and avarice, he had no other passion than that of glory. He behaved himself in such manner in all the offices wherein he was employed, that he seemed always deserving of greater. And the rest of his life was answerable to this beginning. The several consulships which were successively conferred upon him, the war with Jugurtha happily terminated, the overthrow of the innumerable armies of Barbarians which ravaged Italy in two battles, wherein above three hundred thousand were killed or taken, are circumstances which shew the abilities of Marius.

c. Sallust in bello Jugurth.

G. 4.

f Sylla,

^r Sylla, though of a very different character, was inferior to him in no respect. He was of a patrician family, and perfectly instructed in polite literature. He had a lofty soul, loved pleasures, but was sonder of glory. His leisure moments he spent in diversions, but never delayed the dispatch of business upon their account. He was eloquent, of refined wit, and an obliging friend, of profound secrecy and dissimulation, liberal, or rather prodigal. Though before the civil wars he might have been considered as the most fortunate man in Rome, yet his merit never appeared below his fortune, and it could not easily be decided whether he was more happy or more brave. What proofs of courage, boldness, prudence and ability did he give in all the wars wherein he commanded, and especially in the war with Mithridates the most formidable enemy of the Romans?

Thus they were certainly great men, and very deserving our esteem, if we judge of greatness and glory by honours, talents or great exploits. But here we must call to mind the truth which I have advanced in the preceding volume, that man is to be judged of by the heart, and the want of integrity and probity can never be atoned for by the most shining qualities.

What a shameful figure did a violent desire of obtaining the consulship first make Marius? because Metellus, under whom he served as lieutenant, seemed to disapprove of his design. But in the warmth of his rage against him, and consulting only his own resentment and ambition, he first privately took pains to discredit him among the soldiers, and presently after becoming the declared enemy and calumniator of his general, supplanted him by unworthy methods, and got himself appointed his successor to terminate the war against Jugurtha. The whole glory of it however did not fall to his share. His quaestor Sylla, into whose hand Jugurtha was delivered, carried off a great part of it from him; and proud of an event

f Sallust. *ibid.*

that

that w
to be c
it as a
averfic
visions
: P
Mariu
ger aft
lent in
Immo
quietu
ship,
mit to
nor a
use o
wret
of i M
man
ceed
and p
the r
H
minc
fulsh
ther
in a
ener
one
tion
pres
the
the
men
"
gen
g
h
i
been
k

that was so glorious to him, caused the picture of it to be engraven on a ring, and ever after made use of it as a seal; which gave Marius an irreconcilable aversion for him, and was the first source of their divisions.

^g Paterculus wonderfully describes the character of Marius in a few words. He was a man, says he, eager after glory, and insatiable in the pursuit of it, violent in his desires, and devoured by a restless ambition. *Immodicus gloriae, insatiabilis, impotens, semperque inquietus.* When he was candidate for a sixth consulship, there was no degree of meanness he did not submit to, that he might gain the favour of the people, nor any unworthy or criminal method he did not make use of, so far as to join with two of the most ^h infamous wretches in the city, in order to prevent the election of ⁱ Metellus, who was one of his competitors and a man of the greatest probity in the republick, and proceeded so far as to procure his banishment by falsehood and perjury, ^k which according to him were part of the merit and ability of a great man.

How great must be the torments of an ambitious mind? So many honours heaped upon Marius, six consulships ^l successively conferred upon him, of which there never was a precedent, immense riches acquired in a very short time, victories without number and over enemies of every kind; several triumphs, and every one more glorious than the other, all this accumulation of grandeur and prosperity made but a light impression upon the heart of this ambitious man; whilst the rising glory of Sylla, which was perpetually upon the increase, raged within him, distracted, and tormented him like a madman.

^m His jealousy was awakened upon the election of a general to be sent against Mithridates. He could not

^g Lib. ii. n. 11.

^h Glaucia & Saturninus.

ⁱ The same person, who has been already mentioned.

^k Αὐτὸς εἰς ἀπερίτης ἐξεδιόρητο.

μερίδα τὸ ψεύσασθαι τιθέμενος,
Plut. in vit. Mar.

^l There were only two years between the first and second.

^m Plut. in vit. Mar.

bear that this command should be given to his rival. Though worn out with fatigues, feeble with age, and grown very unwieldy, he endeavoured to shew himself in the field of Mars, among the young men who exercised themselves there in riding and fencing. A spectacle, which moved pity in all worthy and sensible men. They could not imagine that at his years, after so many triumphs, and having acquired so much glory, he could think of marching into Cappadocia, and to the extremity of the Euxine sea, to exhaust the remains of his old age in fighting against the nobles of Mithridates. Yet was he nominated by the people to command in the war, and Sylla obliged to fly to save his life.

But Sylla within a small time returned to Rome at the head of a numerous army, and Marius after a weak resistance was in his turn obliged to fly. A price was set upon his head and the tribune Sulpitius was strangled. Sylla without tarrying any longer at Rome marched directly against Mithridates, as fully assured the victories he should gain over so formidable an enemy, would contribute more than any thing to strengthen his authority.

The absence of Sylla gave Marius an opportunity of returning. He had run through strange adventures, been obliged to fly trembling from city to city, to hide himself sometimes in forests and sometimes in a morass. His entrance into Rome was followed by the murder of an infinite number of citizens, and the most considerable persons in the city that adhered to the party of Sylla.

In the mean time a report was spread that Sylla had put an end to the war with Mithridates, and was returning to Rome with a vast army. Marius, who had procured himself to be chosen consul for the seventh time, was so alarmed at the news, that he could never sleep, and contracted a distemper, of which he died soon after. It is said that in the delirium, which never left him, he would talk and act as if he were

fighting against Mithridates. ⁿ So deeply had his desire of commanding, and his natural jealousy imprinted in his heart a strong and violent passion for the conduct of that war.

The cruelty of Marius seemed a trifle in comparison of what was afterwards exercised by Sylla. He filled Rome with continual and endless murders, and set no value upon the lives of the citizens. He proscribed at different times an immense number, and forbade all people upon pain of death to receive or shelter any that were proscribed, without excepting the person that should save a brother, a son, or a father; and even proposed a reward for the homicide, either in the case of a slave that should kill his master, or a son that should cut the throat of his own father. The death of the proscribed was followed by the confiscation of their goods. ^o Thus avarice gave occasion to cruelty: Riches were guilt, and every one appeared criminal in proportion to the wealth he possessed, which at once became the danger of the rich and the recompence of the murderer. Sylla nominated and declared himself dictator, a title which had not been known at Rome for a hundred and twenty years before. He passed an act of general oblivion for all that was past, and caused himself to be invested with a full power for the future of putting to death what citizens he pleased; of confiscating estates, distributing lands, destroying cities, building others, taking away kingdoms, and transferring them on whomsoever he pleased.

But what is scarce to be comprehended, after he had put to death so many thousands, introduced into the republick such strange changes and unheard of innovations, he ventured to resign the dictatorship, to live

οὕτω δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ δις παρα-
μυθισθεὶς ἐκ φιλαρχίας καὶ ἐκ πολυτελείας
ἔργως ἐνέλεσται τῶν πράξεων ἐκείνων.
Plut. in vit. Mar.

^o Id quoque accessit, ut sceleris
causam avaritia præberet, & mo-

dus culpæ ex pecuniæ modo con-
stitueretur, & qui fuisset locuples
fieret nocens, suique quisque pericu-
li merces foret. Vell. Paterc. lib.
ii. n. 22.

as a private man, and ended his days in his bed, without there being one man found among so many citizens whose fathers, brothers and children, he had put to death, that made any attempt upon his life: Divine justice reserved the punishment of him to itself. He was struck with an horrible disease, and made the prey of a shameful and cruel vermin, which continually encreasing in his corrupted flesh, and admitting of no remedy, infected the whole house with an insupportable stench, and at last brought him to a miserable end.

We learn from Marius and Sylla how very fatal the consequences of a misguided ambition may prove. It is less to be wondered that Marius, who had always something rough, austere and savage in his disposition, *p hirtus atque hórridus*, unimproved by study or education, and in a manner uncivilized, should carry his revenge and cruelty the lengths he did. But such excesses are almost incredible in a man of ^q Sylla's character, who had always appeared mild, humane, tender and compassionate, even so as to weep at the misfortunes of others; one that from his youth had been addicted to gaiety and pleasures, and who managed his fortune at first with so much wisdom and moderation. Could this, says Plutarch, be a change of temper and manners arising from high honours and great prosperity? Or was it the bare irruption of a secret depravity concealed in his heart, which his absolute power gave him an opportunity of displaying? Be that as it will, we must conclude that ambition, when a rival is to be removed, is capable of the blackest crimes and the most inhuman cruelties.

That of Sylla produced very fatal effects, for several ages after. Possessed with a boundless passion for power, he was the first, who to gain the affection of the troops, corrupted them by a servile complaisance and excessive bribes. He taught them that it was in

their power to give lords to the empire, and it was from this first example that the legions began to consider themselves as having an absolute right exclusive even of the senate, to dispose of the empire, to advance and depose Emperors at their pleasure, without paying any regard to the merit of the best and greatest Princes.

III. CAESAR, POMPEY.

We have here two other ambitious men of a character very different from the former; as their ambition covered and supported by the most glorious qualities seems less worthy of blame, and was yet no less pernicious to the republic.

These two great men had no superiors in antiquity, if we consider only their military virtues, their enterprizes and victories, which filled the universe with the glory of their name.

† Caesar in less than ten years, when he commanded in Gaul, took above eight hundred cities by force; subdued three hundred nations, fought at several times in pitched battles against three millions of enemies, a million of which he cut in pieces, and took another million prisoners. For which reason an historian says, that in respect to the greatness of his projects, the rapidity of his conquests, his courage and intrepidity in dangers, he might be compared to Alexander the Great, but then only while Alexander was neither heated with wine nor angry. * *Magnitudine cogitationum, celeritate bellandi, patientia periculorum, magno illi Alexandro, sed sobrio neque iracundo, simillimus.*

The encomiums which † Tully gives in a thousand places to Pompey's merit are extremely honourable. From his youth he signalized himself by great commands and important expeditions. He had a share in more battles than those of his rank and age had usu-

† Plut. in Cæsar.

‡ Paterc. lib. ii, p. 41.

† Pro. Cornel. Balb. n. 9.—Pro leg. Manil. n. 28, & 41.

ally read. He gained as many triumphs as the world has different parts, and as many victories as there are different sorts of wars. Success and courage had so constantly attended on him, that he might be said, in some manner, to be exalted above the condition of humanity. And lastly, all the moral virtues, probity, integrity, disinterestedness and religion had acquired him an immense reputation amongst foreign nations, and taught them to believe that what was told of the virtue of the antient Romans was no fable or fiction.

Take ambition from these two rivals, and substitute instead of it a real love for their country, and, I repeat it again, antiquity has never produced two greater men: But the one could not bear a superior, nor the other an equal. Pompey, ^u says an historian, was exempt from almost every fault, if it was not one of the greatest, that being born in a city that was free and sovereign of nations, in which by right all the citizens were equal, he could not bear that any one should be equal to him in dignity and power. ^w And Cæsar, resolving to rule and lord it over the rest, at any rate, had those verses of Euripides continually in his mouth, which insinuate that if the greatest crimes were to be committed, it was when a throne was the motive.

*Nam si violandum est jus, regnandi causa:
Violandum est; aliis rebus pietatem colas.*

* The triumvirate formed between Pompey, Cæsar and Crassus, with a view only to their private interests, and which occasioned their own destruction, no less than the ruin of the republic, shews what we are to think of the so much boasted probity of the great Pompey. ^y He went still farther, and to strengthen his power was not ashamed to take Cæsar for his father-in-law, adopting by that alliance all his criminal

^u Vell. Patere. lib. ii. n. 29.

^w Cic. lib. v. Offic. n. 82.

^x Patere. lib. ii. n. 44.

^y Cic. lib. iii. de Off. n. 82.

views and designs, the injustice of which he better knew than any body. ^z Thus Cato, in reply to some persons, who were saying that the differences which had arose between Pompey and Cæsar had ruined the commonwealth, no, says he, *it was their union.*

Cato was not mistaken. He had foreseen all that happened afterwards. Finding the laws overthrown, the authority of the senate despised, the people corrupted by bribes, the first places in the commonwealth publicly sold for money, and even with Pompey's knowledge and consent, he did not forbear to inform the senate and people, that they were labouring to give themselves a master, and to divest themselves of the most valuable part of their substance, which was their liberty.

It fell out as he had foretold. Discord at last broke out: the two parties took up arms; ^a the one seemed to have more justice on his side, the other more force. Here the pretence was the more specious, and there the measures most wisely taken. Pompey relied upon the authority of the senate, and Cæsar upon the valour of his soldiers. But the step which Pompey took, of quitting Rome and Italy, took off very much from the high opinion which had before been conceived of his merit.

All the world is acquainted with the success of this civil war. After a great deal of bloodshed, and that the best blood in the republick, Cæsar remained conqueror, and assumed a sovereign power to which the diadem only was wanting, with the title of King, to gratify his ambition; and this he tried several times in vain to obtain by his emissary. It was this which hastened his death, and, by a last effort of expiring liberty, armed against him the hands of his best friends, and those upon whom he had conferred the greatest

^z Plut. in Pomp.

^a Alterius ducis causa melior videbatur, alterius erat firmior. Hic omnia speciosa, illic valentia, Pom-

peium senatus auctoritas, Cæsarem militum armavit fiducia. Patere. lib. ii, n. 49.

benefits. It was looked upon as the effect of Divine vengeance, that this usurper, who had pursued Pompey to his grave, after he had made use of his interest to establish his own tyranny, should fall dead, and covered with wounds, at the foot of that Pompey's statue.

IV. *The young OCTAVIUS.*

Matters were now brought to that point of disorder and confusion in the Roman republick, which Polybius speaks of, where the only remedy for the present, is the supreme authority of a powerful man, as alone capable of restoring order and regularity. This man was the young Octavius, destined to introduce a new form of government. He was the son of Julius Cæsar's niece, who had adopted him and declared him his heir by will, and he was not then quite twenty years old. As soon as he heard the news of his uncle's death, he made haste to Rome, took the name of Cæsar, distributed all the money the deceased had left him among the citizens, and by that means formed a powerful party against Anthony, who aspired to the government.

Tully was the person that contributed most to the advancement of the young Cæsar. I beg leave here to explain at large the part which Tully had in this great event. I have endeavoured in the second volume to give some idea of his genius and eloquence, and it may not be improper here to take a view of him as a politician and member of the state. An author who is seldom out of the hands of youth, ought to be known by them in every light.

Tully was then very powerful in the republick; all eyes were turned upon him as the strongest bulwark and firmest defender of liberty. His hatred against Anthony, whose resentment he had cause to fear, very much contributed to make him incline to Octavius's party. But he was also more attached to him,

^b says

^a says Plutarch, through a secret motive of vanity and ambition, as hoping that the arms of this young man would secure and encrease his own power and authority in the government, for the good of the republic.

This was always the weak side of Cicero, which induced him to make so mean a court to Cæsar after his victory, and which even hindered him from distrustful Pompey as he should have done, and as he was advised to do, ^c by being told that he must not always rely on his fine speeches, and that it was easy, amidst all his fair discourse, to discover what he aimed at and desired. But Tully would be praised, flattered, considered and employed. A commendation in which there appeared some reserve was capable, if not to make a quarrel, at least to make him behave with coldness to his best friends; as actually happened in the case of Brutus, ^d who upon some occasion had only called him an *excellent consul*. And what, says Cicero, could an enemy have said more sparingly? On the other hand, whoever praised and caressed him might get from him whatever they would. The young Cæsar was not sparing in this point. He was continually loading him with civilities and flatteries, called him his father, seemed inclined to depend entirely upon him, and do nothing without his advice. And for this reason Tully, who was extremely warm in the pursuit of every thing he had at heart, ^e so highly extolled him in the senate and before the people, and procured him so many privileges, dispensations and extraordinary honours in preferring the courage with

^b In vit. Cic.

^c Pompeius solet aliud sentire & loqui: neque tamen tantum valet ingenio, ut non appareat quid copiat. Epist. i. lib. 8. ad Famil.

^d Hic autem (Brutus) se etiam tribuere multum mihi putat, quod scripserit optimum consulem. Quis enim jejunius dixit inimicus? Ad Att. lib. 12. Epist. 22.

^e Laudo, laudo vos, quirites, cum

gratissimis animis prosequimini nomen clarissimi adolescentis, vel potius pueri: sunt enim facta ejus immortalitatis, non ætatis. Multa meminini, multa audivi, multa legi: nihil tale cognovi, &c. Philip. iv. n. 3. Qui nisi esset in hac republica natus, rempublicam scelere Antonii nullam haberemus. Phil. iii. n. 5.

which

which he had opposed himself to Anthony above all the most glorious actions. And as men of understanding, who doubtless discerned a great fund of ambition, joined with considerable merit in the young Cæsar, were apprehensive that such particular distinctions might be attended with ill consequences, and the public liberty suffer by them, ^f Tully to reconcile them persisted in repeating, that instead of taking any alarm at them, they ought on the contrary to have the highest expectations from this young man, whose sentiments he was thoroughly acquainted with, and knew that he held nothing more dear than the republick, nothing more deserving his respect than the authority of the senate, nothing more valuable than the esteem of good men, nor any thing more pleasing and agreeable than true glory.

^g Brutus, though at a distance from Rome and the center of business, expressed the same fears and apprehensions. He represented to him, that as he was placed in the highest degree of authority and credit, that a citizen could have in a free city, and to the satisfaction of all his friends, he became in a manner responsible for all events; that to a man in his station good intentions were not sufficient, unless they were attended with prudence; that in the present conjuncture, the principal effect of prudence was to be cautious of the honours that were conferred on those who did service to the republick; as the senate ought never to grant any thing to a private man, which might become of pernicious example to such as were ill disposed, or even supply them with arms and forces against the state.

Tully was not thoroughly sensible of the wisdom and importance of this advice 'till the young Cæsar began to treat him with coldness. ^h He then grew sensible what a weight he had laid upon himself in passing his word for him to the republick, and became

^f Philip. v. n. 50, 51.

^g Brut. Ep. iii. and Cic.

^h Epist. xvii. Cicer. ad Brutum.

apprehensive

apprehensive that he should scarce be able to make good his promise. Not that he still absolutely despaired of it ; he thought he saw a remedy in his good disposition, but he feared the inconstancy and flexibility of his age, and dreaded still more the tribe of flatterers, that were constantly around him, and laboured incessantly to turn his head with false ideas of a vain and trifling grandeur.

The conspirators, at whose head was Brutus, were at first highly honoured and commended. And the young Cæsar himself, by pursuing Anthony as an enemy of the republick, seemed to declare openly in their favour. But when he saw his power entirely established, he no longer dissembled, but threw off the mask. This alteration was very grievous to Cicero, who plainly foresaw the consequences of it, which he was no longer in a condition to prevent. He wrote him a letter upon the subject, in which he implored his protection for the conspirators, but in such a manner as highly offended Brutus, to whom Atticus, their common friend, and doubtless with Tully's consent, had sent a copy of the letter. Brutus expressed his grief and astonishment at it to both of them, in two letters, which well deserve to be read, as they shew by the generous and noble sentiments they contain, that this great defender of liberty was justly called the last of the Romans. I hope it may not be unacceptable if I here quote some passages from them.

^b In the letter to Cicero, after the first compliments, he opens his heart to him upon the mean and submissive manner in which he wrote to Octavius, which might almost occasion a suspicion that Cicero thought they had only changed their master, and not shook off the yoke of dominion. *All that is required of him, you say to him, is, that he would be pleased to protect and defend the citizens, who are esteemed and valued by men of probity and the Roman people.* Are we then at the discretion of Octavius, and ruined unless he pleases

to protect us? 'Twere better to die a hundred deaths, than to be indebted to him for living. ⁱ I do not think the Gods so much the enemies of Rome, as to require that the preservation of any citizen, and much less of the deliverers of the world, should be asked of Octavius as a favour. For I think it proper to talk in this high strain to persons ignorant of what every one has to fear, and of whom any thing is to be asked. Are we then upon the point of settling the conditions of slavery, and not of abolishing the slavery itself? What matters it whether 'tis Cæsar or Anthony or Octavius that reigns? Have we only taken up arms to change our master, and not to assert our liberty? The Gods shall rather take my life from me a hundred times, than take from me the resolution of not suffering, I say not, that the heir of him I have slain should reign in his place, but that my very father, were he to live again, should make himself lord of the laws and senate. You intreat for our security and return to Rome; but be assured that we value neither the one nor the other, if they are to be bought at the price of our honour and liberty. ^k To live, in my opinion, is to be at a distance from slavery, and from those who are friends to it. Every place shall be Rome to me, where I can be free. ⁱ Take care therefore that you do not hereafter recommend me to that Cæsar; nor, if I have any credit with you, yourself either. The few years you have left to live, are of strange value to you if they can induce you to make abject supplications to that boy. For my own part, I am resolved not to be led by the

ⁱ Ego medius fidius non existimo tam omnes deos aversos esse à salute populi Romani, ut Octavius orandus sit pro salute cujusquam civis, non dicam pro liberatoribus orbis terrarum. Juvat enim magnificè loqui; & certè decet adversus ignorantes quid pro quoque timendum, aut à quoque petendum sit.

^k Ego verò longè à servientibus abero, mihi que judicabo esse Romanam, ubicumque locorum esse licebit.

ⁱ Me verò posthac ne commendaveris. Cæsari tuo, ne te quidem ipsum, si me audies. Valde carè æstimas tot annos quot ista ætas recipit, si propter eam causam puero isti supplicaturus es.

weakness

weakness or desertion of others. There is nothing I shall omit to preserve our common country from slavery; ^m and I shall look with pity upon those, in whom neither their advanced age, the glory of their past actions, nor the example of courage which others set them, can diminish a fondness for living. If our desires, and the justice of our cause meet with success, we shall be satisfied. But if things happen otherwise, I shall not judge myself at all the more unhappy, as I think myself born to defend and deliver my country, and that life is only desirable on this account.

ⁿ In his letter to Atticus, he expresses himself with still greater force and freedom. I agree, says he, that Cicero had a very good intention in all that he has done. No body is better acquainted with his affection and zeal for the republick than I am. But upon this occasion shall I say, that his wisdom is mistaken, or that he has been too much guided by policy? He who was not afraid, for the safety of the state, to make Anthony his enemy. This I am sure of, that by treating Octavius as he has, he has only nourished and inflamed his ambition and presumption. He boasts of having put an end to the war against Anthony, without moving a single step from Rome. Did he do this only to give him a successor? I am grieved that I am forced to write thus to you. But you have desired me to lay open my heart with entire freedom. How imprudent is it through a blind fear to draw upon ourselves the ills we apprehend, and which possibly we may avoid? ^o death, banishment and poverty are too terrible to us. Cicero seems to judge these the worst of misfortunes; and provided he finds persons who

^m Ac vestri miserebor, quibus nec ætas, neque honores, neque virtus aliena dulcedinem vivendi minuere potuerit.

ⁿ Ibid, Epist. 16.

^o Nimiùm timemus mortem, exilium, & paupertatem. Hæc mihi videntur Ciceroni ultima esse

in malis: &, dum habeat à quibus impetret quæ velit, & à quibus colatur ac laudetur, servitutem, honorificam modò, non aspernatur: si quicquam in extrema ac miserrima contumelia potest honorificum esse.

respect

respect and commend him, and from whom he may obtain what he desires, that he is in no dread of slavery, in case it be honourable; if indeed any thing can be honourable in the lowest and most wretched degree of infamy. Octavius, indeed, may well call Cicero his father, and seem willing to depend entirely upon him, and load him with commendations and civilities. We shall soon see how much his words and actions disagree. Is any thing, in short, more opposite to common sense than to call him father, whom we don't look upon as a free man? But it is easy to see, that the good Cicero labours only to make Octavius favourable to him. ^p I no longer set any value upon all his philosophy. For of what use are those noble sentiments to him, with which his books are filled, where he treats of death and banishments, of poverty and solid glory, of real honour, and the zeal which every man ought to shew for the liberty of his country? ^q Let Cicero then live in submission and servitude, since he is capable of it, and neither his age, nor his honours, nor his past actions make him ashamed to suffer it! For my own part, no condition of slavery, how honourable soever it may appear, shall hinder me from declaring war against tyranny, against decrees irregularly made, against unjust dominion, and every power that would set itself above the laws. He concludes his letter with declaring that though his friendship for Cicero is not at all lessened, yet he could not avoid thinking of him with far less esteem than formerly, as it is not in our own power to judge otherwise of men than from the idea we have conceived of them.

Every thing fell out as Brutus had foreseen. The young Cæsar soon perceived that the men of probity, who were all zealous for liberty, designed to restrain

^p Ego verò jam iis artibus nihil tribuo, quibus scio Ciceronem instructissimum esse. Quid enim illi profunt quæ pro libertate patriæ, quæ de dignitate, de morte, exilio,

paupertate scripsit copiosissimè?

^q Vivat hercule Cicero, qui potest, supplex & obnoxius, si neque ætatis, neque honorum, neque rerum gestarum pudet.

his

his authority within the just bounds of a lawful power. He learnt also that Cicero, who seldom or ever stifled his jest, and valued himself upon his skill in raillery, that Cicero, I say, by an ambiguous expression, which is not to be expressed in any other language than the Latin, spoke of him as of a young man that was to be praised and honoured, and then taken off. *Laudandum adolescentem, ornandum, tollendum.* But the other sharply replied, that he would take effectual care that it should not happen so. *Se non esse commissurum ut tolli possit.*

He took effectual care, indeed, and declaring himself at once against the conspirators, commenced a process against them. Then Cæsar, Lepidus and Anthony being reconciled, and forming amongst themselves that famous league which is so well known by the name of the second triumvirate, they divided the provinces, made that horrible proscription of above two hundred of the most illustrious citizens, and set a price upon their heads. We see here again how cruel and violent ambition is, even in such persons as appear to be of a mild and gentle disposition, and how it extinguishes all sense of honour, probity and gratitude. * Cæsar to compass his end, after a weak and faint resistance, sacrificed his benefactor, the artificer of his fortune, in a word, the person he called father, to the hatred of Anthony. He who for so many years had employed his voice in defending the interests both of private persons and the publick, died without finding any one to defend himself.

† What a sad spectacle! The head of Cicero was placed between his two hands upon that very rostrum, from whence as consul, and afterwards as a person of consular dignity, he had so often made his voice to be heard; and where that very year he had de-claimed against Anthony, with more than human elo-

* Ep. xi. lib. xx. ad Famil,

† Liv. in fragm.

‡ Paterc. lib. ii. n. 66.

quence and unprecedented applause. He was three-score and three years old when he died, so that his death might not have seemed untimely if it had not been violent. His genius distinguished itself as well by his works, which were the fruits of it, as the honours which were the reward of it. His state of prosperity, which was of long standing, was mixed with very severe trials, with banishment, the ruin of the party he had embraced, the death of a daughter he affectionately loved, and so unhappy and tragical an end. Of all these misfortunes death was the only one he bore like a man of courage. After all, set the good against the ill, and we may truly say that he was a very great man, of a very extensive genius, and deserving the admiration of all ages; and that to give him his just praise would require another Cicero.

^a St. Augustine speaking of this event, observes how limited the views of the most prudent men are, and how short sighted we are in relation to the future. Cicero had warmly espoused the party of the young Cæsar, in hopes of surmounting, by his interest, that of Anthony his enemy, and of restoring liberty by his means; and directly the contrary fell out. 'Twas this young man which gave him up to the rage of Anthony, and within a little time after usurped dominion, and made himself master of the republick.

To resume the series of the narration and conclude. Cæsar delivered from his two rivals, by events which it would be too long to relate here, found himself master of all that was subject to the Romans. ^w He then consulted with Agrippa and Mecænas, his most intimate friends, whether he should restore the republick to its ancient liberty, by resigning the authority into the hands of the senate and people, or whether he should take upon himself the sovereign power. Agrippa, though he was the companion of his fortune, and the husband of his niece, was of the first opinion. Me-

^a De Civit. Dei, lib. iii. c. 30. ^w Dio lib. lii. M. de Tillem. vie d'Aug.

cænas represented to him, by a great many reasons, that the state could not subsist but under a monarchy; that he could not himself resign his authority without danger of his life; but that he would find it his glory as well as his security to govern in a just and equitable manner. Cæsar therefore complied with this last advice. M. de St. Evremont has given us a description of his government and genius, which well deserves to be read. I shall here insert an extract of it.

“ After the tyranny of the triumvirate and the
“ desolation which the civil war had wrought, he was
“ disposed at last to govern a people by reason, whom
“ he had subdued by force; and disgusted at the violence to which he was led, perhaps by the necessity of his affairs, he was pleased to establish an
“ happy subjection, which was farther removed from
“ slavery than from their ancient liberty.

“ One of his greatest and most constant cares was
“ to make the Romans taste the happiness of his government, and render his dominion as insensible
“ to them as possible. He cast off even the very
“ names that might displease them, and especially rejected the character of dictator, which was detested
“ in Sylla and odious in Cæsar himself.

“ The generality of persons, who raise themselves,
“ assume new titles to authorize their new power.
“ He chose to conceal a new power under familiar
“ names and common titles of honour. He caused
“ himself to be called * Emperor from time to time,
“ to preserve his authority over the legions; he was
“ created tribune, to dispose of the people, and was
“ called Prince of the senate, to govern it. But by
“ uniting so many different powers in his person, he
“ charged himself also with different employments, and
“ became the general, the magistrate and the senator,

* He transmitted the title of Emperor to his successors, as also that of Augustus, which he received after the famous battle of Actium.

“ when he had attained the sovereignty. Thus he
 “ made no other use of his power, than to remove
 “ the confusion which universally prevailed. He re-
 “ stored the people to their rights, and retrenched only
 “ the canvassing that was usual in the election of
 “ magistrates. He restored the senate to their ancient
 “ splendor, after he had first banished corruption
 “ from it. For he contented himself with a mode-
 “ rate power, which did not leave him the liberty of
 “ doing ill ; but he exercised an absolute one, when
 “ he was to impose upon others the necessity of doing
 “ well. Thus the people were as free as before in
 “ every other respect but that of being seditious ;
 “ and the senate was full as powerful, except that
 “ it could not be equally unjust. Liberty lost no-
 “ thing but the ills which it might occasion, not any
 “ thing of the happiness it could produce.”

y Upon his first entrance on his sovereign authority,
 he had the pleasure of seeing the temple of Janus shut,
 which was never done, but when wars were ceased
 throughout the empire. M. de Tillemont observes
 after Eusebius, that the Son of God being upon the
 point of making himself man to bring us from heaven
 the true peace with God, our selves and the rest of
 mankind, was pleased at the same time to give an
 image of that inward peace by establishing an out-
 ward and visible peace upon earth. This peace and
 union of a great number of provinces in one and the
 same monarchy, was agreeable to the designs of God
 by the facility it gave the preachers of the gospel to
 pass from province to province, and universally diffuse
 the light of the faith ; and the people not being en-
 gaged by the troubles and tumult of wars, gave a
 willing ear to what they preached, and embraced the
 faith with joy, when God had opened their hearts by
 his grace.

y M. Tillem, vie d'Aug.

'Tis

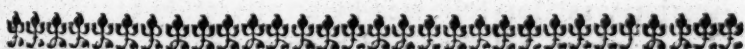
'Tis thus that God the sole arbiter of all human events determines as lord of all the fate of empires, prescribes the form of them, regulates their limits, marks out their duration, and makes the very passions and crimes of men subservient to the execution of his gracious and just designs in favour of mankind; and by the secret springs of his admirable wisdom, disposes at a distance and without man's being sensible of it, the preparations for the great work to which all the rest relates, which is the establishment of his church and salvation of his elect.



PART the FOURTH.

Of Fable and Antiquities.

IT remains that I speak in this fourth part of fable and antiquities, and this I shall do in very few words.

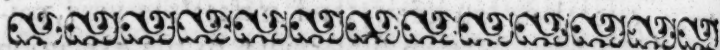


CHAP. I.

Of Fable.

THERE is no subject in literature either of greater use than what I now speak of, or more susceptible of profound erudition, or more perplexed with doubts and difficulties. My design is not to penetrate into these obscurities, or to resolve them, but only to exhort youth not to neglect a study which may be of great advantage to them. I shall therefore confine myself to two reflections, and but lightly touch

upon either of them. One of which shall relate to the origin of fable, and the other to its utility.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

Of the origin of Fable.

FABLE, which is a medley composed of real facts and ornamental falsehoods, took its rise from truth, that is from history as well sacred as profane; the several events of which have been altered in different manners and at different times, either by popular opinions, or poetical fictions.

I say, that fable took its rise in part from sacred history, and that its first and principal origin is to be found there. The family of Noah perfectly instructed in religion by that holy patriarch preserved for some time the worship of the true God in all its purity. But when after their fruitless endeavours to build the tower of Babel, they were divided and dispersed into different countries; the diversity of language and habitation was soon followed by an alteration of worship. Truth which till then had been conveyed by the sole channel of tradition, subject to a thousand variations, and was not yet fixed by scripture, the secure guardian of facts, truth, I say, was obscured by an infinite number of fables, and those of the latest invention increased the darkness of such as were more ancient.

The tradition of great principles and great events was preserved amongst all people not without some mixture of fiction, but with evident and very discernible traces of truth; a certain proof that these people were all sprung from the same original.

Hence arose the universal notion of one supreme God, Almighty, the Lord and Creator of the world; and the consequence of it, the necessity of an outward worship

worship by ceremonies and sacrifices. Hence the uniform and general consent in respect to certain facts; the creation of man by the hand of God himself; his state of happiness and innocence, implied by the golden age, when the earth without being watered by the sweat of his brows, or cultivated by painful labour, supplied him with every thing in abundance; the fall of the same man, from whence arose all his misfortunes, and followed by a deluge of crimes which brought on an inundation of waters; the saving of the human race by an ark which stopt upon a mountain, and lastly the propagation of mankind by a single man and his three sons.

But the detail of particular actions being less important and for this reason less known, was presently altered by fables and fictions; as we clearly see even in the family of Noah. As he was the father of three children, and the people that were descended of them dispersed themselves after the deluge into three different parts of the world, this history gave occasion to the fable of Saturn, whose three children, according to the poets, divided the empire of the world amongst them.

Cham or Ham is the same with Ammon or Jupiter; Japhet, known under this name by the poets, was also worshiped under that of Neptune, because the maritime countries fell to his share.

The posterity of Shem, several of whose descendants had a better sense of religion, left his name in oblivion. For which reason he was taken for the God of the dead and of oblivion.

It is easy to see upon what the scandalous history of Saturn was founded, who was injuriously treated by one of his sons.

It is as easy to comprehend that the licentiousness of the Saturnalia arose from an irreverent remembrance of the drunkenness of Saturn or Noah.

The severe punishment of the son, who saw the nakedness of Noah, has left among the Pagans the

memory of Saturn's indignation, who according to ^z Callimachus made an irrevocable law, that whoever should behave with the like temerity towards the Gods, should presently be deprived of fight.

How many particulars do we observe wherein Moses and Bacchus agree; and so of a great many others?

Here then we have certainly one of the sources of fable, which is the alteration of facts and events in history.

The ministry of Angels with reference to men has been another. God who had associated the Angels to his spiritual nature, to his intelligence and immortality, was pleased farther to associate them to his providence in the government of the world, as well in relation to nature and the elements, as to the government of nations. ^a The Scripture speaks to us of Angels, which preside over the waters, the winds, the lightning, thunder and earthquakes. It points out to us others, who armed with a sword of thunder ravage all Egypt, destroy a vast body of people in Jerusalem by the plague, and exterminate the army of an impious Prince. ^b There is mention also made of an Angel who was prince and protector of the empire of the Persians; of another, prince of the empire of the Greeks; of the Arch-Angel Michael, prince of the people of God. The external ministry of Angels is as ancient as the world, as we see from the example of the Cherubim placed at the gate of the terrestrial Paradise, to guard the entrance into it.

Noah and the Patriarchs were thoroughly instructed in this truth, which very nearly concerned them, and they were doubtless very careful to teach it to their families, who by little and little losing the purer and spiritual ideas of an invisible Deity, fixed their attention only upon the ministers of his benefits and vengeance. And thence it possibly might happen that

^z Callim. hym. εἰς Λούτρα τῆς 1, 5, 7. c. xvi. v. 5.
παλλὰδος.

^b Dan. c. x. v. 20, 21.

^a Apoc. c. vii. v. c. viii. 1. v.

men took their notion of the Gods, which presided some over the fruits of the earth, and others over rivers; some over war, others over peace, and so of all the rest; of Gods, whose power and ministry were limited to certain countries and certain people, but were all subject to the authority of a supreme God.

Another principle of religion generally engraven in the minds of all people, also made way for the multiplicity of the Pagan divinities; and that is a constant persuasion that divine Providence presides over all human events, both great and small; and that no one, without exception, escapes its vigilance and care.

^c But men astonished at the immense number of particulars, to which it was requisite the Deity should descend, thought to ease him of the trouble by giving every God his peculiar and personal function. *Singulis rebus propria disponentes officia numinum.*

The care of a whole country would have been too much business for a single God; the lands were committed to one, the mountains to another, the hills to a third, and the vallies to a fourth. St. Augustin reckons up a dozen different divinities all employed about a stalk of corn; every one of which according to his particular function takes a peculiar care of it at different times, from the moment the seed has been thrown into the earth, till the corn arrives at maturity.

^d Besides this multitude of inferior Gods designed for these mean functions, there are others, says St. Augustin, that are more ^e considerable and of an higher rank, as having evidently a more noble share in the government of the world.

But, ^f adds the same father, they are these very important and renowned Gods, which fable has most dis-

^c S. Aug. de Civit. Dei, lib. iv. c. 8.

^d Lib. vii. c. 2. Illam quasi plebeiam numinum multitudinem minutis opusculis destinatam.

^e Numina selecta dicuntur . . . quia opera majora ab his admini-

strantur in mundo.

^f Illam infimam turbam ipsa ignobilitas texit ne obrueretur opprobriis. . . . Vix selectorum quispian, qui non in se notam contumeliæ insignis acceperit. Lib. vii. cap. 4.

graced and disparaged, by attributing to them the most shameful crimes and most detestable disorders, murders, adulteries and incests. Whereas in the case of those inferior Gods, their obscurity and meanness has secured their honour by leaving them in oblivion. And this has besides been a fruitful source of fictions, with which the corruption of man's heart has supplied fable in order to palliate and excuse the most frightful irregularities by the example of the Gods themselves.

There was no species of infamy which was not authorized and even consecrated by the worship paid to certain Gods. ^g Upon the festival of the mother of the Gods, they sung such songs that the mother of a comedian would have blushed at; and Scipio Nasica, who was chosen by the senate as the fittest man in the republick with whom to lodge her statue, would have been grieved to have had his own mother a Goddess at such a rate, or that she had held the place of Cybele.

^h The philosophers blamed all these impure ceremonies, but with fear, in faint terms, and only within the limits of their own schools. However religious among their disciples, they followed the people in the temples and theatres, where these abominations took place; and ⁱ Seneca in a work, which we have lost, where he rails with great force at these sacrilegious superstitions, declares notwithstanding, that a wise man will externally conform to them in compliance to the laws of the state, though he knows well that such a worship can never please the Gods, but must only provoke them. *Quæ omnia sapiens servabit tanquam legibus jussa, non tanquam Diis grata.*

I do not here propose to point out all the sources from whence fable has taken its rise, but only to shew some of the most common; and in this number we may place the sense of admiration or gratitude, which inclined men to annex the idea of divinity to whatever

^g Lib. ii. c. 4, 5.

^h Et si non libere prædicando, saltem utcumque in disputationi-

bus mustitando, talia se improbare testati sunt. Lib. vi. cap. 1.

ⁱ Lib. vi. cap. 20.

made an impression on their imagination, nearly affected them, or seemed to procure them any advantage, such as the sun, moon, or stars; the fathers with regard to the children, and children with respect to their fathers; the persons who had either invented or carried any useful arts to perfection; the heroes who had distinguished themselves in war by extraordinary valour, or purged the land of robbers and disturbers of the publick tranquillity; and lastly, all those, who by any virtue or glorious action seemed superior to the generality of mankind. And it is very visible without my observing it, that profane as well as sacred history, has given occasion to all those Demi-Gods and heroes, which fable has placed in heaven by joining frequently under one and the same head and name such actions as were very distinct both as to time, place and persons.



ARTICLE the SECOND.

Of the usefulness of Fable.

WHAT I have already observed concerning the origin of fables, which owe their birth to fiction, error and falshood, to the alteration of historical facts and the corruption of man's heart, may give reason to ask, whether it is proper to instruct Christian children in all the foolish inventions, absurd and idle dreams, with which paganism has filled the books of antiquity.

This study when applied to with all the precautions and wisdom, which religion demands and inspires, may be very useful to youth.

First it teaches them what they owe to Jesus Christ, their Redeemer, who has delivered them from the power of darkness, to bring them into the admirable light of the Gospel. Before him what were even the

wisest and best of men, those celebrated philosophers, those great politicians, those famous legislators of Greece, those grave senators of Rome, in a word, all the best governed and wisest nations of the world? Fable informs us, they were blind worshippers of the devil, who bent their knees before gold, silver and marble; who offered incense to statues, that were deaf and dumb; who acknowledged, as Gods, animals, reptiles and plants; who were not ashamed to adore an adulterous Mars, a prostituted Venus, and an incestuous Juno, a Jupiter polluted with all manner of crimes, and for that reason most worthy of the first place among the Gods.

What great impurities, what monstrous abominations were admitted into their ceremonies, their solemnities and mysteries? The temples of their Gods were schools of licentiousness, their pictures invitations to sin, their groves places of prostitution, their sacrifices a frightful mixture of superstition and cruelty.

In this condition were all mankind, except the people of the Jews, for near four thousand years. In this state were our fathers, and we should have likewise been, if the light of the Gospel had not dispersed our darkness. Every story in fabulous history, every circumstance of the lives of the Gods, should fill us at once with confusion, admiration and gratitude, and seem to cry out to us aloud in the words of St. Paul to the Ephesians. ^k *Remember, and forget it not, that being sprung from Gentiles ye were strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope and without God in the world.*

A second advantage of fable is that in discovering to us the absurd ceremonies and impious maxims of Paganism, it ought to inspire us with new respect for the august majesty of the Christian religion and the sanctity of its morals. We learn from ecclesiastical history, that an holy ^l bishop, in order to eradicate en-

^k Eph. ii. v. 11, 12.

andria. Theod. v. c. 22. Ruff. ii.

^l Theophilus bishop of Alex- c. 23, 24. Socr. v. c. 16.

tirely all dispositions to idolatry out of the minds of the faithful, brought to light and publicly exposed all that was found in the inside of a temple he had caused to be demolished, the bones of men, the members of children sacrificed to devils, and several other footsteps of the sacrilegious worship, which the Pagans paid to their Deities. The study of fable should produce a like effect in the mind of every sensible person, and it is this use that the holy fathers and all the apologists of Christianity have made of it.

It is impossible to understand the books which have been written upon this subject, without having some knowledge of fabulous history. St. Augustin's great work, intitled, *De Civitate Dei*, which has done so much honour to the church, is at the same time both a proof of what I lay down, and a perfect model of the manner how we ought to sanctify profane studies. The same may be said of the other fathers, who have gone upon the same plan from the beginning of Christianity, Theophilus of Antioch, Tatian, Arnobius, Lactantius, Theodoret, Eusebius of Cæsarea and especially St. Clement of Alexandria, whose *Stromata* are not to be understood by any one, that is not versed in this part of ancient learning. Whereas the knowledge of fable makes the knowledge of them extremely easy, which we ought to look upon as no small advantage.

It is also very useful (and particularly to youth for whom I write) for the understanding both of Greek, Latin, French and English authors, in reading of which they must be often at a stand without some acquaintance with fable. I don't speak only of the poets, to whom we know it is a kind of natural language; it is also frequently made use of by orators, and sometimes by an happy application supplies them with very lively and eloquent turns: Such, for instance, amongst a great many others, is the following passage in Tully's oration concerning Mithridates King of Pontus.

^m The orator takes notice that this Prince flying before the Romans, after the loss of a battle, found means to escape out of the hands of his covetous conquerors, by scattering upon the road, from time to time, a part of his treasures and spoils. In like manner, says he, as it is told of Medea, that when she was pursued by her father, in the same country, she scattered the members of her brother Absyrtus, whom she had cut to pieces, along the way, that his care in gathering up the dispersed members, and his grief at the sight of so sad a spectacle, might retard his pursuit. The resemblance is exact, except that as Tully remarks, *Æeta* the father of Medea was stopped in his course by sorrow, and the Romans by joy.

There are different species of books exposed to the view of the whole world, such as pictures, prints, tapestry and statues. These are so many riddles to those who are ignorant of fabulous history, from whence their explication is frequently to be taken. These matters are likewise frequently brought into discourse, and it is not, in my opinion, over agreeable to sit mute and seem stupid in company for want of being instructed, whilst young, in a matter so easy to be learnt.

All these reasons have ever made me wish that somebody would be at the pains to draw up an history of the fabulous times, which might be put into the hands of all the world, and be expressly calculated for the use of youth. F. Galtruchius's work is somewhat of this kind, but it is too short; as is also F. Jouvenci's treatise, intitled, *Appendix de Diis*, which otherwise is excellent. M. L'Abbe Bannier's performance, in three volumes, contains most of what is wanting upon this subject, the substance of it being taken from history itself, which is the best system in this kind, and explains the different sources of it with great solidity and erudition. But this work is too learned and too large for the boys, as that also of F. Tournemine

would be ; of which he has given us such a plan as makes us wish the work was finished. There has been lately published a book, intitl'd, *Dictionnaire de la fable*. It may be very useful in clearing up any difficulties relating to fable, which may occur in reading, but is not a continued history.

One single volume of a reasonable length, might be made to contain the most considerable and remarkable facts, and such as would contribute most to the understanding of authors. I should think it would be adviseable to omit what barely relates to learning, as it would render the study of fable more difficult and less agreeable, or at least to throw all reflections of this kind into short notes ; but it would be absolutely requisite to throw out every thing that might be prejudicial to purity of manners, and not only to leave out any story, but even any expression that might give the least offence to any chaste or Christian ears. I have engaged a person, who has a great deal of knowledge, judgment and piety to undertake this small performance, which cannot but be very useful to all young persons of both sexes ; and I hope in a little time it will be in a condition to be published.



C H A P. II.

Of Antiquities.

BESIDES the events contained in history, and the reflections which are the natural consequence of them, this study contains still another part, which though less necessary and agreeable indeed, may yet be very useful, if made with judgment and discretion ; I mean the knowledge of usages, customs, and whatever else is understood by the name of antiquities. The readers of history are in some respect like travellers. There

There is generally some end proposed, either of going into their own country, or to some other place, whether their business or their interest leads them; and it is this end, this motive which puts them in action, and sets them a going. Notwithstanding, if they have leisure and curiosity, they take care by the way, to examine whatever they meet with in their way worth notice, and insert it in the journals or memoirs they draw up for their own private use. Thus also we should act in studying history, besides the series of facts and events, and the wise reflections arising from them, we should carefully collect whatever relates to usages, customs, laws, arts, and a thousand other curious branches of knowledge, which serve as ornaments to the mind, and likewise contribute very much to the perfect understanding of what we read.

The usefulness of the study of Antiquities.

This study, to a certain degree, is absolutely necessary to all masters. There are in all authors a great many expressions, allusions, and comparisons, which cannot be understood without it; and it is scarce possible without it to make one single step in the reading of history, and not be puzzled with difficulties, which a very slight knowledge of antiquity would frequently resolve. Let any one lightly run over the first book of Livy, which, with the origin of the Roman people, contains that of the greatest part of their laws and customs, and he will soon be sensible of the utility and advantage of the study I am now recommending.

I know that this study, like all others, if carried too far, has its rocks and dangers. There is a kind of obscure and ill-managed learning, which is employed only upon questions equally vain and frivolous, which hunts after what is most abstruse and uncommon in every subject, and is almost wholly confined to the discovery of such things as are absolutely superfluous, and of which it is often better to be ignorant than to know.

know.
this ba
transfe
upon
of stud
intemp
a vast
superfl
culated
fessed
bottom
famou
volum
less qu
though
been o
such a
mus gr
cua leg

P J
person

n Eco
inane stu
Lib. de l
o Plu
intemper
tu exist
supervac
tioſarum

Ut pr
Ut eq
Tanq
Dom
Nutri
Anch
Quot

Be su
And
All a
That
To t
Anch
How
He g

know. ⁿ Seneca in more than one place complains of this bad taste, which taking rise amongst the Greeks, transferred itself to the Romans, and began to seize upon the nation. ^o He observes, that there is, in point of study, as in every thing else, a vicious excess and intemperance; that it is no less blameable to collect at a vast expence, an heap of useles knowledge, than of superfluous furniture; that this sort of learning is calculated only to make men impertinent, foolishly possessed with a notion of their own merit, and at the bottom really ignorant. Speaking of Didymus, the famous grammarian, who had wrote four thousand volumes, wherein he hath examined abundance of useles questions, not worth remembering; I should have thought him wretched enough, says Seneca, if he had been condemned, I say, not to write, but only to read such a heap of trifles. *Quatuor milia librorum Didymus grammaticus scripsit; miser, si tam multa supervacua legisset.*

^p Juvenal also justly derides the bad taste of some persons in his time, who were not satisfied unless a

ⁿ Ecce Romanos quoque invasit inane studium supervacua discendi. Lib. de brev. vic. cap. xiv.

^o Plus scire velle, quam sit satis, intemperantiæ genus est. . . . An tu existimas reprehendendum, qui supervacua usu sibi comparat, & pretiosarum rerum pompam in domo

explicat? non putas eum, qui occupatus est in supervacua literarum supellectile? quid quodd ista liberalium artium consecratio molestos, verbosos, intempestivos, sibi placentes facit, & ideo non discentes necessaria, quia supervacua didicerunt. Epist. 88.

^p Sed vos sævas imponite leges,

Ut præceptori verborum regula constet;

Ut legat historias; auctores noverit omnes

Tanquam unguis digitosque suos, ut fortè rogatus

Dum petit aut thermas, aut Phœbi balnea, dicat

Nutricem Anchisæ, nomen patriamque novercæ

Anchemoli; dicat, quot Acestor vixerit annos,

Quot Siculus Phrygibus vini donaverit urnas.

Juv. lib. iii. Sat. 7.

—hard laws upon the master lay.

Be sure he knows exactly grammar rules,

And all the best historians read in schools;

All authors, ev'ry poet to an hair;

That ask'd the question, he may scarce despair

To tell who nurs'd Anchises, or to name

Anchemolus's step mother, and whence she came:

How long Acestor liv'd, what stores of wine

He gave to the departing Trojan line.

pre-

preceptor directly could give an answer to a thousand absurd and ridiculous questions. It is, in short, to be little acquainted with the value of time, and to spend one's pains and labour to very bad purpose, to employ them in the study of such difficulties and obscurities, as are at the same time, according to ^q Tully's observation, unnecessary, and often trifling and vain.

*Turpe est difficiles habere nugas,
Et stultus labor est ineptiarum.*

MARTIAL.

A judicious master will carefully avoid falling into this mistake. In applying himself to history and antiquities he will not carry his enquiries to far, but be guided in this point by prudence and discretion. He will remember what ^r Quintilian says, that it is a foolish and pitiful vanity to be over curious in knowing all that the worst authors have said upon a subject; that such an occupation very idly wastes the time and pains which ought to be better employed; and that among the virtues and perfections of a good master, it is none of the least to be ignorant in some particulars. *Ex quo mihi inter virtutes grammatici habebitur, aliqua nescire.*

There is an art of making these dry and ordinarily tedious matters very agreeable, by intermixing them with short stories and reflections; by removing from them most of the thorns and difficulties, and leaving only the flower, in a manner, for the boys to gather, by exalting their taste, and awakening their curiosity with such particular circumstances as are likely to make an impression; in a word, by making them fond of this kind of exercise, and expect it with a sort of impatience.

With these precautions we cannot too much recommend the study of antiquities, either to scholars or

^q Alterum est vitium, quod quidam nimis magnum studium multamque operam in res obscuras at-

que difficiles conferunt, easdemque non necessarias. Offic. lib. 1. n. 19. 1 Quintil. lib. 1. cap. viii.

masters.

masters. The latter especially should look upon it as an essential branch of their duty. It is a part of learning not only suitable to their character, but absolutely necessary for all such persons as are designed by their station to study and teach the *belles lettres*. The university has, in all ages, been distinguished by this particular, as well as in every other respect. She has constantly sent abroad all sorts of learned men, who have done honour to literature and the nation, by the valuable works they have published. Turnebus, Muretus, Buchanan, Scaliger, Casaubon, and the many others, who have taught or studied in the university of Paris.

It is incumbent on us to support their glory, and to look upon their reputation as a rich inheritance, which we ought to transmit to our successors in all its value, and not suffer it to be spent or lavished by our idleness and indolence. We see several of our brethren in the university distinguish themselves in different kinds of literature, according to their particular taste and inclination, either by compositions in prose, or in Greek or Latin verses; or by a diligent study of rhetoric and the old rhetoricians; of the art of poetry and the writers who had treated it; of grammar in general and all its parts; by an exact knowledge of the ancient authors of the Greek and Roman history, and of the antiquities of both nations. We are allowed a noble emulation in this point, and we should all of us strive to equal, and if possible even to excel those who have gone before us.

It is not only the glory of the university which is herein concerned, but the honour of the nation ought sensibly to affect us. Some neighbouring countries seem inclined to deprive us of the glory of learning, by their extraordinary application to the sciences, and by the great and learned works with which they enrich the publick. They cannot deny the French their excellency in eloquence and poetry, in the study of polite learning, in the beauty
and

and delicacy of composition; the age of Lewis le Grand having been to us, what the age of Augustus was formerly to the Romans, that is, the rule and model of good taste in every kind. In preserving this glorious part of our ancient inheritance with care and jealousy, we must not neglect another which ought also to be very valuable to us, and it is the perfection of our condition to join both together, a good taste of the *belles lettres* with that of erudition.

These two parts, though very different, are not incompatible, and should be ready to lend each other a mutual assistance; in short, erudition makes a quite different figure, when supported by elegant and beautiful composition; such as we see in the works of Muretus, Manutius, and a great many other illustrious learned men, who have done such honour to literature; and on the other side, the delicacy of composition receives very considerable improvements from the solidity and multiplicity of thoughts and materials supplied by erudition.

I know not whether I am blinded by a love to my country, and prejudiced for a body of which I have the honour to be a member, but in my opinion, the two characters I have just mentioned, are happily united in most of the memoirs which the royal academy of *inscriptions* and *belles lettres* have published. We find there a considerable part of antiquities explained with great clearness and eloquence. I have made great use of them in the little I relate here. The twofold title this academy bears of *inscriptions* and *belles lettres*, sufficiently shews that their design is to unite the polite part of literature with the depth of erudition. Not to mention several other learned members of this body, such as were M. L'Abbe Fraguier, and M. L'Abbe Massien, they have lately lost an excellent person, who had both these qualities in an eminent degree, I mean the younger M. Boivin, the royal professor in the Greek tongue, keeper of the King's library, and one of the forty in the French academy.

cademy. He had a vast fund of erudition, and I question whether any man in all Europe was more thoroughly master of the Greek tongue than he; and yet at the same time he composed in three languages, Greek, Latin and French, either in prose or verse, in a manner extremely elegant. Several of the most able professors in the university never failed to lay their compositions before him, and always found an advantage from his criticism, which was equally modest and judicious. For my own part, though he was much younger than me, I always looked upon him as my master in matters of polite learning, especially where the Greek was concerned, and I stand indebted to him for a great part of the little I have known.

'Tis this erudition which young masters should aim at, who are seriously inclined to follow their own studies, and direct those of others. Nor should they be frightened with the length and difficulty of the labour; for by setting apart a certain portion of their time every day for the reading of ancient authors, they will by little and little make so rich a collection in this kind, as themselves will afterwards be astonished at; let them but begin, make the best use of their time, and take down their remarks with order and perspicuity. But a man must have already some tincture of erudition, before he can know what it is proper for him to observe as he reads. Thus to confine myself to the present point, it were to be wished that a master before he engages in the study of the ancient historians, would at least run over what Rosinus has written upon the Roman antiquities. This is not a work of much labour, and may notwithstanding be of great advantage to young masters in the perusal of authors, by making them attentive to several things which otherwise might escape them. We have a small Latin treatise, by F. Cantel the jesuit, entitled, *De Romana Republica*, which is very proper for young beginners. There is also one in French, but very concise, called, *Abregé des Antiquités Romaines*, which
may

may be put into the hands of the boys, 'till a better is expressly drawn up for their use; and I hope some skilful master will take upon himself this little work. A good part of what relates to antiquities may be reduced to seven or eight heads, *viz.* religion, politicks, war, navigation, publick monuments and buildings, games, battles, spectacles, arts and sciences, and the usages of common life, such as meals, habits, money, &c.

Every one of these parts contains a great many others. For instance, under the title of religion are comprehended the Gods, the priests, the temples, the vessels and other instruments employed in several acts of religion, the sacrifices, feasts, vows and oblations, oracles and predictions; under the title of political government, the comitia or assemblies, the different offices of magistracy, the laws and judgments; and so of all the rest.

There are abundance of curious points, and such as certainly deserve to be taken notice of, which a master that has some knowledge in this study may observe to his scholars, as occasion offers, and which in time will supply them with an abundance of useful and agreeable points of knowledge, at no great expence of pains. A few examples will explain my meaning, and shew how serviceable the study of antiquities may be towards exciting the curiosity of youth, and inspiring them with a taste for learning, or even to instil into them the useful principles of morality and religion. I shall here confine myself to one single article relating to arts, and shall treat only of a very small part of them.

Facts and reflections relating to the invention of arts.

It is of great moment, as we read, to observe carefully the origin of arts and sciences, their different progress, their declension and fall; the rare and curious facts, which occur upon this subject; the illu-

strious

strious men, who have excelled in them; the Princes, who have made the study of them flourish, by giving protection and encouragement to such persons, as have distinguished themselves by their skill in any art; nor must we omit the discoveries, which have escaped the enquiries of the ancients, and been reserved for later ages. I shall here speak only to the two last articles, and content myself with pointing out some few examples, to which I shall add something upon measures and coins.

I. *Discoveries unknown to the ancients.*

In the descriptions of battles, with which authors abound, youth often find the cavalry mentioned, but seldom observe one thing, which is very surprizing in itself and scarce comprehensible; which is, that anciently the horsemen never made use of stirrups. They must either, when grown heavy with age, have been put upon their horses by their grooms, if they had any; or have taken the advantage of a higher ground, or of some stone, or of a trunk of a tree. Plutarch observes, that Gracchus placed stones at certain distances upon the great roads, to assist horsemen in mounting on horseback.

We are with reason surprized, that the ancients never made use of glass for their windows. Glass however was in use amongst them; without mentioning the looking glasses and large panes, which were the ornaments of their chambers, they made vases, cups and goblets of glass, which perfectly imitated crystal, and were none of the least ornaments of their buffets. What could be more easy than to glaze their windows with it, and yet this was what the ancients never did.

They likewise never used any linen for their shirts, which however is so neat and wholesome; and this was one of the reasons which made bathing so absolutely necessary amongst them.

f In vit. Gracch.

It

It is also proper to observe to pupils, that several of the most necessary inventions of life, such as water-mills, windmills, spectacles, the compass, printing, and a great many others of the like nature, were unknown to the ancients; and that we owe the greatest part of these rare and valuable inventions to the barbarous ages, in which the stupidity and ignorance still prevailed that the eruption of the northern people, enemies and destroyers of all the works of art, had spread over all Europe. How many discoveries have been made in astronomy by means of the telescope? how great a change has the compass made in navigation?

It is highly proper upon this occasion to observe, that the invention of arts ought not to be attributed to human industry alone, but to a peculiar providence, which usually concealing itself under such circumstances, as seem to be the effect of chance, conducts mankind by degrees to wonderful discoveries, in order to procure for them at appointed seasons the necessities and conveniencies of life. This is a truth confessed by the Heathen themselves, and ^t Tully running over what was most useful and valuable in nature, owns that all this would have remained in oblivion and buried in the bowels of the earth, if God had not disclosed the knowledge and use of it to man.

To confirm this reflection and render the truth more evident, it may be proper to explain it at large to youth the particular circumstance of the compass; and such an account cannot but be very pleasing to them. The compass then, they may be told, is a small box, in which there is inclosed a needle, that has been touched by a loadstone, and so supported that it may easily be turned every way. This needle, by virtue of the loadstone, which has touched it, always constantly directs itself so as to fix very near upon the meridian line, turning one of its extremities towards the north and the other towards the south, and by this means

^t Cic, lib, i. de Divin. n. 116.

disco
cient
fail
danc
faile
what
never
to un
move
the n
will b
shews
certai

Th
the fa
the in
shoul
in Eur
cients
specifi
tractin
discove
toward
so easy
see, th
of nat
designs
discove
he was
into th
to our
menfe
as God
trance
In sp
pils, it
ed diffe
of oars
Montf.

discovers to the pilot the course he steers. The ancients before the invention of the compass could not sail very far in the open sea, as they had no other guidance than the sun and stars; and when this assistance failed them they went on by chance, and knew not what course the vessel took; for which reason they never removed very far from the coasts, nor ventured to undertake any long voyages. The compass has removed these difficulties, as it constantly shews where the north and south lie, let the weather be what it will by day or night, and by a necessary consequence shews which is the east and which is the west, and certainly points out the course the vessel is to take.

The discovery of the new world, and consequently the salvation of abundance of souls, depended upon the invention of the compass; and 'tis surprizing it should lye so long concealed. For it has been known in Europe but about three hundred years. The ancients were perfectly acquainted with one of the two specific virtues of the loadstone, to wit, that of attracting and supporting iron; how came they not to discover the other of turning and fixing itself always towards the north and south, which now appears to us so easy and natural a discovery? Who does not clearly see, that God who makes men attentive to the effects of nature, or heedless of them according to his own designs and good pleasure, had reserved this important discovery in his eternal decrees for the season, in which he was pleased, that the Gospel should be transported into those countries, which till then were inaccessible to our ships, as they were separated from us by immense tracts of sea, which could not be crossed over, as God had not yet taken away the obstacle to our entrance into them?

In speaking of the vessels of the ancients to the pupils, it will be proper to inform them, that the learned differ much about the manner in which the ranks of oars were disposed. There are some, says F. de Montfaucon, who will have them placed longways, almost

almost in the same manner as the ranks of oars are now placed in galleys ; others, and amongst this number himself, are of opinion that the ranks of the biremes, the triremes, the quinqueremes, or pentiremes, and the rest which have been multiplied to the number of forty in certain vessels, were set one above another ; not perpendicularly, for this would be impossible ; but obliquely, and as it were by steps ; and this they prove by abundance of passages from ancient authors. But what is still more decisive in favour of this opinion, the ancient monuments, and especially the column of Trajan, represent these ranks one above another ; yet adds, F. Montfaucon, the best of our seamen all say, that this is impossible. All those, says he, with whom I have discoursed upon this subject, some of which are persons of the first distinction, and of abilities known to the whole world, agree in the same opinion.

Without any great skill in matters relating to the sea, it is easily conceived, that there must have been an almost insuperable difficulty in the working of vessels of extraordinary bigness, such as were those of a Ptolomy Philopator King of Egypt, and Hiero King of Syracuse. The vessels of Hiero built by the direction of Archimedes, had one of them twenty ranks of oars and the other forty. This last was two hundred and eighty cubits long, thirty eight broad, and about fifty cubits high. The oars of those who held the highest rank were thirty eight cubits long. It appears by the column of Trajan, that in the biremes and triremes, there was only one rower to every oar. It is not easy to decide for the rest. Thus ^w Plutarch observes, that the vessel of Ptolemy, which was more like an immoveable building than a ship, was only for pomp and show and not for use. Livy says almost the same thing of the ship of Philip King of Macedon, which had sixteen ranks of oars. ^x *Jussus*

u A description of them may be seen in Athenæus, lib. v.

w In vit. Demetr.

x Liv. lib. xxxiii. n. 30.

Phi
unan
sus
ships
quer
men
farth
scarc
than
Bo
these
have
ships
ranks
seen
tarch
was
All t
a wor
of thi
the ac
have
seen i
I ha
it is in
carefu
ing of
the dif
fairs, v
they g
I mu
are cer
on whi
while,
Pliny
found
this inv
y Plut.
Sic. lib. x
VOL

Philippus naves omnes tectas tradere, quin & regiam unam inhabilis prope magnitudinis, quam sexdecim versus remorum agebant. Vegetius reckons only among ships of a reasonable bigness and fit for war, the quinqueremes and those of less rank; and there is scarce mention made of any others amongst authors. It seems farther evident, that from the time of Augustus they scarce ever made use of vessels with more ranks of oars, than the triremes and the biremes.

But to pass a right judgment upon the working of these vessels of such extraordinary bigness, a man must have seen them with his own eyes. We read of the ships of Demetrius King of Syria, which had sixteen ranks of oars. Before his time there had never been seen any thing like them. Their agility, says Plutarch, their speed, and their easiness in tacking about, was still more admirable than their enormous bulk. All this was the invention of that Prince, who had a wonderful genius for arts, and found out abundance of things unknown to the architects. These ships were the admiration of mankind in his age, who could not have believed this had been possible, if they had not seen it.

I have made these remarks to shew how important it is in reading the Greek and Latin authors to be very careful to observe exactly whatever relates to the building of vessels, their forms and different kinds, and to the different alterations that have happened in sea affairs, with reference to navigation, in the descriptions they give us of fleets and engagements at sea.

I must however advertise youth in general, that there are certain wonderful facts related by the ancients, upon which they would do well to suspend their belief a while, till they have been more carefully examined. Pliny says, that in the time of Tiberius, they had found out the secret of making glass malleable, but this invention was entirely stifled for fear it should les-

y Plut. in vit. Demetr. Diod. z Lib. xxxvi, cap. 6.

Sic. lib. xx.

VOL. IV.

I

sen

sen the price and value of gold, silver and all sorts of metals. ^a Dion tells us of a workman, who designedly letting a glass vessel which he offered to Tiberius fall to the ground, presently gathered up the pieces, and after he had managed them a little, shewed the vessel whole and without a fracture. Other authors after Pliny have related the same fact; and yet the learned declare that this pretended malleability of glass is a mere chimera, absolutely rejected by sound physicks. And Pliny himself owns, that what was said of it was grounded more on report, than any certain foundation.

I question whether more credit is due to what the same ^b Pliny relates of a small fish, called by the Greeks *Echeneis*, and by the Latins *Remora*, which fastning itself in the rudder of the galley, that carried the Emperor Caligula, stopt its course in such manner, that four hundred rowers were unable to move it one way or other.

II. Honours paid to learned men.

There are many things proper to be observed in ancient history concerning the honours paid to such as have been inventors of arts, or have carried them to perfection, or in general to the learned of the first rank, who have been distinguished in a particular manner. But my design does not admit me to dwell long upon this subject, affecting as it is to us.

^c One cannot read the letter, which Philip King of Macedon wrote to Aristotle, without admiring to find that it was a greater satisfaction to this Prince to have the first philosopher of his age, and the most learned man the world ever produced, for a tutor to his son, than it was to have been his father.

The singular value that Alexander the great had for the poems of Homer, and the respect he paid to the

^a Lib lvii. p. 617.

^b Lib, xxxi. c. I.

^c Aul. Gel. lib. ix. cap. 3.

memory of Pindar, in storming the city of Thebes, have gained him no less reputation than all his conquests; and we almost as much admire him, when dismissing the pomp of royalty he chooses to discourse familiarly with the famous painters and sculptors of his time, as when marching at the head of his army he spreads an universal terror.

The glorious protection which Mecænas gave men of letters, employing all the interest he had with his Prince in doing them service, has rendered his name immortal, and acquired the age of Augustus the glory of being always regarded as the golden age of literature, and the rule of good taste in every kind of literature.

^d When we read that the King of Spain and Cardinal Ximenes, going one day to a publick act, which was held in the new university of Alcala, insisted upon the rector's walking between them, (a prerogative which that university has ever since preserved,) 'tis plain that this publick homage was not paid to the person of the rector, but that a great King and a great minister intended by this means to inspire a taste for learning and the sciences, which always return the glory with usury which they receive from Princes.

The singular privileges which our Kings formerly granted to the university of Paris, the mother and model of all others, arose from the same principle; and the reputation which it has acquired to itself and the Kingdom, throughout the whole Christian world, shews that the Kings who have been our founders have not been mistaken in their views, and that all their expectations have been more than fulfilled; and thus it will be in all ages. Arts and sciences will always flourish in the states, where they are honoured; and in return they will reflect infinite honour upon the States and Princes, who give them encouragement.

I cannot here avoid inserting a fact which lately happened, and almost within our own view; a fact which deserves to be celebrated in all languages, and inscribed

^d Hist. de Ximen. par M. Fléchier lib. vi.

in shining characters in all records of literature. 'Tis what passed in England at the interment of the famous Sir Isaac Newton, the Archimedes of our age, both for the sublimity of his reasonings in theory, and the force of his industrious and inventive genius in practice. I shall only transcribe what is said upon this subject in the beautiful panegyrick made upon him by M. de Fontenelle, with his usual eloquence, at the opening of the academy of sciences in the year 1727.

“ His body was exposed upon a bed of state in the
 “ Jerusalem chamber, a place from whence persons of
 “ the highest rank, and sometimes crowned heads,
 “ are carried to their graves. He was conveyed thence
 “ into Westminster Abbey, the pall being supported
 “ by my Lord Chancellor, the Dukes of Montrose
 “ and Roxburgh, and the Earls of Pembroke, Suffex,
 “ and Macclesfield. These six English peers, who
 “ discharged this solemn office, give room to judge,
 “ what a number of persons of distinction must have
 “ made up the funeral pomp. The bishop of Roches-
 “ ter read the service attended by the whole clergy of
 “ the church. The body was interred near the en-
 “ trance into the choir. We must go back to the an-
 “ cient Greeks, if we would find examples of a like
 “ veneration paid to learning. Sir Isaac Newton's
 “ family copies still nearer the example of Greece, by
 “ a monument, they are about to erect for him,
 “ which will cost a considerable sum. The Dean and
 “ Chapter of Westminster have allowed it to be rais-
 “ ed in a part of the Abbey, which has often been
 “ refused to noblemen of the first rank. No country
 “ or family, though he had chosen them, could have
 “ expressed more gratitude to his memory.”

I have no need to ask pardon for this digression. Whoever has the least regard for the publick good and the honour of learning, cannot but be very much affected with this kind of solemn homage, which the nobility of a powerful kingdom, as it were in the name of the whole nation, pays to learning and merit.

III. Of

III.

I a
 discus
 diffic
 and t
 whic
 do n
 lue.
 famo
 fester
 quing
 terc
 millie
 millie
 expre
 infor
 sum
 livres
 mon

T
 which
 olym
 which
 of Pi
 piad,
 cordi
 worl
 Ac
 little
 the y
 empir
 their

III. Of the Measures of time and place, and of ancient coins.

I add this article not with a design to enter into the discussion of these points, which are generally very difficult, but to give youth a slight knowledge of them, and to lay before them a table of the different sums, which often occur in authors, and which of themselves do not present to the mind any clear idea of their value. The elder ^c Pliny says, that Roscius, the most famous actor of his time, gained five hundred thousand sestertia a year. *Apud majores Roscius Histrion H. S. quingenta annua meritasse proditur.* We read in ^f Paterculus, that Paulus Æmilius brought two hundred millions of Sestertia into the publick treasury, *Bis millies centies H. S. ærario contulit.* Youth do not expressly know the value of these sums. The table informs them, at one cast of their eye, that the first sum amounts to six hundred and twenty five thousand livres, and the second to twenty five millions of our money.

I. Measures of time.

The Greeks reckoned by olympiads, every one of which contains the space of four whole years. These olympiads took their name from the olympick games, which were celebrated in Peloponnesus, near the city of Pisa, otherwise called Olympia. The first olympiad, in which Choræbus carried the prize, began, according to Usher, in the summer of the year of the world 3228.

According to the same Usher, Rome was built a little before the beginning of the eighth olympiad, in the year of the world 3256, at the time that the great empire of the Assyrians was destroyed by the death of their last King Sardanapalus, when Joatham reigned at

^c Lib. vii, cap. 39.

^f Lib. i, cap. 9.

Jerusalem, and consequently in the days of Isaiah. From the foundation of Rome to the battle of Actium are reckoned seven hundred and twenty three years.

II. Measures of roads.

A point is the smallest part that can be described.

Two points make a line.

Twelve lines make an inch.

Twelve inches make a foot.

Two foot and a half make the common pace.

Two common paces, or five foot, make the geometrical pace.

This being supposed, the most noted itinerary measure stands thus.

The *stadium* was peculiar to the Greeks, and consisted of a hundred and twenty five geometrical paces; and consequently twenty of them must go to a common French league, which consists of two thousand five hundred paces.

The *mile*, among the Romans, consists of eight *stadia*, or a thousand geometrical paces; somewhat less than half a league.

The *league* of the ancient Gauls is one thousand five hundred paces.

The *parasanga* of the Persians is ordinarily thirty *stadia*, that is a league and an half. Some of them from twenty to sixty *stadia*.

The most common *schaenos* of the Ægyptians is forty *stadia*, or two leagues. There are of them from twenty to a hundred and twenty *stadia*.

The common *league* of France is two thousand five hundred paces. The small one two thousand paces, and the great one three thousand. When we mention the leagues of France, we usually understand the common ones.

III. Of ancient coins.

The Attick *drachma*, which answers to the Roman penny must serve us for a rule, whereby to know the value of all the other coins. M. de Tillemont makes it amount to twelve *sols* of French money; F. Lamy to near eight, and M. Dacier to ten. I shall adhere to this last opinion, without enquiring into the reasons of these differences, only because this manner of reckoning is the most easy and consequently most proper for young people. I here fix the French mark at seven and twenty livres, which is looked upon by most nations of Europe as the intrinsic value of the silver.

Greek coins.

The Attick *obolus* is the sixth part of an Attick *drachma*.

The Attick *drachma* contains six *oboli*. It answers to the Roman penny, and is worth six French *sols*.

The Attick *mina* is equivalent to an hundred drachmas, and consequently fifty French livres.

The Attick *talent* is equivalent to sixty *minæ*, and is consequently three thousand French livres.

Miriad is a Greek word which signifies ten thousand. Thus a myriad of drachmas signifies ten thousand drachmas, and is of equal value with five thousand livres.

The Attick *stater* was a golden coin that weighed two drachmas, equal in value to twenty drachmas of silver, and consequently to ten livres of France. The *darick*, a golden coin of the Persians, and that which bore the name of Philip king of Macedon. *Philippei* were of the same value with the Attick *stater*.

The *sicle* or *shekel*, an Hebrew coin, was equivalent to four Attick drachmas or forty *sols*.

Jerusalem, and consequently in the days of Isaiah. From the foundation of Rome to the battle of Actium are reckoned seven hundred and twenty three years.

II. Measures of roads.

A point is the smallest part that can be described,

Two points make a line.

Twelve lines make an inch.

Twelve inches make a foot.

Two foot and a half make the common pace.

Two common paces, or five foot, make the geometrical pace.

This being supposed, the most noted itinerary measure stands thus.

The *stadium* was peculiar to the Greeks, and consisted of a hundred and twenty five geometrical paces; and consequently twenty of them must go to a common French league, which consists of two thousand five hundred paces.

The *mile*, among the Romans, consists of eight *stadia*, or a thousand geometrical paces; somewhat less than half a league.

The *league* of the ancient Gauls is one thousand five hundred paces.

The *parasanga* of the Persians is ordinarily thirty *stadia*, that is a league and an half. Some of them from twenty to sixty *stadia*.

The most common *schoenos* of the Ægyptians is forty *stadia*, or two leagues. There are of them from twenty to a hundred and twenty *stadia*.

The common *league* of France is two thousand five hundred paces. The small one two thousand paces, and the great one three thousand. When we mention the leagues of France, we usually understand the common ones.

III. Of ancient coins.

The Attick *drachma*, which answers to the Roman penny must serve us for a rule, whereby to know the value of all the other coins. M. de Tillemont makes it amount to twelve *sols* of French money; F. Lamy to near eight, and M. Dacier to ten. I shall adhere to this last opinion, without enquiring into the reasons of these differences, only because this manner of reckoning is the most easy and consequently most proper for young people. I here fix the French mark at seven and twenty livres, which is looked upon by most nations of Europe as the intrinsic value of the silver.

Greek coins.

The Attick *obolus* is the sixth part of an Attick *drachma*.

The Attick *drachma* contains six *oboli*. It answers to the Roman penny, and is worth six French *sols*.

The Attick *mina* is equivalent to an hundred drachmas, and consequently fifty French livres.

The Attick *talent* is equivalent to sixty *minæ*, and is consequently three thousand French livres.

Miriad is a Greek word which signifies ten thousand. Thus a myriad of drachmas signifies ten thousand drachmas, and is of equal value with five thousand livres.

The Attick *stater* was a golden coin that weighed two drachmas, equal in value to twenty drachmas of silver, and consequently to ten livres of France. The *darick*, a golden coin of the Persians, and that which bore the name of Philip king of Macedon. *Philippei* were of the same value with the Attick *stater*.

The *sicle* or *shekel*, an Hebrew coin, was equivalent to four Attick drachmas or forty *sols*.

Roman coins.

The Roman *as*, called otherwise *libra* or *pondo*, was originally the tenth part of the Roman penny, or *denarius*.

The small *sesterce*, *sestertius* or *nummus*, was the fourth part of the Roman penny, and equivalent to two French *sols* and an half. It was at first marked thus L·L·S, as being equal in value to two *asses*, or two pound and a half; *sestertius* is for *semistertius*, or three lacking a half. At length the scribes put an H instead of the L·L, and marked the sesterce thus, HS.

The *denarius* or penny, was a small piece of silver, equal in value to ten *as's*, four *sesterces*, and consequently ten French *sols*.

The great *sesterce*, or *sestertium* in the neuter, signifies a sum of equal value with a thousand small sesterces, two hundred and fifty Roman pence, and a hundred and twenty five French livres.

This last sum was differently reckoned. *Decem sestertia*, ten great sesterces, or ten thousand small ones. By the adverb *decies sestertiūm*, was here understood *centies*; it was therefore a thousand great sesterces, or a million small ones; or *decies centena*, understanding *sestertia*: or *decies* alone in short, and understanding *centies sestertiūm*, or *centena sestertia*.

The name of the golden coin was *aureus* or *solidus*, and is generally judged by authors to amount in value to twenty five silver pence.

The proportion of gold to silver has been different at all times. We may keep to that of ten to one for our reckoning in antiquity. Thus a talent of silver amounted to three thousand livres, a talent of gold to thirty thousand. The proportion of gold to silver, at present, is near fifteen to one.

Roman Numbers.

	I.	I.
	V.	5.
	X.	10.
	L.	50.
	C.	100.
	D.	500.
CO	CIC.	1000.
	IC.	5000.
	CCIC.	10000.
	ICIC.	50000.
	CCICIC.	100000.

A Table of the Value of the Greek Money.

M Y R I A D S.

1	Myriad of Attick drachmas	5000 <i>liv.</i>
2	myriads	10.000 <i>liv.</i>
3	myriads	15.000 <i>liv.</i>
4	myriads	20.000 <i>liv.</i>
5	myriads	25.000 <i>liv.</i>
10	myriads	50.000 <i>liv.</i>
20	myriads	100.000 <i>liv.</i>
50	myriads	250.000 <i>liv.</i>
100	myriads	500.000 <i>liv.</i>
200	myriads	1.000.000 <i>liv.</i>
1000	myriads	5.000.000 <i>liv.</i>

T A L E N T S.

1	Talent	3000. <i>liv.</i>
2	talents	6000 <i>liv.</i>
5	talents	15.000 <i>liv.</i>
10	talents	30 000 <i>liv.</i>
50	talents	150.000 <i>liv.</i>
100	talents	300.000. <i>liv.</i>
I 5		500 talents

500 talents	1.500.000 liv.
1000 talents	3.000.000. liv.
5000 talents	15.000.000. liv.
10.000 talents	30.000.000 liv.
20.000 talents	60.000.000 liv.
50.000 talents	150.000.000 liv.
100.000 talents	300.000.000 liv.

A Table of the value of the Roman money.

A S.

Millia singula æris, or 1000 asses	50 liv.
Duo millia æris	100 liv.
Quatuor millia æris	200 liv.
5 millia æris	250 liv.
10 millia æris	500 liv.
20 millia æris	1000 liv.
50 millia æris	2500 liv.
100 millia æris	5000 liv.
500 millia æris	25.000 liv.
1.000 millia æris	50.000. liv.
millies	
10.000. millia æris	500.000 liv.
decies millies	
20.000 millia æris	1.000.000. liv.
vigesies millies	
100.000 millia æris	5.000.000 liv.
centies millies.	

SESTERTIUS.

1 Sestertius, five nummus	2 sols and half.
8 Sestertii, five nummi	1 liv.
24 sestertii	3 liv.
80 sestertii	10 liv.
100 sestertii	12. liv. 10 sols.
200 sestertii	25 liv.
400 sestertii	50 liv.
	800 sestertii

800 sestertii	100 liv.
1.000 sestertii	125 liv.
4.000 sestertii	500 liv.
8.000 sestertii	1000 liv.
80.000 sestertii	10.000 liv.
100.000 vel centena millia HS.	
seu nummum	12.500 liv.
200.000, vel bis centena millia HS.	25.000 liv.
500.000, vel quingenta millia HS.	62.500 liv.
1.000.000, vel decies centena HS.	125.000 liv.
Quindicies centena millia HS.	187.500 liv.
Vicies centena millia HS.	250.000 liv.
Quinquagies centena millia HS.	625.000 liv.
Centies centena millia HS. or	
10.000.000 of sesterces 1 mil.	250.000 liv.
Quingenties centena millia HS. or	
50.000.000 of sesterces 6 millia	250.000 liv.
Millies centena millia HS. or	
100.000.000 of sesterces 12 mill.	500.000 liv.
Bis millies centena millia HS. or	
200.000.000 of sesterces	25 millions.
Decies millies centena millia HS. or	
1.000.000.000 of sesterces	125 millions.
Vicies millies centena millia HS. or	
2.000.000.000 of sesterces	250 millions.
Quadrages millies centena millia	
HS. or 4.000.000.000 of	
sesterces	500 millions.
Quadrages quater millies centena	
millia HS. or 4.400 millions	
of sesterces.	550 millions.
Quadrages octies millies centena	
millia HS. or 4.800.000.000	
of sesterces.	600 millions.
Quinquagies sexies millies centena	
millia HS. or 5.600.000.000	
of sesterces	700 millions.
Sexagies quater millies centena	
millia HS or 6.400.000.000	
of sesterces	800 millions.
	Septuagies.

Septuagies bis millies centena millia HS. or 7.200.000.000 of sesterces

900 millions.

Octuagies millies centena millia HS. or 8.000.000.000 of sesterces

1000 millions.

Centies millies centena millia HS. or 10.000.000.000 of sesterces

1250 millions.

SESTERTIUM.

1 Sestertium	250 drachmæ.	125 liv.
2 sestertia	500 dr.	250 liv.
4 sestertia	1000 dr.	500 liv.
10 sestertia	2500 dr.	1250 liv.
20 sestertia	5000 dr.	2500 liv.
50 sestertia	12.500 dr.	6250 liv.
100 sestertia	25.000 dr.	12.500 liv.
1000 sestertia, or <i>decies sestertium</i> is the same thing as <i>decies centena millia HS.</i> mentioned above, and so of the following numbers,		

BOOK the FIFTH.

Of Philosophy.

SHOULD I undertake to treat philosophy in all its extent, I might apply myself to the boys, for whom I write, in the words which Tully puts into the mouth of Anthony, who was once prevailed upon to talk of rhetoric against his inclination. "Hear," said he, hear a man that is going to instruct you in "what he has never learnt himself." There would be only this difference in the case, that Anthony's ignorance was feigned and counterfeit, whereas mine is actual and true, having never applied myself to the study of philosophy, but very superficially, for which I have often had cause to repent. Though perhaps if I had studied it under as skilful masters as have since been in the university, and are now there in great number, I might have had as much taste for it as for the study of polite learning, to which alone I have given up all my time. But however, I am enough acquainted with the usefulness and great advantages deducible from it, to exhort youth not to fail in giving all the application they possibly can to so important a science. 'Tis to this particular I shall confine myself in this small dissertation, which shall not be a treatise of philosophy, but a bare exhortation to the boys to study it with care.

Though we had nothing more than eloquence in view, this study would be absolutely necessary, as Tully declares in more than one place, and he makes no scruple to own, that what progress he had made in the art of speaking was less owing to the precepts

g Audite verò, audite, inquit, quid de omni genere dicendi hominem, &c. Docebo vos, dissentiam. Lib. ii. de Orat. n. cipuli, id quod ipse non didici, 28, 29.

of the rhetoricians than the lessons of the philosophers.
^h *Fateor me oratorem, si modo sim, non ex rhetorum officinis sed ex academæ spatiis extitisse.* But the usefulness of philosophy is far from being confined to eloquence; it extends to all the conditions and every season of life.

In short, this study when properly directed and carefully pursued, may contribute very much to regulate the manners, to perfect reason and judgment, to adorn the mind with an infinity of learned notions equally useful and curious, and what I think far more valuable, to inspire the boys with a great reverence for religion, and fortify them by solid principles against the false and dangerous arguments of infidelity, which are every day gaining ground upon us.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

Philosophy may be very serviceable in regulating the manners.

ONE of the most effectual methods for regulating the conduct of man is to make him acquainted with what he is, upon what conditions he received his being, what obligations and duties he lies under, whither he ought to tend, and for what end he was created. Now this is the subject of philosophy; I say, even of the Pagan philosophy; and in my opinion its instructions upon all these points, though imperfect and often intermixed with obscurity, ought to have a great weight upon every reasonable mind.

Man came out of the hand of God not only the most excellent of his works but the most perfect image of himself. He bears some resemblance in every thing about him to the nobleness of his extraction, and

^h Orat. n. 12.

bears the lines and characters of his original in a manner imprinted in his nature.

With regard to the soul, an insatiable desire of learning, a penetration and sagacity that extends to every thing, a desire of happiness which nothing limited can satisfy, the lively sense of a liberty to which every thing is indifferent, except ⁱ one sole object, the thorough conviction of its being designed for immortality; all these and a great many other circumstances shew clearly how great man is, and ^k how he cannot, ('tis Tully who speaks thus) if we may be allowed the expression, be compared to any thing but God himself.

If we consider only the ^l structure of his body, 'tis plain that nothing but the hand of God could possibly form so perfect a work, dispose it with so much order, so much beauty, such connexion and proportion between all the parts which compose it, ^m so as to make it a proper abode for the master that inhabits it. And we see that Seneca had reason to say, man was not a precipitate and hasty performance, but the masterpiece of the divine wisdom, ⁿ *scias non esse hominem tumultuarium & incogitatum opus.*

Now with what design was he framed? We will answer in a word ^o; God made the whole world for man, and man for himself; that by him nature otherwise dumb and stupid might become in a manner eloquent and grateful towards its Creator; and that man placed in the midst of the creatures, who were all designed for his use and service, might lend them his

*First duty of man
with regard to the
Divinity.*

ⁱ Good, in the general acceptance of the word, and the supreme good evidently known.

^k *Animus humanus, decerptus ex mente divina, cum alio nullo, nisi cum ipso Deo, si hoc fas est dictu, comparari potest. Tule. Quæst. lib. v. n. 38.*

^l We may read in Tully. lib. ii. de nat. Deor. n. 133, 153. and in M. de Fénelon's lettres sur la religion, pag. 163, the admirable de-

scription they give of the several parts of the body, and their respective functions.

^m *Figuram corporis habilem & aptam ingenio humano dedit. Lib. i. de Leg. n. 26.*

ⁿ Lib. vi. de benef. cap. 23.

^o *Omnia quæ sunt in hoc mundo, quibus utuntur homines, hominum causa facta sunt & parata. Lib. ii. de nat. deor. n. 154.*

voice,

voice, his understanding and admiration, and be in a manner the priest of all nature. How many benefits in short has it pleased God to confer upon man? Not content with providing for his necessities, his care and tenderneſs have ſupplied him even with what miniſters to pleaſure and delight. ^p *Neque enim neceſſitatibus tantummodo noſtris proviſum eſt, uſque in delicias amamur.* ^q What variety of trees, herbs and excellent fruits for the different ſeaſons of the year? What an immense number of animals are induſtriouſly ſupplied by the air, earth and ſea? There is no part of nature which does not pay a tribute to man, that man in his turn may pay the author of all theſe benefits the due homage of gratitude and praiſe, which is the principal part of the worſhip we owe to the Deity, and the moſt eſſential duty of the creature. Nor muſt ingratitude be allowed to ſay, that it is nature ſupplies us with all theſe bleſſings, unleſs by this word, which has uſually no diſtinct idea affixed to it, we are to underſtand only the Divinity himſelf, which moves every thing, produces every thing, ſhews himſelf to us in every thing, and makes himſelf known to us every moment by his benefits and bounty. ^r *Quocunque te flexeris, ibi illum videbis occurrentem tibi. Nihil ab illo vacat. Ergo nihil agis, ingratiffime mortalium, qui te negas Deo debere, ſed naturæ. . . . Quid enim aliud eſt natura, quam Deus?*

If man, ſays ^s Epictetus, had any ſenſe of honour and gratitude, all that he ſees in nature, all that he experiences in himſelf, would be to him a continual ſubject of gratitude, praiſe and thankſgiving. The herb of the field which ſupplies the animals with milk for his nourishment, the wool of thoſe animals which

p Senec. de benef. lib. iv. c. 5.

q Tot arbuſta non uno modo frugifera, tot herbæ ſalutares, tot varietates ciborum per totum annum digeſtæ, ut inerti quoque fortuita terræ alimenta præberent. Jam animalia omnis generis, alia in ſiccis ſolidoque, alia in humido naſcentia, alia per ſublime dimiſſa;

ut omnis rerum naturæ pars tributum nobis aliquod conferret. Senec. de benef. lib. iv. cap. 5.

r Senec. de benef. lib. iv. cap. 7, 8.

s Arrian. Epiſt. lib. i. c. 16. Epictetus was a Stoick philoſopher, who lived in the firſt century. He was the ſlave of Epaphroditus, a captain of Nero's guards.

furnishes him with clothes, ought to fill him with admiration. When he sees the clods of earth crushed and broken to pieces by the plough-share, and a long ridge thrown up for the reception of the seed, he ought to cry out, How great is God, how good, in having procured for us all the instruments proper for tillage? When he sits down to table to eat, every thing should recal God to his mind, and renew his gratitude. 'Tis he, he should say, who has given me hands to take up my food, teeth to break and grind it, a stomach to digest it; and what is the subject of praises which more nearly concern me, it is he who to all the benefits he confers upon me, adds besides the inestimable advantage of knowing the author of them, and making such use of them, as is conformable to his will. As then, continues the same Epictetus, all mankind are plunged into a deep lethargy concerning Providence, is it not just that some one, in the name of all the rest, should publicly sing hymns and songs to its honour? What else can such a weak and lame old man, as I am, do than celebrate the divine praises? "Were I a swan or a nightingale, I would sing, because that would be the end for which I was created. But as reason has fallen to my lot, I ought to employ myself in praising God. 'Tis my proper function and business, which I will regularly discharge, and never cease to discharge to my latest breath; and I would advise you to do so likewise. One would imagine it was a Christian that was here speaking, and not a Stoick philosopher.

Besides this principal duty, which is the foundation of religion, man has another, which is by his virtues

Second duty of man with regard to himself.

t One day, as his master, who was very passionate, gave him a violent blow upon the leg, he coldly bid him take care, or he would break it. And the master repeating his blows in such a manner as to break it indeed, Epictetus without any emotion continued, Did not I tell you, that if you went on

thus, you would break my leg? He reduced all philosophy to the two points of bearing and forbearing. *Ανεχνη, και απεχνη.*

u Εἰ γοῦν ἀνδρῶν ἡμεν, ἐποίησεν τὰ τῆς ἀνδρείας. Εἰ κύνος, τὰ τοῦ κύνος. Νῦν δὲ λογικὸς εἰμὶ· ὁμνεῖν με δεῖ τὸν Θεόν.

to represent and imitate the Deity, of whom he is the living and animated image. ^w How little soever he examines himself, he may discern the precious lines of it, and the impression stamp'd upon his soul, which is in a manner the temple of God, and this should lead him to make the dignity of his sentiments correspond with the dignity of his origin. From thence arise those natural ideas and primitive notions which we bear about us of good and evil, just and unjust, virtue and vice; ^x notions common to all mankind, who without any agreement amongst themselves alike annex the idea of turpitude to vice, and glory to virtue; for there is no nation which does not love and esteem those, who are of a mild, humane, obliging character; and which on the other hand does not despise and hate such persons as are of a cruel, ungrateful, haughty disposition, who take a pleasure in doing ill. Thence also arises the inward ^y testimony and secret voice of conscience, which makes the just enjoy peace in the midst of the greatest afflictions, and creates the wicked such cruel torments in the very bosom of the greatest joy and most sensible pleasures, and which prescribes to both the rules they ought to follow and the duties they ought to fulfil.

^z These rules and laws are not arbitrary and dependent upon the fancies of men; they are imprinted in

^w Qui se ipse norit, aliquid sentiet se habere divinum, ingeniumque in se suum sicut simulacrum aliquod dedicatum putabit: tantoque munere deorum semper dignum aliquid & faciet & sentiet. Lib. i. de leg. n. 59.

^x Communis intelligentia nobis notas res efficit, easque in animis nostris inchoavit, ut honesta in virtute ponantur, in vitiis turpia. . . . Quæ natio non comitem, non benignitatem, non gratum animum & beneficii memorem diligit? Quæ superbos, quæ maleficos, quæ crudeles, quæ ingratos non af-

pernatur & odit? Lib. i. de leg. n. 44, & 32.

^y Magna vis est conscientie in utramque partem: ut neque timeant qui nihil commiserunt, & poenam semper ante oculos versari putent qui peccaverunt, Cic. pro Mil. n. 63.

^z Hanc video sapientissimorum hominum fuisse sententiam: Legem neque hominum ingeniis excogitatam, neque scitum aliquod esse populorum, sed æternum quiddam, quod universum mundum regeret imperandi prohibendique sapientia. . . . Quæ vis non modo

senior

the substance of the soul, by the Creator; they existed before all ages, and are of greater antiquity than the world, as they are an emanation of the Divine Wisdom, which cannot think otherwise of virtue and vice. They are the model and original of human laws, which in a manner cease to be, as soon as they swerve from this primitive type of justice and truth, which all law-givers should propose to follow in all their institutions.

These first notions of good and evil may be weakened and obscured by a bad education, by the torrent of example, by the violence of passions, and above all by the dangerous attractions of pleasure, which spoils and corrupts our minds by false delights, which it lays before us, that we do not find in the practice of virtue. But there is constantly left within us an inward sense of these primitive truths, and it is the business of philosophy to rekindle these precious sparks by its salutary instructions, to remove all errors from us by giving us a nearer view of the first principles, to cure us of popular opinions and prejudices, to make us understand ^a that we are born for justice and virtue, to convince us by sensible and evident proofs ^b that there is a Providence which governs and presides over all, and which takes care not only of the world in general, but of every man in particular; that nothing escapes

senior est quàm ætas populorum & civitatum, sed æqualis illius cælum &que terras ruentis & regentis Dei. Neque enim esse mens divina sine ratione potest: nec ratio divina non hanc vim in rectis pravisque sanc- tiendis habere. . . . Quamobrem lex vera atque princeps, apta ad jubendum & vitandum, ratio est recta summi Jovis. . . . Ergo est lex justorum injustorumque distinc- tio, ad illam antiquissimam & re- rum omnium principem expressa naturam, ad quam leges hominum diriguntur, quæ supplicio improbos afficiunt, & defendunt, & tuentur bonos. Lib. ii. de leg. n. 8. 13.

^a Nos ad justitiam esse natos,

neque opinione, sed natura consti- tutum esse jus. Lib. i. de leg. n. 28.

^b Dominos esse omnium rerum ac moderatores deos, eaque quæ gerantur, eorum geri judicio ac numine. (Neque universo generi hominum solum, sed etiam singu- lis à Diis immortalibus consuli & provideri. Lib. ii. de nat. Deor. n. 164.) Eosdem qualis quisque sit, quid agat, quid in se admittat, qua mente, qua pietate religiones colat, intueri; piorumque & impiorum habere rationem. His enim rebus imbutæ mentes, haud sanè abhor- rebunt ab utili & à vera sententia. Lib. ii. de leg. n. 15.

its all seeing eyes, and that God knows thoroughly all our actions, and sees our most secret thoughts and intentions; for such a conviction is very proper to inspire us with respect for the Deity and love for virtue.

*Third duty of man
in regard to society.*

Though a man were alone upon earth he would be always bound to observe the two sorts of duties, which I have now spoken of, that is, he ought always to honour the Divinity and pay a regard to himself by living in a wise and regular manner; ^c but he is under other obligations with relation to the common society whereof he is a member. God is the common father of a great family, and all men are his children, united by the bond of humanity, formed for one another, and consequently obliged to promote the publick good and mutually assist each other by all good offices. Thus man should not limit his views or his zeal to the particular place, where he was born, but look upon himself as a citizen of the whole world, which in this sense is but a single city.

^e 'Tis true, this general society, which at first takes in the whole race of mankind, afterwards divides itself by degrees into other less extensive societies, betwixt men of the same city and the same family, and from thence arise the different duties of civil society with regard to friends, allies, relations, parents and country; but they have all their origin in the first principle we have laid down, which is, that man according to the views and appointment of God is born for man.

^c Quoniam (ut præclare scriptum est à Platone) non nobis solum nati sumus, ortusque nostri partem patria vindicat, partem parentes, partem amici; hominesque hominum causa generati sunt, ut ipsi inter se alius alii prodesse possint: in hoc naturam debemus ducem sequi; & communes utilitates in medium asferre mutatione officiorum, Lib. i. de Off. n. 22.

^d Univerſus hic mundus, una

civitas communis hominum existimanda. De Leg. lib. i. n. 23.

Socrates quidem, cum rogaretur Cujatem se esse diceret, Mundanum inquit: totius enim mundi se incolam & civem arbitrabatur. Lib. v. Tusc. Quæst. n. 108.

^e Gradus plures sunt societatis hominum. . . . Ab illa enim immensa societate generis humani, in exiguum angustumque concluditur. Lib. i. de Off. n. 53.

This

This is a small abridgment of the maxims of morality, which Paganism supplies us with, and these principles it must be owned are great, solid, and evident; but they do not extend so far as they ought, and as perfect as they appear, they leave us on the way without shewing us either the motive that should sanctify our actions, or the end we should propose to ourselves in them. 'Tis the holy Scripture alone, which gives us a clear and certain notion of man, by discovering to us the advantages of his first origin; his fall into sin, and the fatal consequences of that fall; his restoration by a Redeemer; his different duties with regard to God, his neighbour, and himself; the end he ought to have in view, and the means of conducting him to it; and a Christian philosopher will not fail to instruct his scholars in all these truths. But in my opinion it is no small advantage to point out to them in Paganism itself, the rules of such refined morality and the principles of so sublime a conduct, which invincibly prove that virtue is not an empty name, as the libertines would persuade themselves, nor the duties of religion and of civil life mere human establishments, politically invented to lay a restraint upon the multitude; but that all these duties, all these obligations, and all these laws, are included in the very nature of man, and a necessary consequence of God's designs towards him.

'Tis for this reason I look upon it as a very useful custom to make the youth, who study philosophy, read from time to time select passages out of the philosophical books of Tully, and especially from those where he treats of offices and laws.

Besides this advantage, they will find there wherewithal to improve the taste of polite learning, which they have acquired in the preceding classes; and it may also be of great use to masters themselves, by teaching them to write Latin in a pure, neat and elegant manner, proper for the treating philosophical subjects, which is a matter of no small consequence to their profession.

A R-

ARTICLE the SECOND.

Philosophy may very much contribute to the perfection of reason.

OF all the natural gifts which man has received from God, reason is the most excellent; that which distinguishes him most from other animals, and which displays in him the brightest lines of his resemblance to God. By reason he has the idea of what is beautiful, great, just and true, he decides and judges concerning the properties of every thing, he compares several objects together, deduces consequences from principles, makes use of one truth to come at another; and lastly, by reason he gives order and connexion to his notions and reasonings, which diffuse a light and grace through them, which render them far more intelligible, and discover more fully their whole force and truth. The importance of a science which aids and assists the mind in all these operations, is easily conceived.

We find excellent reflections upon this subject, in the first discourse prefixed to the art of thinking. I shall make use of them here, as knowing nothing more proper to give youth a just esteem and taste for philosophy, or more capable of explaining to them all the advantages, and even necessities of it.

There is nothing, says the author of this logick, more valuable than good sense, and rectitude of mind in discerning truth and falsehood. All the other qualities of the mind are limited in their use, but exactness of reason is universally useful, in all parts and in all the employments of life. It is not only difficult in the sciences to distinguish truth from error, but also in most

f In homine optimum quid est? bonum est: cætera illi cum animæ ratio. Hac antecedit animalia. malibus satisque communia. Seneca. Epist. 76,

of the subjects that men speak of, and the affairs of which they treat. There are almost universally different paths, some true, and others false, and it is the business of reason to make the choice. Those who choose well have a right understanding, and those who choose amiss have a wrong one; and this is the first and most important difference that we can make betwixt the qualities of the human mind.

Thus our principal application should be to form the judgment, and render it as exact as may be; and it is to this end the greatest part of our study should be directed. We make use of reason as an instrument to acquire the sciences, and on the other hand, we should make use of the sciences as an instrument to bring our reason to perfection; a right mind being far more considerable than all the branches of speculative knowledge we are capable of obtaining, by means of the most true and solid sciences——Men are not born to spend their time in measuring of lines, in examining the proportion of angles, or considering the different motions of matter. Their understanding is too great, their life too short, their time too precious to be employed upon such trivial objects. But they are obliged to be just, equitable and judicious in all their discourse, in all their actions, and in all the affairs they undertake, and for this they should principally exercise and form themselves.

This care and study is so much the more necessary as it is surprising how seldom we meet with this exactness of judgment. We scarce meet with any but wrong minds, that have very little discernment of truth, take all things by a false bias, that pay themselves with very bad reasons, and would put them off upon others as current, suffer themselves to be carried away by the slightest appearances, and are always in excess; who boldly decide concerning matters they are ignorant of and do not understand, and who adhere to their own opinions with such inflexible obstinacy that they will hearken to no body that can undeceive them.

This

This ill turn of the mind is not only the cause of errors in the sciences, but also of most part of the faults which are committed in civil life; unjust quarrels, suits of law ill grounded, rash advice, and ill concerted enterprizes. There are few of these which have not their source in some error, and some fault of judgment. So that there is no defect which we are more nearly concerned to correct.

A great part of the false judgments of mankind are caused by precipitation of mind, and through want of attention, so that a rash judgment is passed upon what we know but confusedly and obscurely. The small regard which men have for truth, makes them often careless about distinguishing what is true from what is false. They suffer all sorts of discourse and maxims to enter into their minds, choose rather to take them for true than to examine them. If they do not understand them, they are willing to believe that others do; and thus they burthen their memory with abundance of false and obscure things not understood, and reason upon those principles, almost without considering what they say or what they think. Vanity and presumption very much contribute to this fault. They think it a shame to doubt and be ignorant, and choose rather to talk and decide at random, than to own that they are not sufficiently informed in the points in debate, to pass a judgment upon them. We all abound in ignorance and error, and yet there is no difficulty so great as to prevail upon any one to own himself mistaken, though the acknowledgment be so just and so agreeable to our natural condition.

There are others on the contrary, who having understanding enough to know that many things are obscure and uncertain, and being willing to shew, by another kind of vanity, that they are not carried away by popular credulity, place their glory in maintaining that there is nothing certain. Thus they get rid of the trouble of examining them, and upon this bad principle call in question the most received truths and religion

ligion itself. This is the source of Pyrrhonism, which is another extravagance of human understanding, and though it seems opposite to the rashness of those who give credit to every thing, and decide upon every thing, yet it proceeds notwithstanding from the same source, which is the want of attention. For as the one will not give themselves the trouble to find out error, so the others will not take the pains to discover truth, with the care that is necessary to discern the evidence of it. The least glimmering of light is sufficient for the one to make them believe extravagant falsehoods, and suffices to the other to make them doubt of the most certain facts. But both in the one and the other these very different effects arise from the same want of application.

Right reason places all things in the rank that properly belongs to them; it doubts concerning such as are doubtful, rejects such as are false, and sincerely acknowledges such as are evident.

To these reflections extracted from the art of thinking, I shall add one from M. L'Abbe Fleury.

All the world, says he in his treatise of study, see the usefulness of reasoning justly; I mean not only in the sciences, but in business and the whole conduct of life. But many perhaps do not see the necessity of recurring to the first principles, because in reality there are few who do it. The most part of mankind reason only in a narrow compass, from one principle which the authority of others, or their own passion has imprinted in their minds, to the necessary means for acquiring what they desire. I must first grow rich, then I will engage in such an employment, I will take such a step, I will suffer this and that; and so of the rest. But what shall I do with my substance when I have got it, or is it an advantage to me to be rich? these are points which are not enquired into.

The man of real learning, the true philosopher goes much farther, and begins a great deal higher. He neither stops at the authority of others, nor his own

prejudices, he still proceeds, till he has found out a principle of natural light, and so clear a truth, that he can no longer call it in question. But then, when he has once discovered it, he boldly deduces all the consequences that flow from it, and never swerves from them; and thence it follows that he is stedfast in his doctrine and conduct, inflexible in his resolutions, patient in the execution, even in his temper, and constant in virtue.

It is plain enough of what importance it is to fortify, with early impressions, the minds of youth, by such principles against the false judgments and false reasonings which occur so commonly in the discourse and conduct of mankind; and this is the effect of philosophy, whose principal end, as I have already observed, is to give perfection to reason.

I am very sensible that reason is a natural gift, that it proceeds not from art, and cannot be the pure effect of labour; but art and labour may improve it, direct it, and carry it to perfection. We now find in performances of wit, in discourses from the pulpit and at the bar, in treatises relating to science, an order, exactness, proportion and solidity, which were not formerly so common. Several are of opinion, and upon good grounds, that we owe this manner of thinking and writing to the extraordinary progress which has been made for an age past in the study of philosophy.

When I say that philosophy is very useful towards bringing reason to perfection, I would not be understood to speak only of the rules, which logick in particular lays down upon this subject. They are very useful in themselves, not only as they serve to discover the defect of certain perplexed arguments, but as they assist us in tracing the source of most part of the errors which creep into our thoughts and reasonings. The same may be said of the rules of rhetorick. It cannot be denied but that they are a very great help to eloquence; but it is principally in the application

made

made of them to the discourses of the ancients and moderns, whose beauties and faults are explained to youth, by the conformity or opposition they bear to these precepts.

The same thing may be said of the rules of logick. Their principal usefulness consists in the application of them to the several questions we examine, and the reasonings we make upon any subject whatsoever.

As the minds of youth, when they enter upon philosophy, are generally not much formed, they are first put upon such matters as are easy, intelligible, and within the reach of their capacity. The manner of reasoning by syllogisms, which appears to some persons long and tedious, is absolutely necessary, especially in the beginning, and the pupils will remain dumb, and in a manner stupid, if they were put upon talking otherwise.

They should be made to observe, in what manner sometimes the omission of a word, the change of a term, a double meaning, an equivocal expression, render an argument faulty.

They are taught to keep close to their principles, to reduce every thing to them, never to depart from them, and to give a solution of the difficulties that are urged against them.

By this daily exercise and continual application of rules, their mind is enlarged and improved by degrees, daily unfolds itself more and more, is accustomed to discover where the falshood lies, acquires a facility of expression, and becomes capable of discussing the most difficult and abstruse questions. I have been astonished when I assisted at the exercises of philosophy, to see the sensible change made in the scholars every quarter, their reason was so much improved, and by the end of the course they could not be known for the same persons. This is the common effect in the classes of philosophy, when the scholars want neither capacity nor application; and the great advantages they derive from this study are not be expressed.

The sudden change from the study of polite learning to philosophy, that is from an agreeable country, where all is gay and smiling, and covered over with flowers, to a region usually dry, thorny, and craggy, gives sometimes a shock to youth; and it is for this reason, as I have already insinuated, that I could wish that the latinity of their sheets was as pure and elegant as that of the philosophical works of Tully. But this very inconvenience shews how necessary the study of philosophy is. Nothing is more contrary to the solidity of the mind, as well as the health of the body, than perpetual pleasures. By this means both the one and the other contract a weakness and effeminacy, which makes them incapable of taking pains. To have nothing but what is pleasing and agreeable in view, is like living constantly upon milk, and being always in the state of infancy.

Truth may present itself to us under two faces. Sometimes it shews itself under all the pomp and splendor of eloquence, and has a just claim to all its ornaments, which are proper attendants upon it. It likewise often appears in a plain dress, under a very mean outside, without any guard or attendance; and this last appearance suits best with its natural character. In the first case a good judgment consists in separating truth from the ornaments which surround it, and may be common to it and falsehood; and in the second, in not being offended at the meanness of its outside show, which is even sometimes disagreeable, but to view it thoroughly in itself, and to place all the value upon it which it deserves.

Masters do youth this double service. Those who teach them polite learning and eloquence inure them by times, and from their admission into the first class, to weigh reasons more than words, principally to discern truth, to strip the arguments of all the ornaments which they borrow from eloquence, in order to be more sensible of their force or weakness, and not to suffer themselves to be carried away by a delusive glow

of words and figures, which are often void of sense and matter. The philosophers on their side, chiefly endeavour to make their disciples attentive to truth considered in itself, to lay down certain rules to guide them in discerning it, to accustom them to a great justness and exactness in all their reasonings, and to inspire them, if I may be allowed the expression, with a certain taste and notion of truth, which may direct them to discover it wherever it is to be found, and at the same time enable them to reject what has no more than an outward appearance of it.

Another inconvenience, also very prejudicial to mankind, not only in the study of the sciences, but also in the ordinary conduct and different employments of life, is the not being able to give a just attention to such matters as are perplexed and difficult, or to pursue the chain of an argument which is somewhat long and intricate; or lastly, to apply to such subjects as are subtle, abstracted and independent of their senses. This inconvenience is remedied by philosophy in a wonderful manner, especially by the study of metaphysics and mathematicks, where the objects being purely spiritual raise the soul above the consideration of matter, and free it from the slavery wherein the senses strive to retain it.

The author of the art of thinking has not failed to observe the two inconveniencies I am speaking of, to shew how advantageous it is to be habituated early to the understanding of difficult truths. The passage is too beautiful not to be inserted here at full length.

There are, says he, some stomachs which can only digest light and delicate food, and there are some minds which can only apply themselves to comprehend easy truths, and such as are clothed with the ornaments of eloquence. Both the one and the other is a vicious delicacy, or indeed a real weakness. The mind should be rendered capable of discovering truth, when hid and concealed, and to respect it under whatever form it appears. If we do not get over that disgust, which it

is easy for all the world to conceive against such points as seem somewhat subtle and scholastick, we insensibly streighten the mind, and render it incapable of comprehending what is not to be known but by a chain of several propositions. And thus when a truth depends on three or four principles, which it is necessary to take a view of all at once, we are disgusted and confused, and thereby deprived of the knowledge of several useful circumstances, which is a very considerable defect. The capacity of the mind is extended and enlarged by use, and to this end the mathematicks and all knotty and abstracted questions in general principally conduce; for they give a certain enlargement to the mind, and exercise it in a stricter application, and closer attention to the points it knows.

It is almost incredible how serviceable this sort of study is towards giving youth a strength, exactness and penetration of mind, which by degrees lead them to master themselves and unravel the most abstracted and perplexed questions. I have seen a custom practised in college, always attended with good success; but then this was amongst scholars of the best capacity. Besides the sheets of their class, they were made to read, either in publick or in private, certain parts of some philosophical discourses, such as the six books of F. Malebranche's enquiry after truth, the meditations of Descartes, or his principles of natural philosophy; and after these treatises had been read with them, and explained to them, they were put upon making extracts and summaries, each in their own way, but always with a certain order and method, by first giving clearly the state of the question, laying down the principles, giving the different proofs on which they are founded, exactly reciting all the difficulties that may be brought against them, and giving the solution of them. The master then revised these extracts, and if he found any passage which required either retrenchment or addition, to be enlarged or abridged, he observed upon it and gave his reasons for correcting it.

This

This method is certainly very capable of teaching the boys order, exactness and penetration, qualities which are very necessary in every employment of life. This will enable them to support a long and laborious examination of any point, without being disgusted, either at the obscurity of the questions, or the multiplicity of the matters they are to discuss, and this will inform them how to fix upon the decisive point in the most intricate matter, never to lose sight of it, to refer all the rest to it, and set the proofs of it in so strong a light, and in such order as may fully shew the force of them.

Without speaking of a great variety of rare and curious knowledge, taught by philosophy, can we think two years employed in acquiring the talents I have just been speaking of, (and I have known many scholars attain this advantage in that time) lost or mispent? Can any wise or reasonable parents ever repent of having their children instructed in this manner? And if through a blind and inconsiderate haste, which grows but too common, they abridge the time designed for philosophy, have they not cause to blame themselves for cutting off the part of their studies, (I dare venture to say it, and my known taste for a different kind of learning cannot render me suspected) which is the most important, the most necessary, and most beneficial to boys, and of which the loss can be the least concealed, and is the most irreparable.

I conclude, from what I have said that such parents as really love their children, ought to make them pass through an entire course of philosophy; to procure them, during that time, all the assistances necessary for their progress and improvement in this study; to engage them from time to time, to make repetitions in their presence, over which their masters must preside; and especially to declare to them, upon their first entrance on this course, it is their intention that they shall keep publickly all the acts which are usually kept in philosophy. This expence is not great upon the

foot matters now stand in the university, and it cannot be reduced to too great a simplicity. But though it were more considerable it is of so great importance to their children, and makes so notable a difference in their study, by the indispensible obligation it lays upon them to apply themselves seriously to it, that they certainly ought not to spare it.



ARTICLES III. and IV.

Philosophy adorns the mind with an infinity of curious knowledge.

It serves also to inspire a great respect for religion.

I JOIN here these two things together, because in reality they are naturally united, and one must lead to the other, as will be seen by what I have to say upon this subject.

It is surprizing that man placed in the midst of nature, which presents him with the greatest spectacle it is possible to imagine, and surrounded on all sides with an infinity of wonders made for him, should scarce ever think either of considering these wonders which are so deserving of his attention and curiosity, or of taking a view of himself. He lives in the midst of a world, of which he is the sovereign, as a stranger, who looks with indifference upon all that passes in it, and as if it was not his concern. The universe, in all its parts declares and points out its Author, but for the most part to the deaf and blind, who have neither ears to hear, nor eyes to see.

One of the greatest services that philosophy can do us, is to awaken us from this drowsiness, and rouse us from this lethargy which is a dishonour to humanity, and

and in a manner reduces us below the beasts, whose stupidity is the consequence of their nature, and not the effect of neglect or indifference. It awakens our curiosity, it excites our attention, and leads us, as it were by the hand, through all the parts of nature, to induce us to study and search out the wonderful works of it.

It presents the universe to our eyes as a large picture, whereof every part has its use, every line its grace and beauty, but is most wonderful when considered in the whole together. By laying before us so beautiful a spectacle, it teaches us to observe the order, symmetry and proportion, that reigns throughout the whole; and with what equality this order, both of the whole and of every part is preserved and maintained; and thereby leads us to the invisible hand and wisdom, by which the whole is disposed.

Philosophy, by thus carrying man from wonder to wonder, and conducting him, in a manner, through the whole world, does not suffer him to remain a stranger to himself, or to be ignorant of his own proper being, in which God has been pleased to draw his own image in a far more sensible and perfect manner than in the rest of the creation.

'Tis plain, that I am here principally speaking of that branch of philosophy which is called *Physicks*, as it is employed in the consideration of nature. I shall examine it under two views, the one of which I shall call the physicks of the learned, and the other the physicks of children. This last takes in only the objects themselves, as they make an impression upon the senses; whereas the former enters upon a thorough examination of nature, and endeavours to find out its causes.

The Physicks of the learned.

The consideration of the world, and the different parts of which it is composed, has always been the study

dy of philosophers, and nothing is certainly more worthy of our attention. It is not possible to see the heavens and stars continually rolling over our heads, without being tempted to study their motion, and observe their order and regularity. Three principal systems have divided the philosophers, of which I shall here give an abridgment.

The systems of the world.

The first system is Ptolomy's, under which I shall take in what his followers have added. This philosopher lived in the second century, under the Emperors Adrian and Marcus Aurelius Antoninus, about the year of Christ 138.

He placed the earth in the centre of the universe. According to him the Moon was nearer the earth than all the other planets. Above the Moon were Mercury, Venus, the Sun, Mars, Jupiter and Saturn, and above all these planets was the Firmament, in which he supposed all the stars were fixed as in an arched roof, that was concentrical to the earth. In consequence hereof he supposed that the sun with all the planets and the fixed stars were carried every twenty four hours from east to west round the earth by an heaven, which he placed above the firmament, and which having this motion communicated it to all the inferior heavens, and consequently to the planets, which adhered to them.

Besides this motion which was common to all the heavenly bodies, he attributed a particular movement to the sun, planets and fixed stars from west to east, but in such manner that every one of these bodies was to make its revolution round the earth at different times. Thus the sun took up a year in making his revolution from west to east, Saturn thirty years, &c.

COPERNICUS was born about the end of the fifteenth century, and judging that the appearances of the heavens could not well be explained upon Ptolomy's hypothesis,

hypothesis, he invented another; and after he had spent above thirty years about it, he at last communicated it to the publick, being much pressed to it by the reproaches and solicitations of his friends. This hypothesis was not intirely unknown to the ancients, and in some parts of it stands thus.

The sun lies in the center of the circles, which Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter and Saturn describe by their proper motion from west to east. The earth according to him has a like motion with that of the planets, which are situated thus. He places above the sun, but at different distances, Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter and Saturn, and the fixed stars beyond all these planets, which are at so considerable a distance from the earth, that thirty millions of leagues are an inconsiderable length in comparison with it.

Instead of saying with Ptolomy, that all the heavens, and consequently all the heavenly bodies turn round the earth in twenty four hours from east to west, he supposes that the earth turns round its own axis in twenty four hours, and that in consequence of this motion all the heavenly bodies must seem to turn round the earth in twenty four hours from east to west. In like manner to explain the apparent annual motion of the sun from west to east, he supposes that the earth moves every year from west to east round the sun.

He supposes also that the moon moves round the earth in twenty seven days and a half whilst the earth is moving round the sun.

As to the other planets he supposes that they move round the sun in a greater or less time, in proportion as they are more or less distant from it.

Moons or satellites have been discovered round Jupiter and Saturn, which move about those planets, whilst they are carried round the sun in the same manner as the moon moves round the earth.

The third system is that of Tycho Brahe a philosopher, born about the middle of the sixteenth century. This system, which properly speaking is but a mixture

ture of the other two, did not meet with many followers, nor do I think it necessary to give an account of it here. That of Copernicus prevails most at present, and is founded on principles, which make it very probable.

These systems are but bare conjectures, as it has not pleased God, who alone is thoroughly acquainted with his own work, to discover to us in express terms the order and disposition of it; and it is for this reason that the scripture says, that he has set the world for man to dispute about; *⁊ Mundum tradidit disputationi eorum*. But this study, though it is not certain and evident in itself, does notwithstanding extremely satisfy the mind by laying a system before it, which explains all the effects of nature in a sensible and rational manner, and at the same time gives us a clear and distinct idea of the infinite greatness, power, and wisdom of God.

By means of telescopes, the modern astronomers have made such discoveries in the heavens, as, though very certain, will always appear chymical to the generality of mankind.

According to these astronomers, Saturn is four thousand times bigger than the earth, Jupiter eight thousand times, and the sun a million of times bigger.

The distance of the earth and planets from the sun is no less incredible. A cannon ball in going from the earth to the sun, if it always kept its first degree of velocity, would take up twenty five years before it got thither, and if discharged from Saturn would not arrive there in less than two hundred and fifty years. Now a cannon ball flies six hundred foot in the second of a minute; supposing then that it should constantly preserve the same velocity with which it passed the first six hundred foot after its coming out of the cannon, it would move one hundred and eighty leagues in one hour, and consequently in passing from the earth to the sun it would move thirty nine millions

four hundred and twenty thousand leagues, which upon this supposition is the earth's distance from the sun; and the distance of Saturn from the sun is to be computed in proportion.

The bigness of the fixed stars, and their distance from the sun are still more inconceivable.

Every one of these fixed stars is a sun, and there is reason to believe of no less bigness than that which enlightens us. Those stars, which are nearest to us, are notwithstanding so far removed from the sun, that a cannon ball moved with the velocity we have mentioned would take up above six hundred thousand years to pass over the space which lies betwixt those stars and the sun.

What is a man, a city, a kingdom or the earth itself in its whole extent, in comparison of these vast bodies, whose immense magnitude surpasses all imagination, but an imperceptible point? What is then the whole world itself in comparison of him, who created it by a single word, *h He spake and they were made?* Have not the prophets reason to tell us, that all the nations are in the sight of God, but as a drop of water, and the earth which they inhabit as a grain of dust? That the whole universe in comparison of him is but as a point? and that his power and wisdom conduct and direct all the motions of it with the same ease as a hand sustains a light weight which it plays with, rather than is burthened. Physicks may very much contribute to confirm us in these noble ideas of the supreme Being.

We are instructed still more, if possible, to admire his greatness by the smallest insect. Though microscopes were but the invention of the last age, they have been carried to so high a point of perfection, as to discover to us animals so exceedingly minute, that several thousands of them would not equal a grain of sand in bigness; and though so extremely small, there

are some of them, which contain others, that are no sooner born, than they swim with a surprizing agility and swiftness.

The mind is lost in the divisibility of matter. The most common opinion is, that how far soever matter may be divided, or into how small parts soever it be reduced, the particles of it may still be divided *in infinitum*. We find divisions in art and nature which go infinitely farther than can be imagined. Rohault assures us, that a cube of gold of five lines and one seventh of an inch, is divided by the workman into six hundred fifty and one thousand five hundred and ninety parts equal to the base. We know by the observation of naturalists, that a cubick inch of matter contains a million of visible particles, that a cubick inch of water rarified in an æolipile produces above thirteen thousand three hundred millions of particles, and that more than thirteen thousand particles of water may be fixed upon the point of a needle.

I cannot avoid transcribing here an admirable passage from the thoughts of M. Pascal, which relates to the matter I am treating of. It is the twenty second chapter, intitled, *the general knowledge of man*.

The first thing which offers itself to man when he looks upon himself, is his body, that is, a certain portion of matter peculiar to him; but to comprehend what it is, he ought to compare it with all that is above him and below him, before he can come to the knowledge of its just bounds.

Let him not therefore stop at barely considering the objects that surround him, let him contemplate all nature in its full majesty, let him view that shining luminary which is placed as an eternal lamp to give light to the world; let the earth appear to him as a point in comparison of the vast circumference which that heavenly body describes, and let him stand astonished that this vast circumference itself is but a very small point in comparison of that, which the stars make that move in the firmament; and if our views
stop

stop there, let the imagination pass further. It will sooner cease to conceive, than nature to furnish matter for conception. All that we see in the world is but an imperceptible circumstance in the ample bosom of nature. No idea can come up to the extent of its spaces. We may enlarge our conceptions, as much as we please, we shall bring forth nothing but atoms in comparison with the reality of things. 'Tis an infinite sphere, whose centre lies in every part, and the circumference no where; and lastly, it is one of the greatest sensible characters of God's omnipotence, that our imagination is lost in this thought.

Let man then return to himself, and consider what he is in comparison with what universally exists. Let him take a view of himself, as having strayed into this out of the way district of nature, and from the judgment he will form of this small dungeon, wherein he dwells, that is, this visible world, let him learn to set a just value upon the earth, upon kingdoms, cities and himself.

What then is man with respect to infinity? Who is able to comprehend it? But to present him with another kind of prodigy, as surprizing as the former, let him enquire into the smallest things he knows, that a fly for instance, should have parts in its little body incomparably more little, legs with joints, veins in those legs, blood in those veins, humours in that blood, drops in those humours, and vapours in those drops; and still proceeding in his divisions, let him exhaust the whole force of his conceptions, and let the last object he can think of be the subject of our present discourse. He will judge perhaps that this is the smallest portion of nature; but within this I will shew him a new abyss, I will describe to him not only the visible universe, but farther all that he is capable of conceiving of the immensity of nature, within the circumference of this imperceptible atom.

¹ Let him take a view of an infinite number of worlds, whereof every one has its firmament, its planets, its earth, in the same proportion as the visible world. In this earth, let him consider the animals, and lastly the mites, in which he will find again all that he discovered in the first; the same thing being still constantly repeated in the rest without end or repose. Let him lose himself in these wonders, which are as surprising by their minuteness, as others by their magnitude. For who can avoid standing in admiration, that our body, which but a while ago was not to be perceived in the world, but was itself imperceptible in the bosom of the whole, should now be a colossus, a world, or rather an universe, in comparison of the last degree of smallness, to which we cannot attain?

Let him consider himself in this manner, and he will be affrighted without doubt to see himself in a manner suspended in the mass which nature has given him, between the two extremes of infinity and nothing, from which he is equally removed. He will tremble at the view of these wonders, and in my opinion his curiosity being changed into admiration, he will be rather disposed to contemplate them in silence, than seek after them with presumption.

For in short, what is man considered in nature, a nothing in regard to infinity, and every thing in regard to nothing; a medium between nothing and every thing. He is alike removed from the two extremes, and his being is no less distant from the nothing, from whence he was taken, that from the infinity in which he is lost. His understanding holds the same rank in the order of intelligible beings, as his body in the extent of nature, and all that it can do is to perceive some appearances in the middle of things, in an eternal despair of knowing either the beginning or the end.

ⁱ M. Pascal means, that in this small part, which one would imagine was the least that could be, other parts may still be conceived, bearing the same proportions to one another, as the parts of the visible world would do to each other.

All

All things have proceeded from nothing, and are carried up to infinity. Who can follow these amazing progressions? The author of these wonders comprehends them; which only he can do.

I have quoted this long passage from M. Pascal, to shew how many solid reflections the study of nature may supply; and the case is the same with all that is taught in physicks.

Is it not a laudable curiosity to examine into the nature, causes and effects of motion, the weight of the air, the cause of earthquakes, lightning and thunders?

To know the origin of rivers and fountains is not a matter of indifference. Several are of opinion, that they proceed from the sea, which spreads itself far under ground, and then arises by imperceptible channels to the surface of the earth. Others pretend, that the rain and snows are the sole cause of rivers and fountains. The quantity of water and snow which falls in a year upon a certain determinate portion of the earth's surface has been calculated for several years together, and at the same time the water that runs in a year, for example, in the Seine; and by this calculation it appears that a third part of the water and snow, which falls upon the earth, is more than sufficient to supply the fountains and rivers.

All mankind are witnesses of the eclipses of the sun and moon, and it is a kind of reproach to be wholly ignorant of the cause of them. We know that the eclipses of the sun happen only because the moon, which is an opaque body, being placed between the earth and sun, intercepts the light which should come from the sun to the earth; and that the eclipse of the moon is occasioned only by the earth's being placed directly between the moon and sun, which hinders the sun from illuminating the moon; and for this reason the eclipses of the sun never happen but when the moon is new; and the eclipses of the moon at no time but at the full. But it is most surprizing, that they are foretold by astronomers with such exactness,
that

that a mistake of some minutes is looked upon by them as a considerable error.

Can any thing better deserve our attention, than the flux and reflux of the sea? Philosophers have almost always thought, that the moon was the cause of it, by compressing the intermediate air, and thereby the waters corresponding to it; but the relation between the flux and reflux of the sea, and the motion of that planet was never so well understood as in the last century. The moon takes up twelve hours and twenty four minutes in passing from the upper part of our meridian to the lower, and twenty four hours and forty eight minutes in returning to the upper part of our meridian again. There are also twelve hours and twenty four minutes between the tide, which come in upon our coasts every morning, and the tide of flood in the evening, and twenty four hours and forty eight minutes between the morning tide of one day, and the morning tide of the next. Several other agreements of this kind have been likewise observed, which are very surprising when thoroughly considered.

There is nothing certainly more wonderful in nature, than this general and regular motion of all the waters in the world, which is more sensible in the ocean; but not absolutely unknown in the Mediterranean, especially in its gulphs. Is it possible not to discern the finger of God in the bounds he has set to the sea, and in that order which he seems to have writ upon the strand; "hitherto shalt thou go, and no farther, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed?"
** Usque huc venies, & non procedas amplius, & hic confringes tumentes fluctus tuos.*

Can we reasonably suffer youth to be ignorant of such wonders as these, or not instruct them in the other points treated of in physicks, and which usually take up a good part of the second year of philosophy? When this study is neglected at this time, it is seldom afterwards applied to; but instead of neglecting it then,

youth ought to be prepared for it before hand by being shewn it from their infancy, though in a manner suitable to their age; and this is what it remains for me to treat in the following article.

The natural philosophy of children.

So I call a study of nature, which scarce requires any thing besides the eyes, and for this reason falls within the capacity of all sorts of persons, and even of children. It consists in attending to the objects, with which nature presents us, in considering them with care, and admiring their different beauties, but without searching out their secret causes, which properly belongs to the physicks of the learned.

I say, that even children are capable of it, for they have eyes and don't want curiosity; they ask questions and love to be informed; and here we need only awaken and keep up in them the desire of learning and knowing, which is natural to all mankind. Besides, this study, if it is to be called a study, instead of being painful and tedious, is pleasant and agreeable; it may be used as a recreation, and should usually be made a diversion: It is inconceivable, how many things children are capable of, if all the opportunities of instructing them were laid hold of, with which they themselves supply us.

A garden, a country, a palace, are all so many books which lye open to them; but they must have been taught and accustomed to read in them. Nothing is more common amongst us, than the use of bread and linen. How seldom do children know how either of them are prepared, through how many operations and hands the corn and the flax must pass, before they are turned into bread and linen? The same may be said of cloth, which bears no resemblance to the wool whereof it is formed, any more than paper to the rags, which are picked up in the streets; and why should not children be instructed in these wonderful

derful works of nature and art, which they every day make use of without reflecting upon them?

'Tis very agreeable to read in Tully's treatise of old age, the elegant description which he gives of the growth of corn. ¹ It is admirable how the seed fermented and softned by the warmth and moisture of the earth, which kindly retains it in her bosom, sends forth at first a verdant point, which fed and nourished from the root raises itself by degrees, and erects an hollow stalk, strengthened with knots; how the ear enclosed in a kind of case, insensibly grows in it, and at last shoots forth in admirable form, fortified with bearded spikes, which serve it as a guard against the injuries of the small birds. But to view this wonder itself with our own eyes, to follow it attentively through all its different changes, and pursue it till it comes to perfection, is quite another spectacle.

A careful master will find in this manner, wherewithal to enrich the mind of his disciple with a great number of useful and agreeable ideas, and by a proper mixture of short reflections, will at the same time take care to form his heart, and lead him by nature to religion. I shall give some examples, which will shew how useful this sort of exercise may be, better than any thing I can say upon the subject. They are not mine, as will soon be perceived; I shall borrow most of them from an excellent manuscript upon Genesis which is in the hands of several persons. These examples will serve to shew, in what manner we ought to study nature in every thing presented to our eyes, and trace it backwards up to the creator. I shall confine myself to the subject of plants and animals.

1. Me quidem non fructus modo, sed etiam ipsius terræ vis ac natura delectat. Quæ cum gremio molli- to ac subacto semen sparsum excep- pit. . . tepestactum vapore & com- pressu suo diffundit, & elicit her- bescentem ex eo viriditatem: quæ nixa fibris stirpium sensum adoles-

cit, culmoque erecta geniculato, vaginis jam quasi pubescens inclu- ditur, è quibus cum emerferit, fun- dit frugem spici ordine structam, & contra avium minorum morsus munitur vallo aristarum. De Se- nest. n. 51.

I. PLANTS, FLOWERS, FRUITS, and TREES.

^m The firmament, in which the sun, the moon and stars shine with so much splendor, is the first preacher, which declared the glory of God, nor is any thing wanting besides this book, written in characters of light, to render all mankind inexcusable: But the Divine Wisdom is no less admirable in the smallest of its works, by which, it has in a manner vouchsafed to become more accessible to us, and seems to invite us to a nearer consideration of it, without fear of being dazzled by its radiance.

P L A N T S.

The most contemptible in appearance has wherewithal to astonish the sublimest understandings, which notwithstanding can see only the grosser organs of them, without entering into all the secrets of their life, nourishment and increase. Not a leaf in them but is disposed with attention; order and symmetry are visible throughout the whole; and that with so prodigious a variety of fissures, ornaments and beauties, that no one perfectly resembles the other.

What discoveries are made in the smallest seeds by the help of microscopes? How great virtue and efficacy has God implanted in them by a single word, by which he seems to have given plants a kind of immortality. ⁿ *Let the earth bring forth grass, and herb yielding seed.*

Can any thing be more worth our admiration, than the general colour wherewith it has pleased God to beautify every plant? Had all the fields been clothed in white or red, who could have born the splendor or rigour of their dress? If he had blackned them with darker colours, who could have been delighted with

so sad and mournful a spectacle? An agreeable verdure holds the mean between these two extremes, and bears such relation to the structure of the eye, that it refreshes instead of tiring it, and supports and nourishes it instead of exhausting its force. But what at first we should judge to be one colour, is an astonishing variety of shades. It is every where green, but no where the same. No plant is coloured like another, and this surprizing variety, which no art can imitate, is farther diversified in every plant, which in its first shooting forth, in its growth and maturity, puts on a different verdure.

The same may be said of the figure, smell, taste, and uses of plants, both for nourishment and medicine. I shall make here but one more reflection.

If God had not given hay when dried and kept for a long season the power of feeding horses, oxen and other animals of service, how would the labourer or man of wealth have satisfied the hunger of animals of so vast bulk, and which are only useful whilst they have strength? Should we undertake to feed a man in this manner, or because the herb might be too dry for his chewing, should we give him broths or infusions of a great bundle of hay and straw, would this be able to keep him alive? This very dry herb suffices likewise to make other animals give twice a day a quantity of milk, which may supply the place of all other food to a whole family. When we consider this wonder, which passes every day before our eyes without any reflection, can we avoid admiring the wisdom and goodness of God? *He causeth the grass to grow for the cattle, and herb for the service of man.*

FLOWERS.

I transport myself from hence in thought to a field covered with flowers, or a garden well cultivated.

What beautiful enamel, what colours, what wealth, and at the same time how great an harmony and fragrance in their mixture and in the shades with which they are blended? How fine a picture, and by how great a master? How lavish in the profusion of ornaments? From what source could the beauties we look upon arise? What is in itself the principle of so much splendor and ornaments so richly diversified?

But let us pass from this general view to the consideration of some flowers in particular, and let us cull by chance the first that shall fall in our way, without putting ourselves to the trouble of making a choice.

It no sooner opens, but it has all its freshness and lustre. Has art invented such lively, and at the same time, such delicate hues? Is any stuff so fine, or wove with such exquisite uniformity? ^p Is the purple of Solomon equal to the leaves in my hand? How coarse in comparison? How rough? How gross in the workmanship, and how different in the colour?

But though this flower were less beautiful in every part than it is, can we imagine a more agreeable symmetry in the whole, a more regular disposition in its leaves, or a greater exactness in its proportions?

One would believe, if we were only to examine the wisdom of God, and if I may be allowed the expression, his complacency in the composition of so perfect a flower, that it was to last for ever; but before evening it shall fade, and the next day be withered by the sun, and the day after perish. What should we then think of the immense ocean of beauties, which so plentifully bestows them upon an herb that is to last but a few hours? What will he do when he shall undertake to adorn the mind, he who diffuses such splendor upon the grass designed for the food of animals? And how great is the blindness of the world, who reckon upon beauty, youth, authority and human glory as solid benefits, without remembering that they are

as the transient flower of an herb, which to morrow shall be no more? *All flesh is grass, and all the glory thereof as the flower of the field.*

F R U I T S.

Hitherto we have considered the earth as a field or a garden of herbs; let us now consider it as a rich orchard abounding with all kinds of fruit, which succeed one another according to the seasons.

I consider one of these trees extending its branches, bowing down to the earth, under the weight of excellent fruit, whose colour and smell invite the taste, and in surprizing plenty. This tree, by the pomp it displays before my eyes, seems to cry out; learn of me how great the goodness and magnificence of God is, who has formed me for you. It is neither for him nor for me, that I thus abound in riches. He stands in need of nothing, and I can make no use of what is given me. Bless him and unload me; give thanks to him, and as he has made me the minister of your entertainment, do you become the minister of my gratitude.

Such invitations as these I seem to hear from every quarter, and as I advance, I still discover new subjects of praise and admiration. Here the fruit lies concealed within; and there the kernel is covered with a delicate pulp all shining without in the most lively colours. This fruit arises from a flower, as almost all fruits do; but that other, which is so delicious, is preceded by no flower, but springs out of the very rind of the fig-tree. The one begins the summer, and the other ends it. If one is not speedily gathered it falls and withers; and if time is not allowed to the other, it will never come to maturity. The one keeps long, and the other presently corrupts; one refreshes, and another strengthens; but all I see raises in me a spirit

of wo
out wi
O Lor
thou o
plenteo

We
of fruit
Am
their f
togeth
ing at
order t
who, b
he is t
seasons

I ob
a mo
fruits.

and th
this le
grapes

most v

Th
that an
ry usef
such a
are to
hardly
other

If v
in cert
of rain
plying
plentif

Vo

of wonder and transport, and I cannot avoid crying out with the Prophet: *The eyes of all wait upon thee. O Lord, and thou givest them their meat in due season; thou openest thy hand and fillest all things living with plenteousness.*

T R E E S.

We have already treated of these, when we spoke of fruits; but they deserve some particular reflections.

Amongst the fruitful trees there are some which bear their fruits in two seasons of the year, and others join together both different seasons and years too, by bearing at once both flowers and green and ripe fruit, in order to shew the unbounded power of the Creator, who, by diversifying the laws of nature, lets us see that he is the master of them, and can alike dispose of all seasons, and all things at his pleasure.

I observe that they are the weak trees, or those of a moderate height, which bear the most exquisite fruits. The higher they rise they poorer they appear, and the less agreeable are their fruits. I understand this lesson, and the feeble stem of the vine, whose grapes I admire, tells me in its language, that the most wonderful fruits are often nearest the earth.

The other trees which bear only leaves, or fruits that are bitter and very small, are notwithstanding very useful; and providence has made up the defect in such a manner, that upon some occasions the barren are to be preferred to the more fruitful, which are hardly of any use either for building or navigation, or other indispensable wants.

If we had not seen such high and large trees as are in certain forests, we could not believe that the drops of rain which fall from heaven were capable of supplying them with nourishment. For not only a very plentiful sap is necessary to them, but one that abounds

in spirits and salts of every kind, to give the root, the trunk and branches that force and vigour which we admire in them. It is very remarkable that the more these trees are neglected, the more beautiful they grow, and that were men to apply themselves to cultivate them like the small trees of their gardens, they would only do them a prejudice. Thou hereby, O Lord, givest a proof, that it is thou only that hast formed them, and teachest man that his cares and industry are useless to thee; and that if thou requirest them to be used about certain little trees, it is only to employ him, and put him in mind of his own weakness, by having only weak things like himself committed to his care.

Lastly, amongst the trees I observe some which always preserve their verdure, and in them I imagine I discern a figure of immortality, as the others, which are stripped in winter to be clothed again in the spring, seem to present me with an image of the resurrection.

II. ANIMALS.

In the description of animals I shall observe the order which God followed in their creation.

FISH.

What an abundance of fish do the waters produce of every size? When I view these animals, I seem to discern nothing besides a head and a tail. They have neither feet nor arms. Their very head cannot freely be moved; and were I to consider only their figure, I should think them deprived of all that was necessary for the preservation of their life; but with these few outward organs they are more nimble, dextrous and artificial, than if they had several hands and feet; and the use they make of their tail and fins carries them along like arrows, and seems to make them fly.

As the fish devour one another, how can these watry inhabitants subsist? God has provided for it by multiplying them in so prodigious a manner, that their fruitfulness infinitely surpasses their mutual desire of eating one another; and what is destroyed is always far inferior to their increase.

I am only in pain how the little ones should escape the bigger, which look upon them as their prey, and are continually in pursuit of them. But this weak race are swifter in their course than the others. They creep into places where the low water will not admit of the larger fish, and it seems as if God had given them a foresight in proportion to their weakness and dangers.

Whence comes it, that the fish live in the midst of water, so loaded with salt, that we cannot bear a drop of them in our mouths, and enjoy there a perfect vigour and health, and how do they preserve, in the midst of salt, a flesh that has not the least taste of it?

Why do the best, and such as are most fit for the use of man, draw near the coasts, to offer themselves in a manner to him, whilst a great many others, which are useless to him, affect remoteness from him?

Why do those, who keep themselves in unknown places, whilst they multiply and acquire a certain bulk, come in shoals at a particular time to invite the fishermen, and throw themselves, in a manner, into their nets and boats?

Why do several of them, and of the best kinds, enter the mouths of rivers, and run up even to their springs, to communicate the advantages of the sea to such countries as lie at a distance from it? And what hand conducts them with so much care and goodness towards man, but thine, O Lord, though so visible a Providence seldom occasions their acknowledgment?

This providence is every where to be discerned, and the innumerable shells which are spread upon the shore, hide different kinds of fish, that with a very small appearance of life are sure to open their shells at certain

regular times to take in fresh water, and retain therein, by speedily joining them together, the imprudent prey which falls into that snare.

BIRDS.

We see a surprizing imitation of reason in several animals, but it no where appears in a more sensible manner than in the industry of birds in building their nests.

In the first place, what master has taught them that they have need of them? Who has taken care to inform them to prepare them in time, and not to suffer themselves to be prevented by necessity? Who has told them how they should build them? What mathematician has given them the figure of them? What architect has taught them to chuse a firm place and to build upon a solid foundation? What tender mother has advised them to cover the bottom with a soft and delicate substance, such as down and cotton? And when these matters fail, who has suggested to them that ingenious charity, which leads them to pluck off so many feathers from their own breasts with their beaks, as is requisite for the preparing a convenient cradle for their young?

In the second place, what wisdom has pointed out to every distinct kind a peculiar manner of building their nests, so as to observe the same precautions, though in a thousand different ways? Who has commanded the swallow, the skilfullest of birds, to draw near to man and make choice of his house for the building of his nest, within his view, without fear of his knowing it, and seeming rather to invite him to a consideration of his labour? Neither does he build like other birds with little bits of sticks and stubble, but employs cement and mortar, and in so solid a manner, that it requires some pains to demolish its work; and yet in all this it makes use of no other instrument but its beak. Reduce, if it is possible, the ablest architect

chitect to the small bulk of this swallow, leave him all his knowledge and only a beak, and see if he will have the same skill and the like success.

Thirdly, Who has made all the birds comprehend that they must hatch their eggs by sitting upon them? That this necessity was indispensable? That the father and mother could not leave them at the same time, and that if one went abroad to seek for food, the other must wait till it returns? Who has fixed in the calendar the express number of days this painful diligence is to last? Who has advertised them to assist the young, that are already formed, in coming out of the egg, by first breaking the shell? And who has so exactly instructed them in the very moment before which they never come?

Lastly, who has given lessons to all the birds upon the care they ought to take of their young, 'till such time as they are grown up, and in a condition to provide for themselves? Who has made them to distinguish such things as agree well with one species, but are prejudicial to another? And amongst such as are proper to the parents and unfit for the young, who has made them to distinguish such as are salutary? We know the tenderness of mothers and the carefulness of nurses amongst mankind, but I question whether it ever came up to what we see in these little creatures.

Who has taught several among the birds that marvellous industry of retaining food or water in their gullet, without swallowing either the one or the other, and preserving them for their young, to whom this first preparation serves instead of milk?

Is it for the birds, O Lord, that thou hast joined together so many miracles, which they have no knowledge of? Is it for men, who give no attention to them? Is it for the curious, who are satisfied with admiring them, without raising their thoughts to thee? Or is it not rather visible, that thy design has been to call us to thyself by such a spectacle; to make us sensible of thy

providence and infinite wisdom; and to fill us with confidence in thy bounty, who watchest with so much care and tenderness over the birds, ^s though two of them are sold but for a farthing?

But let us set bounds to our observations upon the industry of birds, for the subject is infinite, and hearken for a moment to the concert of their musick, the first praise which God received from nature, and the first song of thanksgiving, which was offered to him before man was formed. All their sounds are different, but all harmonious, and all together compose a choir which men have but feebly imitated. One voice however, more strong and melodious, is distinguished among the rest, and I find upon inquiry from whence it comes, that it is a very small bird, which is the organ of it. This leads me to consider all the rest of the singing tribe, and they also are all small: the great ones being either wholly ignorant of musick, or having a disagreeable voice. Thus I every where find that what seems weak and small has the best destination, and the most gratitude.

Some of these little birds are extremely beautiful, nor can any thing be more rich or variegated than their feathers; but it must be owned, that all ornament must give place to the finery of the peacock, upon which God has plentifully bestowed all the riches which set off the rest, and lavished upon it with gold and azure all the shades of every other colour. This bird seems sensible of its advantage, and looks as if designed to display all its beauties to our eyes, when it expands that splendid circumference which sets them all to view.

But this most pompous bird of all has a most disagreeable cry, and is a proof, that with a very shining outside there may be but a sorry substance within, little gratitude and a great deal of vanity.

In examining the feathers of the rest, I find one thing very singular in those of the swans and other ri-

ver fowl, for they are proof against the water, and continue always dry, and yet our eyes do not discover either the artifice or difference of them.

I look upon the feet of the same birds, and observe webs there, which distinctly mark their destination. But I am much astonished to see these birds so sure, that they run no hazard by throwing themselves into the water; whereas others, to whom God has not given the like feathers or feet, are never so rash as to expose themselves to it. Who has told the former that they run no danger, and who keeps back the others from following their example? It is not unusual to set duck eggs under a hen, which in this case is deceived by her affection, and takes a foreign brood for her natural off-spring; that run to the water as soon as they come out of the shell, nor can their pretended mother prevent them by her repeated calls. She stands upon the brink in astonishment at their rashness, and still more at the success of it. She finds herself violently tempted to follow them, and warmly expresses her impatience, but nothing is capable of carrying her to an indiscretion which God has prohibited. The spectators are surprized at it, more or less in proportion to their understanding; for it is the want of light and understanding, when such prodigies excite so little admiration. But it is rare that the spectators learn from this example, that it is necessary to be destined by providence to discharge the functions of a dangerous state, and to receive from it all that is requisite for our security; and that it is a fatal rashness for others to venture upon it, who have neither the same vocation nor the same talents.

I should never have done, should I undertake to consider many miracles of a like nature with those I have here related. I shall content myself with one observation more, which takes in several others, and relates to birds of passage.

They have all their allotted times, which they do not exceed; but this time is not the same for every species.

species. Some wait for the winter, others the spring; some the summer, and others the autumn. There is amongst every sort a publick and general rule of government, which guides and retains every single bird in its duty. Before the general edict, there is none thinks of departing. After its publication there is no one tarries behind. A kind of council fixes the day, and grants a certain time to prepare for it, after which they all take their flight; and so exact is their discipline, that the next day there is not a straggler or deserter to be found. Many people know no other bird but the swallow, that acts thus, but it is certain that many other species do the same. Now I ask, though we had but the single instance of the swallow, what news have they received from the countries whither they go in great companies, to be assured that they shall find all things there prepared for their reception? I ask, why they do not keep like other birds to the country where they have brought up their young, which have been so kindly treated in it? By what disposition to travel does this new brood, which knows no other than its native country, conspire all at once to quit it? In what language is the ordinance published, which forbids all, both old and new subjects of the republick, to tarry beyond a certain day? and lastly, by what signs do the principal magistrates know, that they should run an extreme hazard in exposing themselves to be prevented by a rigorous season? What other answer can be given to these questions than that of the prophet, *'O Lord, how manifold are thy works, in wisdom hast thou made them all?*

Land animals.

I am obliged to abridge this subject, to put an end to this small treatise, which has insensibly grown very long.

The single instance of the dog, shews us how capa-

ble God is of giving matter all the outward appearances of understanding, fidelity, friendship and gratitude, without the principle of them. As this example is known to all the world, I shall not dwell upon it.

The actions of the bee are no less admirable. Instead of contenting itself with sucking the money, which is better preserved in the cups of flowers than any where else, and feeding upon it day by day, it lays up a provision for the whole year, and principally for the winter. It loads the little hooks which adorn its legs with all the wax and gum that it can carry, and in sucking up the honey with the trunk fixed at the extremity of its head, it avoids the daubing of its wings, of which it stands in need to fly from place to place, and to carry it home.

If care is not taken to prepare a hive for it, it makes one itself in the hollow of some tree or rock; there its first care is to form the comb, which it composes of small equal cells, that they may be the better joined, and leave no interval or space between. Then it pours out the honey pure and unmixed into these small reservoirs, and how plentifully soever its magazines are filled, it takes no rest, till the time of labour and harvest is over. In this republick there is no idleness, no avarice or self love, but all is in common. What is necessary is granted to all, a superfluity to none, and it is for the publick good that their substance is preserved. New colonies, which would be a burthen to the state, are sent abroad. They know how to work, and are obliged to do so by being dismissed.

Amongst the best governed nations have we the copy of so perfect a model? Can such surprizing wisdom be attributed to chance or a cause without a will? Or can we think these wonders explained by saying, that instinct, nature and I know not what, is the principle from whence they proceed? And is it not under these images, on one side so perfect, and on the other so remote from matter, that God has taken a pleasure

to manifest what he is, and to teach man what he should be?

Let us pass from the bee to the ant, which resembles it in many respects, except that a bee enriches man, and the ant strives all he can to impoverish him by stealing from him.

This little animal is informed, that the winter is long, and that the ripe corn is not a great while exposed in the field. Thus the ant never sleeps during harvest. It draws along with the little instruments which are fixed to its head grains of corn which are thrice as heavy as itself, and goes backward with them as well as it can. Sometimes it finds a friend by the way, which lends its assistance, but never waits for it.

The repository, where all is publick, and no one thinks of making a separate provision for itself, this repository is made up of several chambers, which communicate with each other by galleries, and which are all dug so deep, that neither the winter rains or snows can penetrate so far. The subterraneous caverns of citadels are inventions by far more modern and less perfect, and those who have endeavoured to destroy the habitations of such ants, as have had leisure to perfect them, have scarce ever succeeded: The branches of them are extended so far that they do not feel all the injury that is offered them at first.

When their granaries are full, and the winter comes on, they begin to secure the grain by ^u biting off the two ends of it, and thereby hindering it from growing. Thus their first food is no other than a care for futurity, and what they are determined to rather by prudence than necessity.

Hence we see what an incomprehensible fund of industry God has placed in this little animal. Thus has

^u Pliny the naturalist makes the same observation upon the industry of the ants, that they lay up corn for the winter, and prevent it from growing by biting off the

end. Lib. xi. c. 30. Yet this fact is now questioned by some persons, who absolutely deny, that the ants lay up any corn.

he given it a kind of prophetick understanding, to oblige us to recur to him, to whom alone it belongs to work such prodigies, who cannot in my opinion more sensibly shew us that he is the source of wisdom, than by joining together so many circumstances of it in so small a part of matter, which has no more than the appearance of it.

Can we sufficiently admire the industry of certain animals, who spin with such art and delicacy, that all appears to be the effect of thought and a mathematical scheme? Who has taught the spider, an animal in other respects so contemptible, to form such fine threads so equal and so artfully suspended? Who has learnt it to begin with fixing them to certain points, to join them all in one common center, to draw them first in a right line, and then to strengthen them by circles exactly parallel? Who has told it, that these threads should be a snare to catch other animals that have wings, and that it could not come at them but by stratagem? Who has appointed him his place in the center, where all the lines meet, and where it is necessarily informed by the lightest motion, that some prey is fallen into his nets? Lastly, who has told him, that his first care then should be to embarrass the wings of that imprudent prey, by new threads, for fear it should still have left some liberty of disengaging and defending itself.

All the world is a witness of the labours of the silkworm. But have the most skilful artists hitherto been able to imitate them? Have they found out the secret of drawing so fine a thread, so strong, so even, so bright and uniform? Have they any materials of greater value than this thread for making the richest stuffs? Do they know how this worm converts the juice of the leaf into golden threads? Can they give a reason, why a liquid matter, before it has taken the air, should grow strong and lengthen itself *in infinitum*, as soon as it comes into it? Can any of them explain, how this worm is taught to form itself a retreat under the

numberless turnings and windings of silk, which have flowed from itself; and how in this rich grave it finds a kind of resurrection, which gives it the wings, its first birth had refused it?

Every crawling worm becomes a kind of fly, gnat or butterfly; and first every fly has crawled in its original, and been a kind of worm, caterpillar or insect, before it had wings; and the middle state between these two extremes of elevation and meanness is the time, when the animal becomes a cod or bean, which is done a great number of ways, but always in a manner uniform to every species.

I shall conclude this treatise with some observations upon a small animal which deserves our utmost admiration. Its name is *formicalio*. It is of an ugly figure, and looks as if it was but half finished, it is of a cruel disposition, for it lives only upon the blood of its prey, and its sole occupation is to lay traps for it. Its artifice is best seen by having such an animal in one's closet.

It is put into an earthen vessel full of very fine sand, in which it presently hides itself. When it is there, it forms in the sand the shape of a cone reversed with an exact and geometrical proportion, and takes up its residence in the point of the cone, which is the center of it, but still keeping itself covered. If any ant, or fly with its wings taken off, is placed at the entrance of the cone, this little animal, which one would not judge capable of the least effort, throws sand forcibly with its head upon the prey it has got an intelligence of, in order to stun it and drag it down to the bottom, where it lies concealed. Then he comes out from the place of his retreat, and after he has quenched his thirst, he throws away the carcase, which might render his cruelty suspected.

If one would have the pleasure of seeing him labour a second time, it is but filling up the cone by stirring the vessel, and 'tis surprizing to see with what diligence the little beast makes a new figure as large and regular as the former.

How

How much reasoning is here required, if this workmanship was founded upon reasoning? Can a mathematician think more curiously, and be better acquainted with the nature of the cone, of the sand, of the motions and the conveyance of their sound from the center to every part of the circumference? It is certain that this beast must reason, or some one for it. But the wonder is not, either that it should reason, or a foreign principle reason for it, but that this principle should cause all this to be executed by organs, which move of themselves, and seem to act only by an inward principle.

I must not omit that the *formicalio*, of which I have just spoken, is transformed into a great and beautiful fly from the little and ugly thing it was at first, and is no longer of the same sanguine humour, when it has cast off its first skin.

The usefulness of these physical observations.

It is not necessary for me to observe how capable these physical observations, and a great many others of the like nature, are to adorn and enrich the mind of a young man; to make him attentive to the effects of nature, which are constantly before our eyes, and present themselves to us almost every moment without our reflecting upon them; to teach him a thousand curious points relating to sciences, arts and professions, such as chemistry, anatomy, botany, painting, navigation, &c. To give him a taste for gardening, planting, the country, and walking, which is by no means a matter of indifference; to enable him to make an agreeable figure in conversation, and not be under a necessity either of holding his tongue or talking only of trifles.

I call this science the physicks of children, because in reality we may begin to teach it them from their infancy, but still with a view to their weakness, and laying nothing before them beyond their capacity, either as to facts or to the reflections that are joined to them.

them. 'Tis incredible how this small exercise regularly continued from the age of six or seven years, to that of twelve or fifteen, but still under the name and notion of a diversion and not a study, would fill the mind of the boys with useful and agreeable knowledge, and prepare them for that study of physicks, which is proper only to the learned.

But, some one will say, where shall we find masters capable of giving a child these instructions, which the best amongst them are often very ignorant of, and which require a large extent of knowledge? The matter is not so difficult as they may be apt to imagine. ^w Tully said jestingly in an oration, wherein he undertook to lessen the study of the law, that if they vexed him, as full of business as he was, he would become a lawyer in three days. I might almost say the same thing not of the physicks of the learned, which is a very profound science, but of that which I am here speaking of. It requires no more than to run over the books, in which this kind of observations are to be found, such as for instance are the memoirs of the academy of sciences, where we meet with abundance of very curious remarks upon this subject. I have seen boys, who have been publicly examined in the fourth book of Virgil's Georgicks, make a wonderful use of what is said in those memoirs upon the little but admirable republick of the bees. A master that is curious and studious, will apply to persons of skill, to know what books he should consult upon each subject. These books he either borrows or seeks for in the publick libraries; he reads them over and makes extracts from them, and thereby enables himself to teach his scholars abundance of curious points; and he was seven or eight year's time to make this small collection. To succeed in it there is nothing wanting but inclination.

w Itaque, si mihi, homini vehementer occupato, stomachum moreris, triduo me jurisconsultum esse profitebor, Pro Muren. n. 28.

ARTICLE the FOURTH.

Philosophy serves to inspire a great respect for religion.

ALL that I have hitherto said of physicks very clearly shews, that one of the great effects and the most essential fruit of philosophy, is to raise man to the knowledge of the greatness, power, wisdom and goodness of God, to render him attentive to his providence, to teach him to ascend up to him by the consideration of the wonderful works of nature, to make him sensible of his benefits, and point out to him subjects of praise and thanksgiving.

We learn from God himself both in the Old and New Testament, that this is the proper use we ought to make of the creatures, who all teach us our duty. * He sends the sluggard in the scriptures to the ant, to learn industry. † The ungrateful to the ox and ass, who make a grateful return for their master's care; ‡ The inconsiderate to the stork and the swallow, who know their appointed times. ^a Jesus Christ lays down the consideration of the lilies of the valley and the birds of the air as an instruction to all mankind, absolutely to rely upon the cares of a providence, which is at the same time watchful over all, abundant in goodness and almighty. We should therefore not answer the intentions of Divine Wisdom, and should fail in the most essential part of a master's duty, if we did not observe to youth the footsteps of the Deity in all his creatures, as he has been pleased to draw himself, and point out our duty, in them.

In the account the scripture gives us of the creation of the world, it is often said ^b that God approved, and

* Prov. vi. 6:

y If. i. 3.

z Jerem. viii. 7.

a Matt. vi. 26, 30.

b And God saw every thing that he had made, and behold it was very good, Gen. i. 31.

if I may venture to say it, admired his own works, to teach us how great an admiration they ought to raise in us, how much we ought to study them, and what reflections they deserve; and to reproach us at the same time with our stupidity in not employing our thoughts about them, and our ingratitude in not returning thanks for them, whilst we continue ignorant and weak, though we live in the midst of the most astonishing prodigies, and are ourselves one of the most incomprehensible.

It is not natural philosophy alone, which assists us in obtaining the knowledge of God; the little I have said upon the principles of morality drawn from Paganism itself, is sufficient to shew us how proper that branch of philosophy is to inspire us with an high veneration for religion.

Can any thing be more likely to imprint it deeply in the minds of youth, and to lay such solid foundations as are capable to withstand the torrent of incredulity and libertinism, than the famous questions in metaphysics, concerning the existence of a God, and the immortality of the soul?

But the greatest and most important service that philosophy can do for man, is to dispose him to receive whatever is taught by Divine Revelation with docility and respect. It particularly takes care to make him comprehend, that every thing must be silent before God, reason as well as sense, as nothing is more reasonable than to give ear to him when he speaks, *Ipse de se Deo credendum est*; that it must not therefore seem strange to reason that it is made to submit to authority in such sciences, as treating of subjects superior to reason, must be guided by another light, which can be only that of divine authority; that as in the very order of nature there are a thousand things which human understanding cannot comprehend, though beheld with human eyes, there is still greater reason to re-

spect the veils, which it has pleased God to throw over the mysteries of religion ; that lastly, God would cease to be what he is, if he was not incomprehensible, and that his wonderful works would no longer deserve that name, if human understanding could attain to them.

These are the lessons which philosophy gives to youth, not restless, bold and vain philosophy, such as ^d St. Paul advises the faithful to beware of, and which by explaining what it believes often annihilates what it ought to believe ; but a wise and solid philosophy, founded upon the actual principles and purest lights of natural reason.

d Beware lest any man spoil you the rudiments of the world, and through philosophy and vain deceit, not after Christ. Col. ii. 8.
after the tradition of men, after

BOOK the SIXTH.

Of the Government of the Classes and Colleges.

The INTRODUCTION.

THIS introduction shall contain two articles. In the first I shall shew the importance of the good education of youth ; in the second I shall enquire whether publick instruction is preferable to private.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

The importance of the good education of youth.

THE education of youth has been always considered by the great philosophers and the most famous lawgivers as the most certain source of the tranquillity and happiness both of private families and of states and empires. For what else, in short, is a republick or kingdom, but a large body, whose health and strength depend upon those of private families, which are the members and parts of it, and none of which can fail in the discharge of their function, but the whole body must be sensible of it? Now what is it but good education which enables all the citizens, and great men, and Princes above the rest, to perform their different functions in a deserving manner? Is it not evident that youth are as the nursery of the state? That it is renewed and perpetuated by them? That from among them all the fathers of families, all magistrates and ministers ; in a word, all persons placed in

in authority and power are taken? And is it not certain that the good education of those, who are one day to fill those places, will have an influence over the whole body of the state, and become, in a manner, the spirit and general character of the whole nation?

The laws indeed are the foundation of empires, and by preserving a regularity and good order in them, maintain them in peace and tranquillity. But whence have the laws themselves that force and vigour, but from good education, which trains up men in subjection to them, without which they are but a feeble barrier against the passions of mankind?

** Quid leges sine moribus vanæ proficiunt?*

^f Plutarch makes a judicious reflection on this subject, which well deserves to be considered: 'Tis in speaking of Lycurgus. "This wise lawgiver, ^g says he, did not think it convenient to set down his laws in writing, as judging that the strongest and most effectual means of making cities happy and people virtuous, was the impression that was made in the manners of the citizens, and rendered familiar and easy to them, by custom and habit. For the principles which education has fixed in their minds, continue firm and unshaken, as being founded upon an inward conviction, and even upon the will, which is always a much stronger and more lasting tie than that of force; insomuch that this education becomes the rule of youth, and serves them instead of a lawgiver."

Here, in my opinion, we have the justest notion that can be given of the difference there is between the laws and education.

The law, when it stands alone, is a severe and imperious mistress, ἀναγκη, which lays a man under re-

^e Horat. Od. xxv. lib. iii.

^f In vit. Lycurg.

^g Ὁ φελορς ἔδδεν τῶν ὀφελιμῶτων τῇ πολιτειᾷ. Arist. lib. v. Polit. cap. ix.

τῶν πολιτευμένων, εἰ μὴ ἔσονται εἰθισμένοι καὶ πεπαιδευμένοι ἐν τῇ πολιτειᾷ. Arist. lib. v. Polit. cap. ix.

strait in what he holds most dear, and whereof he is most jealous; I mean his liberty, which torments and contradicts him in every thing, is ^h deaf to his remonstrances and desires, never submits to any relaxation, ⁱ speaks always in a threatening tone, and presents him only with correction. Thus it is not surprising that men should shake off this yoke, as soon as ever they can with impunity, and that giving ear no longer to its offensive directions, they should abandon themselves to their natural inclinations, which the law had only restrained, without changing or destroying them.

But the case is far otherwise with education. Its government is gentle and engaging, an enemy to violence and constraint, which delights to act only by motives of persuasion, which endeavours to make its instructions relished, by speaking always with reason and truth, and tends only to make virtue more easy, by making it more amiable. Its lectures, which begin almost as soon as a child is born, grow up and gather strength with it, in time take deep root, soon pass from the memory and understanding to the heart, are daily imprinted in his manners by practice and habit, become a second nature in him, which it is scarce possible to change, and do the office of a present legislator all the rest of his life, putting him in mind of his duty upon every occasion, and engaging him to the practice of it. Ἡ παιδείσις νομοθετεῖ διαθεσὶν ἀπεργάζεσθαι πρὸς ἕκαστον αὐτῶν.

We must not wonder, after this, that the ancients have recommended the education of youth with so much care, and looked upon it as the surest means of making an empire permanent and flourishing. ^k It was a capital maxim with them, that children are more the property of the republick than of their pa-

^h Leges, rem surdam, inexorabilem esse . . . nihil laxamenti, nec veniæ habere, si modum excessetis. Liv. lib. ii. n. 3.

ⁱ Pœna metusque aberant, nec

verba minantia fixo ære legebantur. —Ovid. lib. ii. Metam. 'Tis a beautiful definition of the laws Verba minantia.

^k Arist. Pol. lib. viii. c. i.

rents ; and that thus their education should not be left to their fancies, but be intrusted to the care of the republick ; that for this reason children ought to be brought up, not in private, and in their father's houses, but in publick, by common masters, and under the same discipline ; that they may be early inspired with a love for their country, respect for its laws, and a taste for the principles and maxims of the state where-in they are to live. For every kind of government has its peculiar genius. The spirit and character of a republick is very different from that of a monarchy. Now this spirit and character are only to be imbibed by education.

It is in consequence of the principles I have laid down, that Lycurgus, Plato, Aristotle, and in a word, all that have left us any rules of government, have declared that the principal and most essential duty of a magistrate, a minister, a law-giver and a Prince, is to watch over the good education, first of their own children, who often succeed to their functions, and then of the citizens in general, who form the body of the republick ; and they observe that all the misfortunes of states arise only from the negligence of this two-fold duty.

¹ Plato quotes an illustrious example of it in the person of the famous Cyrus, the most accomplished Prince we read of in ancient history. He wanted none of the talents which were requisite to make a great man, excepting that we are here speaking of. Being wholly taken up with his conquests, he intrusted the education of his children with the ^m women. These young Princes were therefore brought up, not after the rough and severe discipline of the Persians, which had so well succeeded in Cyrus their father, but after the manner of the Medes ; that is, in luxury, softness and pleasures. No body ventured to contradict them in any thing. Their ears were open only to praise and flat-

¹ Plat. lib. iii. de leg.

^m The wife of Cyrus was daugh-

ter to the King of Media.

tery ; every thing bent their knee and bowed down before them. And it was thought essential to their grandeur to set an infinite distance between them and the rest of mankind, as if they had been of a different species from them. ⁿ Such an education, so remote from all reproof and correction, had, says Plato, the success which was to be expected from it. The two Princes, presently after the death of Cyrus, took up arms against each other, as not being able to bear either a superior or an equal ; and Cambyfes, grown absolute master, by the death of his brother, ran furiously into all sorts of excess, and brought the Persian empire to the brink of ruin. Cyrus left him a vast extent of provinces, immense revenues, and innumerable armies ; but all this turned to his ruin, for want of another benefit far more valuable, which he neglected to leave him, I mean a good education.

This judicious remark of Plato concerning Cyrus, entirely escaped me in reading the history of him by Xenophon. Nor did I reflect that this historian is absolutely silent upon the education of this Prince's children ; whereas he largely describes the excellent manner, in which the Persian youth were brought up, and Cyrus himself among the rest. This is the greatest fault a Prince can be guilty of.

Philip King of Macedon behaved in a very different manner. ^o Upon the birth of his son, when engaged in the midst of his conquests, and at the time of his greatest exploits, he wrote Aristotle the following letter. “ I give you notice that I have a son born ; but “ I am not so much obliged to the Gods for his birth, “ as for the happiness that he is come into the world, “ whilst there is an Aristotle living. For I hope that “ being brought up under your direction, and by your “ care, he will not prove unworthy of his father's “ glory, nor of the empire which I shall leave him.”

This was talking and thinking like a great Prince,

η ὅθεν ἐγένοντο διὰς πν εἰκὸς αὐτὸς φέντας.
γενέσθαι, τροφῇ ἀνεπιπλήκτω τρα

ο Aul, Gel, lib, ix, cap. 3.

who was thoroughly acquainted with the importance of a good education. Alexander had the same sentiments. An historian observes ^p that he loved Aristotle no less than his own father, *because, he said, he was indebted to the one for living, and to the other for living well.*

If it is a great fault in a Prince not to take care of the education of his own children; it is no less blamable to neglect that of the citizens in general. Plutarch very judiciously observes in the parallel he draws between Lycurgus and Numa, that it was a like negligence which rendered all the good designs and great institutions of the latter useless. The passage is very remarkable. "All the labour of Numa, says he, who took pains only to maintain the peace and tranquillity of Rome, vanished with him; and he was no sooner dead than the temple of Janus, which he had constantly kept shut, as if he had really confined the dæmon of war in it, was immediately opened again, and all Italy filled with blood and slaughter. Thus the most beautiful and best of his institutions was but of short duration, as it wanted the sole temple capable of maintaining it, which was the education of youth."

It was the opposite conduct which so long preserved the laws of Lycurgus in full force. For, as the same Plutarch observes, "the religion of an oath, which he required of the Lacedæmonians, would have been but a weak support after his death, if by education he had not imprinted the laws in their manners. By education he made them imbibe the love of his form of government almost with their milk, by making it in a manner familiar and natural to them. Thus we see the principal of his institutions subsisted above five hundred years like a good and a strong dye, which had penetrated into the very substance of the soul."

ῬΑΡΙΣΤΟΤΕΛΗ ΟΥΧ ἦΤΤΟΝ ΑΓΑΠΩΝ ἮΝ ΕΚΕΙΝΟΝ ΜΕΝ ΖΩΝ, ΔΙΑ ΤΟΥΤΟΝ ΔΕ ΚΑΛΩΣ (ὡς αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν) τοῦ πατρὸς, ὡς δι' ζῶν. Plut. in vit. Alex.

All these great men of antiquity were therefore persuaded, as Plutarch observes of *Lycurgus* in particular, that the most essential duty of a law-giver, and in consequence of a Prince, was to establish good rules for the education of youth, and to see that they were exactly observed. It is surprizing to consider how far they carried their attention and vigilance upon this point. They recommended precautions to be used in the choice of such persons as were to take care of children from their very birth, and it is plain that *Quintilian* has taken what he has said upon this subject from *Plato* and *Aristotle*, especially in what relates to nurses. ^q He requires with those wise philosophers, that in the choice that is made of them care should not only be taken that they had no bad modes of speaking, but also that a special regard should be had to their manners and disposition, and the reason he gives for it is admirable. "For what is learnt, says he, at that age is easily imprinted in the mind and leaves deep marks behind it, which are not easily to be effaced. As in the case of a new vessel, which long preserves a tincture of the first liquor poured into it; and like wool, which can never recover its first whiteness, after it has been once dyed; and the misfortune is that bad habits last longer than good ones."

'Tis for the same reason, that these philosophers look upon it as one of the most essential duties of those, who are intrusted with the education of children, to remove from them as far as possible the slaves and domesticks, whose discourses and examples may be prejudicial to them.

To this they add a piece of advice, which will condemn a great many Christian fathers and masters. They require that boys should not only be prevented

^q Et morum quidem in his haud dubie prior ratio est: rectè tamen etiam loquantur. . . Naturâ enim tenacissimi sumus eorum quæ rudibus annis percepimus: ut sapor quo nova imbuas durat, nec lanarum

colores, quibus simplex ille candor mutatus est, elui possunt. Et hæc ipsa magis pertinaciter hærent, quæ deteriora sunt. *Quintil. lib. i. cap. i.*

^r *Arist. Polit. lib. vii. c. 17.*

from

from
show
pictu
dece
dren
desire
the ex
oblig
ous,
skill t
from
the pa
tagiou
capab
breath
and th
ers, v
feared
agreee
other
inspire
conve
sented
ears,
breath
to the
of the
est year
nest an
the ori
ble, an
though
idea of
I sh
first ar
the Pa
the edu
parents

Von

from reading any comedies, or seeing any theatrical show, before they arrive at a certain age, but that all pictures, sculptures or tapestry, which may lay any indecent and dangerous image before the eyes of children should be absolutely banished their cities. They desire that the magistrates should carefully watch over the execution of this ordinance, and that they should oblige the workmen, even such as were most industrious, who refuse to submit to it, to carry their fatal skill to some other place. * They were persuaded that from such objects as these, that were adapted to flatter the passions and foment vice, there arose a kind of contagious and pestilential air, that was at length insensibly capable of infecting the masters themselves, who breathe it every moment without fear and precaution; and that these objects were like so many poisoned flowers, which exhale a deadly odour, the more to be feared, as it was the less suspected, and even appeared agreeable. These wise philosophers require on the other hand, that every thing in a city should teach and inspire virtue; inscriptions, pictures, statues, plays and conversations; and that from every thing that is presented to the senses, and should strike the eyes and ears, there should be formed a kind of salutary air and breath, which should imperceptibly insinuate itself into the souls of children, and assisted by the instruction of the master, should incline them from their tenderest years to the love of probity and a regard for the honest and the decent. There is a beauty and delicacy in the original text of which no other language is capable, and though this passage be somewhat long, I have thought proper to quote a great part of it to give some idea of Plato's style.

I shall now return to my subject, and conclude this first article with desiring the reader to consider, how the Pagans themselves always looked upon the care of the education of children, as the most essential duty of parents, magistrates and Princes, because of the last

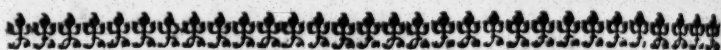
s Plat. lib. iii. de Rep.

VOL. IV.

M

impor-

importance during the rest of their lives to have good principles instilled into them from the beginning. In short, while their minds are yet tender and flexible, they may be turned and managed as we please; whereas age and long habit will make faults almost incorrigible. ^t *Frangas enim citius quam corrigas, quæ in prævum induruerunt.*



ARTICLE the SECOND.

Whether a private or publick education ought to be preferred.

DURING the whole time I have been engaged in the education of youth, being thoroughly sensible of the dangers which occur both in private houses and great schools, I have never presumed to give advice upon this subject, and have always contented myself with applying as carefully as I could to the instruction of the youth, which Divine providence committed to my care. I think I ought still to observe the same neutrality, and leave it to the prudence of parents to decide a question, which certainly admits of great difficulties on both sides.

^u Quintilian has discoursed upon this point with great prolixity and eloquence. The passage is one of the most beautiful in his work, and deserves to be read in the original. I shall here give an extract of it.

He begins with answering two objections, which are usually made against publick schools.

The first relates to purity of morals, which they pretend is here exposed to the greatest dangers. Was this the case, he thinks we should not hesitate a moment; ^w the care of living well being infinitely preferable to

^t Quintil. lib. i. cap. 3.

^u Quintil. lib. i. cap. 1.

^w Potior mihi ratio vivendi ho-

nestæ, quam vel optime dicendi videretur.

that of speaking well. But, he says, the danger is equal on both sides; that the whole depends upon the natural disposition of the children, and the care that is taken of their education; that usually the evil springs from the parents themselves, by the bad examples they set their children. They every day, says he, hear and see such things, as they ought to be ignorant of during their whole lives. * All this passes into habit, and soon after into nature. The poor children find themselves vicious before they know what vice is. Thus breathing nothing but luxury and pleasure, they do not derive their irregularity from the schools, but bring it thither.

The second objection concerns the advancement in their studies, which must be greater in a private house, where the master has but one scholar to instruct. Quintilian does not allow it for several reasons, which he lays down, but he adds, that this inconvenience, though it were real, is abundantly made good by the great advantages, which follow upon a publick education.

y First, a publick education emboldens a young man, gives him courage, early accustoms him not to be afraid of appearing in publick, and cures him of a certain pusillanimity, which naturally attends a private and retired life; whereas in secret he usually grows languid and dejected, he rusts in a manner, or else falls into an opposite extreme, becomes conceited, setting a greater value upon himself than upon others, from having no person to compare himself with.

2, and 3. In a publick school there are acquaintances formed, which often last as long as life, and there is

* Fit ex his consuetudo, deinde natura. Discunt hæc miseri, antequam sciant vitia esse. Inde soluti ac fluentes, non accipiunt è scholis mala ista, sed in scholas afferunt.

y Ante omnia futurus orator, cui in maxima celebritate & in media reip. luce vivendum est, assuescat jam à tenero non reformidare ho-

mines, neque illa solitaria & velut umbratili vita pallefcere. Excitant da mens & attollenda semper est, quæ in hujusmodi secretis aut languescit, & quendam velut in opaco situm ducit; aut contra tumescit inani persuasione. Necessè est enim sibi nimium tribuat, qui se nemini comparat.

a certain knowledge of the world to be acquired, which can be learnt only in society. Quintilian does not insist much upon these two advantages, and seems to set no great value on them.

4. The great advantage of schools is emulation. A child there improves both by what is said to himself, and what is said to others. He will every day see his master approve one thing, and correct another, blame the idleness of this boy, and commend the diligence of that, and will be the better for it all. The love of glory will serve him as an incentive to take pains. He will be ashamed to give place to his equals, and will take pains to excel the most forward. A good scholar will use his utmost endeavours to be the first in his form and carry the prize. ^z This gives ardour to young minds, and a noble emulation well managed without any mixture of malice, envy and pride, is one of the best means to lead them to the exercise of the greatest virtues and the most arduous undertakings.

5. Another advantage to be found in schools, is that a young man meets with such models among his companions as are within his reach, such as he flatters himself he may be able to come up to, and does not despair of surpassing one day. Whereas, if he was alone, it would be presumption in him to compare himself with his master.

6. Lastly, a master who has a numerous auditory, exerts himself quite otherwise than he who having but one scholar, can speak only coldly to him and in the way of conversation. Now it is incredible how useful this fire and vivacity of a master, who in explaining the beautiful passages of an author grows warm and transported, is, not only to make the boys attentive, but to inspire them with the same taste and sentiments, as he feels in addressing himself to them.

Quintilian does not fail to observe, that the opinion which he maintains is confirmed by universal practice,

^z Accendunt omnia hæc animos: & licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est.

and

and the authority of the most esteemed authors, and most famous legislators.

I might add, that this conduct has been observed with no less regularity since the time of Quintilian, and even amongst Christians. Ecclesiastical history supplies us with abundance of examples. That of St. Basil and St. Gregory Nazianzen is known to all the world. I shall relate it particularly at the close of this volume, and shall now only observe that the families of these two illustrious friends were the most Christian, that were then in the church. They thought however they might commit the dearest treasure they had in the world to the publick schools, and God blessed their pious intentions with a success, which far exceeded their expectations. Shall we venture to charge this conduct with imprudence and presumption?

On the other side, may we venture to condemn the religious apprehension of Christian parents, who upon seeing the dangers which occur in colleges (and it must be owned too that they are great) and being less solicitous about their children's improvement in the sciences, than to preserve to them the precious and inestimable treasure of their innocence, determine to bring them up under their own inspection in a family, where they may hear nothing but discreet conversation, where they may see nothing but good examples, and from whence whatever may be capable of corrupting the purity of their morals is carefully removed as much as possible. There are now certainly some such houses, but the number of them is very few.

Besides the two usual methods of bringing up youth, the boarding them out at publick schools, or instructing them in private; there is a third, which holds the mean between both, and seems to unite them together; and this is, to send children to school to improve by the emulation of the classes, and keeping them at home the rest of the time. By this means perhaps they avoid a part of the dangers, as they are also deprived of one part of the advantages of the college; amongst

M 3

which

which we ought certainly to reckon the order, regularity and discipline, which by the sound of a clock points out all the exercises of the day in an uniform manner, and the simplicity and frugality of their way of living, which are very different from the indulgence of their father's houses, and serve only to render them too nice and tender. ^a This observation was made by an illustrious magistrate in times past, in a passage which I have quoted in the first volume of this work. "My father, says this magistrate, said
 "he had two views in the education of the college;
 "the one was the gay and innocent conversation of
 "the youths; the other was the school discipline, to
 "make us forget the endearments of our home, and
 "as it were to cleanse us in fresh water. I think those
 "eighteen months I spent at college were of great
 "service to me—I learnt the frugal life of the scholars, and how to portion out my time."

Another advantage of colleges, (supposing them to be such as they should be,) and the greatest of all, is, that the boys are there thoroughly taught their religion. They learn there to take the knowledge of it from its source, to know the true spirit and real greatness of it, and to fortify themselves by solid principles against the dangers which faith and piety too frequently meet with in the world. It is not impossible, but certainly it is very rare, to find this advantage in private houses.

Now what must we conclude from all these principles and all these facts? There is no college which cannot produce a great number of examples of youth who have had an excellent education there, and been improved both in the sciences and in piety; nor is there any one, which has not seen with grief a very great number miscarry; and the case is the same in private houses.

The conclusion which in my opinion we should draw from hence is, that as the dangers are very great to youth on all sides; it is the duty of parents to ex-

^a Henry de Mesmes tom. i. pag. 75.

amine well before God what course they ought to take, equitably to weigh the advantages and inconveniencies which occur on both sides, to be determined in so important a deliberation, only by the motives of religion, and above all to make such a choice of masters and schools, in case they follow that course, as may, if not intirely dissipate, at least diminish their just apprehensions.

The plan and division of this treatise.

To enter usefully into the particulars of what concerns the interior government of the classes and colleges, it is necessary to consider separately the duty of the different persons who are employed in the education of youth, and have any relation to it. But as there are some general directions which almost belong to all alike, I will begin this treatise with them; that I may avoid the repetitions, which would be otherwise unavoidable.



PART the FIRST.

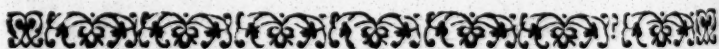
General instructions upon the education of youth.

I Shall begin with desiring the reader, when I talk of instructions, rules, precepts and duties, which are terms that I cannot avoid employing in the subject I treat of, to do me so much justice as to think that I do not pretend to prescribe laws to any one, or to set up for a master or censurer of my brethren. My only design is to assist, if I can, such young persons as are intrusted with the education of children, who for want of experience are subject to commit a great many faults, as I own, I myself have formerly done; and I shall think myself very happy, if I can contribute to make them avoid them by laying my reflections before

M 4

them,

them, or rather those of the ablest masters in point of education. For I shall here scarce say any thing of my own, especially in this first part, which is the most important, and should serve as the basis and foundation to all the rest. Athens and Rome shall still lend me their assistance. I shall likewise make use of two modern authors, and often without quoting them. These are M. de Fenelon archbishop of Cambray and Mr. Locke, whose writings upon this subject are justly very much esteemed. The last has some particular sentiments, which I would not always adopt. Besides I question whether he was well skilled in the Greek tongue, and in the study of the Belles Lettres, at least he seems not to set the value upon them they deserve. But both of them may be of very great use with relation to morals and conduct, not only to young masters, but to persons of greater experience. I have taken the liberty of making use of the labours of others, as I have thought fit, and I am inclined to think that the publick will not be displeased at it, being content to have good things laid before them without being concerned from whence they are taken. I shall reduce to twelve or thirteen articles the general instructions which relate to the education of youth.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

What end we should propose to ourselves in education.

TO succeed in the education of youth, the first step in my opinion is to lay down the end we should propose, to enquire by what means it is to be obtained,

b Decernatur primum & quo tendamus, & qua; non sine perito aliquo cui explorata sint ea, in quæ procedimus. . . . Hic tritissima

quæque via & celeberrima maximo decipit. Nihil ergo magis præstandum, quam ne, pecorum ritu, sequamur antecedentium gregem, pergentes,

obtain
guide,
it be g
singula
questio
princip
ther w
venien
who h
than r
what
whenc
is han
certain
the re
greater
as to h
choic

If v
discern
is not
to learn
their r
up syll
paper.
and va
they c
at ther
ments
would

pergente
sed qua
sed ad fi
Ita, dur
dere, qu
præcipit
ror. . .
humanis
bus plac
mi turb
beat. cap

obtained, and to chuse out an able and experienced guide, who is able to conduct us safely to it. Though it be generally a very wise and judicious rule to avoid all singularity and to follow the received customs, yet I question whether in the point we now treat of this principle does not admit of some exception, and whether we ought not to apprehend the dangers and inconveniencies of blindly following the footsteps of those who have gone before us, so as to consult custom more than reason, and the governing our actions rather by what others do than by what they should do; from whence it often happens that an error once established is handed down from age to age, and becomes almost a certain law, from a notion that we ought to act like the rest of mankind, and follow the example of the greater number. But human nature is not so happy as to have the greatest number always make the best choice, and we too frequently observe the contrary.

If we consult our reason ever so little, it is easy to discern that the end which masters should have in view, is not barely to teach their scholars Greek and Latin, to learn them to make exercises and verses, to charge their memory with facts and historical dates, to draw up syllogisms in form, or to trace lines or figures upon paper. These branches of learning I own are useful and valuable, but as means and not as the end; when they conduct us to other things, and not when we stop at them; when they serve us as preparatives and instruments for better knowledge, without which the rest would be useless. Youth would have cause to com-

pergentes, non qua eundum est, sed qua itur . . . non ad rationem, sed ad similitudinem vivimus. . . . Ita, dum unusquisque mavult credere, quam judicare, versat nos & præcipitat traditus per manus error. . . . Non tam bene cum rebus humanis agitur, ut meliora pluribus placeant: argumentum pessimæ turba est. Senec. lib. de vit. beat. cap. i. & ii.

c Liberalia studia hæcenus utilia sunt, si præparent ingenium, non detinent. . . . Rudimentum sunt nostra, non opera. . . . Non discere debemus ista, sed didicisse. . . . Quid ex his artibus metum demit, cupiditatem eximit, libidinem frænat? . . . Nihil apud illas invenies quod vetet timere, vetet cupere: quæ quisquis ignorat, alia frustra scit. Senec. Epist. 88.

plain, if they were condemned to spend eight or ten of the best years of their life in learning, at a great expence and with incredible pains, one or two languages, and some other matters of a like nature, which perhaps they would seldom have occasion to use. The end of masters in the long course of their studies is to habituate their scholars to serious application of mind, to make them love and value the sciences, and to cultivate in them such a taste as shall make them thirst after them when they are gone from school; to point out the method of attaining them, and make them thoroughly sensible of their use and value; and by that means dispose them for the different employments to which it shall please God to call them. Besides this, the end of masters should be to improve their hearts and understandings, to protect their innocence, to inspire them with principles of honour and probity, to train them up to good habits, to correct and subdue in them by gentle means the ill inclinations they shall be observed to have, ^d such as pride, insolence, an high opinion of themselves, and a saucy vanity continually employed in lessening others, a blind self-love, solely attentive to its own advantage, a spirit of raillery which is pleased with offending and insulting others, an insolence and sloth, which renders all the good qualities of the mind useless.

^d In primis insolentiam & nimiam æstimationem sui, tumoremque elatum supra cæteros & amorem rerum suarum cæcum & improvidum, dicacitatem & su-

perbiam contumeliis gaudentem desidiâ dissolutionemque segnis animi indormientis sibi. Senec. lib. de vit. beat. cap. 1.

ARTICLE the SECOND.

To study the character of children, in order to be able to manage them well.

EDucation properly speaking is the art of managing and forming the mind. Of all sciences it is the most difficult, the most extraordinary, and at the same time the most important, but yet not sufficiently studied. To judge of it by common experience one would say that of all the animals, man is the most untractable. 'Tis the judicious reflection which Xenophon makes in the beautiful preface to his Cyropedia. After he has observed, that we never see flocks of sheep or oxen rebel against their leaders, whereas nothing is more common amongst men; it seems, says he, a natural conclusion from hence, that it is more difficult to command over men than over beasts. But casting his eyes upon Cyrus who governed so many provinces in peace, and was equally beloved by the people he had conquered and his natural subjects, ^e he concludes, that the fault must arise not from those who are unwilling to obey, but from the superiors who know not how to govern.

The same may be said in some measure of those who are intrusted with the education of children. ^f It must be owned that the mind of man even in his infancy bears the yoke with impatience, and naturally inclines to what is forbidden. ^g But what we must conclude from hence is, that for this very reason he requires more precaution and address, and that he

^e Οὕτε τῶν ἀδυνάτων οὔτε τῶν χαλεπῶν ἔργων ἐστὶν ἀνθρώπων ἀρχεῖν, ἢν τις ἐπισταμένως τοῦτο πράττει.

^f Natura contumax est humanus animus, &c. in contrarium atque arduum nitens, sequiturque faci-

lius quam ducitur. Senec. de Clem. lib. 1. cap. 24.

^g Nullum animal morosius est, nullum majore arte tractandum, quam homo: nulli magis arcendum. Ibid. cap. 17.

yields more willingly to mildness than violence, *Sequitur facilius, quam ducitur*. We sometimes see a high-mettled horse caper and gnaw the bit, and refuse to obey the spur; 'tis because he, who is upon him, has a hard and heavy hand, knows not how to guide him, and checks the bridle when he ought not. Give this horse, who has a very tender mouth, an understanding and skilful rider, and he will check all his sallies, and with a light hand govern him with pleasure, *generosi atque nobiles equi melius facili fræno reguntur*.

^h To compass this end, the master's first care is thoroughly to study and search into the genius and character of the children, for by this he must regulate his conduct. ⁱ There are some who are lazy and remiss, unless they are continually called upon, and others cannot bear to be imperiously treated; some will be restrained by fear, and others on the contrary discouraged. We can gain nothing out of some, but by meer labour and application; and others only will study by fits and starts; to endeavour to bring them all to a level, and make them submit to one and the same rule is to attempt to force nature. The prudence of the master will consist in keeping a medium, is equally removed from the two extremes; for here the ill so closely borders upon the good, that it is easy to mistake the one for the other, ^k and 'tis this which renders the management of youth so difficult. Too much liberty makes way for licentiousness; and too much constraint makes them stupid; commenda-

^h Senec. *ibid.* cap. 24.

ⁱ Sunt quidam, nisi infiteris, remissi; quidam imperia indignantur: quosdam continet metus, quosdam debilitat: alios continuatio extundit, in aliis plus impetus facit. Quintil. lib. i. cap. 3.

^k Difficile regimen est. . . & diligenti observatione res indiget. Utrumque enim, & quod extolendum, & quod deprimendum,

similibus alitur: facile autem etiam attendentem similia decipiunt. Crescit licentiâ spiritus, servitute comminuitur: affurgit, si laudatur; & in spem sui bonam adducitur; sed eadem istam insolentiam generant. Sic itaque inter utrumque regendus est, ut modo frænis utamur, modo stimulis. Senec. de Ira, lib. ii. cap. 21.

tion excites and encourages, but it also inspires vanity and presumption. We must therefore keep a just temper, and hold an even hand between these two inconveniencies, after the example of Isocrates in the case of Ephorus and Theopompus, who were of a very different character. ¹ This great master, who was as successful in his instructions as his writings, (as appears from his scholars and his books) making use of a bridle to give a check to the vivacity of the one, and a spur to awaken the sluggishness of the other, did not aim at reducing them both to the same standard. His end in taking away from the one and adding to the other was to carry each of them to that perfection, of which their natural capacity would admit.

This model we must follow in the education of children. They carry within them the principles, and in a manner the seeds of all virtues and vices; and the principal point is thoroughly to study at first their genius and character, to become acquainted with their humour, their disposition and talents; and above all, to discover their passions and prevailing inclinations; not with a view or expectation of intirely changing their temper, of making him gay, for instance, who is naturally grave, or him serious who is of a lively and chearful disposition. It is with certain characters, as with personal defects, they may be somewhat redressed, but not absolutely cured. Now the way of growing acquainted in this manner with children, is to give them great liberty to discover their inclinations whilst young, to let them follow their natural bent, in order to discern it the better; to com-

¹ Clarissimus ille præceptor Isocrates, quem non magis libri benedixisse, quam discipuli benedixisse testantur, dicebat se calcabris in Ephoro, contra autem in Theopompo frænis uti solere. Alterum enim exultantem verborum audacia reprimebat, alterum cunc-

tantem & quasi verecundantem incitabat. Neque eos similes effecit inter se sed tantum alteri affinxit, de altero limavit, ut id confirmaret in utroque, quod utriusque natura pateretur. Quintil. lib. ii. c. 8. Cic. lib. iii. de Orat. n. 36.

ply with their little infirmities, to encourage them to let us see them; to observe them whilst they think least of it, especially at their^m play, when they shew their tempers most; for children are naturally plain and without reserve; but as soon as they think themselves taken notice of, they throw themselves under a restraint, and keep upon their guard.

ⁿ It is of great moment also to distinguish the nature of the faults which prevail in youth. In general, we may hope that those, wherein age, bad education, ignorance, being seduced, and ill example have any share, are not without remedy; and on the other hand we may believe that such as are naturally rooted in the mind, and in the corruption of the heart will be very difficult to be got over, such as double dealing and hypocrisy, flattery, an inclination to tell stories, to sow divisions, to envy and detraction, a disposition to scoff, and especially at the advice given them, and at things sacred, a natural opposition to reason, and, what is a consequence of it, a readiness to take things in a wrong sense.



ARTICLE the THIRD.

To assume an immediate authority over the children.

THIS maxim is of the utmost moment during their whole education, and for all persons who are charged with it. By authority, I mean a certain air and ascendant which imprints respect and procures obedience. 'Tis neither age nor stature, the tone of the voice, nor threatening, by which this authority is to be obtained; but an even, firm, moderate disposition of mind, which is always master of itself, is

^m Mores se inter ludendum lib. i. cap. 3.
ⁿ Amplicius detegunt, Quintilian, n Lettres de piété.

guided only by reason, and never acts by fancy or passion.

It is this qualification and talent, which keeps all in order, establishes an exact discipline, sees that commands are observed, saves the trouble of reprimands, and prevents almost all punishments. Now it is from the very first entrance upon their government, that parents and masters should assume this ascendant. If they do not seize upon this favourable moment, and possess themselves early of this authority, they will have all the pains in the world to do it afterwards, and the child will domineer at last. ° *Animum*, and we may likewise say, *Puerum rege, qui, nisi paret, imperat*. This is literally true, and scarce to be believed, if a constant experience did not every day confirm it. There is deep rooted in the heart of man a love of independency, which discloses itself from our childhood, and even at the breast. P What mean those cries, those tears, the threatening gesture of the eyes sparkling with rage, in an infant, when resolved to gain his point with all his force, or inflamed with jealousy against one another? “I have “seen, says ^q St. Augustin, a child burning with “jealousy. He could not yet talk, but with a pale “countenance could cast a furious look at another “child, who was sucking with him at the same “breast.” *Vidi ego & expertus sum zelantem parvulum. Nondum loquebatur, & intuebatur pallidus amaro aspectu collaetaneum suum.*

Here we have the time and moment pointed out for subduing this bad inclination in a child, by accustoming him from the cradle to controul his desires, not to pursue his own fancies, but in a word, to submit and obey. If we never gave children what they

o Horat. Sat. II. lib. 1.

p Flendo petere, etiam quod noxie daretur: indignari acriter. . . non ad nutum voluntatis obtemperantibus: feriendo nocere niti, quantum potest, quia non

obeditur imperiis, quibus perniciose obediretur. Ita imbecillitas membrorum infantium innocens est, non animus infantium. S. Aug. Conf. lib. i. cap. 7.

q Ibid.

cried

cried for, they would learn to go without it, nor would there be so much bawling and uneasiness before they were brought to temper, and consequently they would not be so troublesome to themselves or others as they are for want of being brought up in this manner from their infancy.

When I speak thus, I do not mean absolutely that no indulgence should be shewn to children, I am very far from such a disposition. I say only we must not give them what they cry for, and if they redouble their importunity to obtain it, we must let them know, that they are expressly refused it for that very reason; and this must be held as an indisputable maxim, that after they have once been refused any thing, we must resolve never to grant it to their crying or importuning, unless we have a mind to teach them to become impatient and peevish by rewarding them for their peevishness and impatience.

We see with some parents that the children never ask for any thing at table, whatever is set before them, but take all that is given them with pleasure and thankfulness; in other houses they ask for every thing they see, and must be served before all the company. Now whence arises this remarkable difference, but from the different education they have had? The younger children are, the less their irregular desires should be satisfied. The less reason they have, the more necessary it is for them to submit to absolute power and the direction of those in whose hands they are. When once they have taken this turn, and custom has subdued their will, they are cured for the rest of their lives, and easily learn to obey.

• Adeo in teneris consuescere multum est.

What I have said of children in their childhood, may be applied to them at any other age. The first care of a scholar who is put under a new master, is to

r Geor, lib. ii. v. 272.

study a
attemp
better
and cu
calmly
reason
himsel
mits,
where
is happ
standin
time,



A I

T
and lo
and a
ment
partic
stead
itself,
called
come
follow
its in
hope
pass,
in kn
whic

r T
gifter
90.

study and sound him. There is nothing he does not attempt, he spares no industry or artifice to get the better of him if he can. When he sees all his pains and cunning is to no purpose, and that the master calmly and quietly opposes them with a gentle and reasonable resolution, which always ends in making himself obeyed, he then yields, and chearfully submits, and this kind of little war, or rather skirmish, where on both sides they have tried each other's forces, is happily concluded with a peace and a good understanding, which make them easy all the rest of the time, they are to live together.



ARTICLE the FOURTH.

To make oneself beloved and feared.

THE respect, upon which the authority I have spoke of is founded, includes two things, fear and love, which lend each other a mutual assistance, and are the two great springs and hinges of all government in general, and of the conduct of children in particular. As they are of an age wherein reason instead of having the superiority, scarce begins to shew itself, it is requisite that fear should sometimes be called in to its assistance, and take its place; but if it comes alone, and the allurements of pleasure does not follow close at its heels, it is not long regarded, and its instructions produce but a slight effect, which the hope of impunity soon removes. Hence it comes to pass, that in point of education the greatest skill lies in knowing how to blend discreetly together a force, which shall keep children within due bounds without

f Timor, non diuturnus magister officii. Cic. Phillip. ii. n. 90. Imbecillis est pudoris ma-

gister timor, qui si quando paululum aberraverit, statim spe impunitatis exultat. Id. in Hortens. discourage-

discouragement, and a mildness which shall gain upon them without indulging them too much. *Sit rigor, sed non exasperans; sit amor, sed non emolliens.* On one hand the master's mildness removes whatever is hard and austere from his office of command, and blunts the point of it. *Hebetat aciem imperii*, as Seneca beautifully expresses it. On the other hand his prudent severity fixes and restrains the lightness and inconstancy of an age, which as yet admits but of little reflection, and is incapable of governing itself. It is therefore this happy mixture of mildness and severity, of love and fear, which establishes the master's authority, which is the soul of government, and inspires the scholars with respect, which is the firmest band of obedience and submission; in such sort however that kindness and love prevail, and are most frequent on both sides.

But some will say, though this manner of governing children by kindness and gentleness is easy perhaps to a private tutor, is it practicable in the case of a principal of a college, a regent of a class, or a master, who has a great many scholars in one common chamber? and how is it possible in all these places to keep up an exact discipline, without which no good is to be expected, and at the same time to gain the love of the scholars? I own that nothing is more difficult in this circumstance than to keep up a just medium betwixt too great severity and an excessive indulgence; but the thing is not impossible, since we see it practised by persons who have the uncommon talent of making themselves feared, and still more beloved. The whole depends upon the behaviour of the masters. If they are such as they should be, their success will answer their desires. Quintilian has pointed out to us the qualities of a good master, and how he may gain the affection of his scholars. The passage is very beautiful, and contains admirable advice. I shall give it almost as it stands.

t S. Greg. Pap.

As

As it is a general principle that love is to be procured only by love, *si vis amari ama*. The first thing ^u Quintilian requires, is, “ that a master should “ above all things assume a fatherly affection for his “ scholars ; and that he should look upon himself as “ in the place of those, who committed them to him ; “ whence he must consequently borrow the gentleness, patience, and sentiments of kindness and “ tenderness, natural to them.”

w “ That he be not vicious himself, nor allow of “ vice in others ; that he be severe without roughness, and gentle without indulgence, lest he should “ be hated for the one, and despised for the other.”

“ x That he be not easily carried away with anger “ and passion ; but at the same time does not shut his “ eyes to such faults, as deserve to be corrected.”

“ y That in his manner of teaching he be plain, “ patient and exact, and rely more upon good order “ and method and his own assiduity than excessive “ pains in his pupils ; that he take pleasure in answering all the questions they ask him, and that he be “ even beforehand with them in asking questions of “ them, if they don’t ask him.”

“ z That he does not refuse upon proper occasions “ to give them the praises they deserve ; but withal “ that he be not too lavish in bestowing them. For “ as the one discourages, the other inspires a dangerous security.

“ a If at any time he is obliged to reprimand them,

u Sumat ante omnia parentis erga discipulos suos animum, ac succedere se in eorum locum, à quibus sibi liberi traduntur, existimet.

w Ipse nec habeat vitia, nec ferat. Non austeritas ejus tristis, non dissoluta sit comitas : ne inde odium, hinc contemptus oriatur.

x Minime iracundus, nec tamen eorum, quæ emendanda erunt, dissimulator.

y Simplex in docendo, patiens laboris, assiduus potius quam im-

modicus. Interrogantibus libenter respondeat : non interrogantes percontetur ultro.

z In laudandis discipulorum dictionibus nec malignus, nec effusus : quia res altera tædium laboris altera securitatem parit.

a In emendando, quæ corrigenda erunt, non acerbus, minimeque contumeliosus. Nam id quidem multos à proposito studentium fugat, quod quidem sic objurgant, quasi oderint.

“ that

“ that he be neither severe nor shocking. For what
 “ gives many an aversion to study is, their masters
 “ rebuke them with as gloomy an air as if they were
 “ the objects of their hatred.”

“ ^b That he speak often to them of virtue, and al-
 “ ways with high encomiums; that he lay it con-
 “ stantly before them under an advantageous and a-
 “ greeable form, as the most excellent of all blessings,
 “ and most worthy a reasonable man, and most ho-
 “ nourable to him, as a quality absolutely necessary to
 “ procure him the affection and esteem of a’l mankind,
 “ and as the only means of being truly happy. The
 “ more frequently he puts them in mind of their du-
 “ ty, the less he will be obliged to punish them.—
 “ Let him every day say something to them which
 “ they may carry away with them, and be the bet-
 “ ter for. Though what they read may furnish them
 “ with abundance of good examples, what he says to
 “ them by word of mouth has a very different force,
 “ and produces a quite different effect, especially if
 “ it comes from a master, whom children that are
 “ well brought up both love and honour. For it can-
 “ not be imagined, how easily we are led to copy af-
 “ ter those, of whom we have a favourable opinion.”

These are the qualifications which Quintilian re-
 quires in a master of rhetoric; (and they equally con-
 cern all such as are intrusted with the instruction of
 youth,) to the end, says he, that as in this ^c class there
 are usually a great number of scholars, ^d the wisdom of
 the

^b Plurimus ei de honesto ac bo-
 no fit sermo. Nam quo sapius
 monuerit, hoc rarius castigabit.
 . . . Ipse aliquid, imo multa quo-
 tidie dicat, quæ secum audita re-
 ferant. Licet enim satis exem-
 plorum ad imitandum ex lectione
 suppetit, tamen viva illa, ut
 dicitur, vox alit plenius, Præci-
 pueque præceptoris, quem discipu-
 li, si modo recte sunt instituti, &
 amant, & verentur. Vix autem

dici potest; quanto libentius imi-
 temur eos, quibus favemus. This
 passage may be applied to the case
 of manners.

^c They were several years upon
 the study of rhetoric; whence the
 scholars in the same class, might
 be of different ages.

^d Major adhibenda tum cura
 est, ut & teneriores annos ab in-
 juria sanctitas docentis custodiat,
 & ferociore à licentia gravitas de-
 terreat.

the mas
 from be
 upon th
 renders
 enough
 he also
 exact d
 master
 ed and
 shorter
 and rep
 easy an
 gentler
 less suc
 on at t
 vince
 which

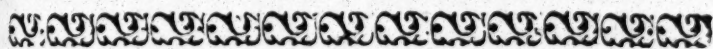
Q. Q.

A
 than t
 I shall
 use of
 rules

Fin
 Th
 child
 medy

terreat,
 mam p
 discipli

the master may preserve those, who are very young, from being corrupted, and his gravity lay a restraint upon the licentiousness of such as a more advanced age renders more difficult to be governed. For it is not enough that he be a man of probity himself, unless he also knows how to keep his scholars in order by an exact discipline. We need make no doubt, but a master of this character will make himself both beloved and feared. But a great many think of taking a shorter and surer road, which is that of correction and reproof. It must be owned that it seems more easy and is less troublesome to masters, than that of gentleness and insinuation; but at the same time far less successful. For we scarce ever arrive by correction at the only true end of education, which is to convince the mind, and inspire a sincere love of virtue; which I proceed to treat in the following articles.



ARTICLE the FIFTH.

Of Correction.

AS this article is of the utmost importance in education, I shall dwell somewhat longer upon it than the rest, and divide it into two parts. In the first, I shall point out the inconveniencies and dangers of the use of the rod: In the second, I shall lay down the rules we ought to follow in this kind of correction.

First the inconveniencies and dangers of correction.

The most common and shortest way of correcting children is by the rod, which is almost the only remedy that is known or made use of by those who are

terreat. Neque vero satis est summum, quoque ad se mores astrinxerim præstare abstinentioniam, nisi rit.

disciplinæ severitate convenienti-

intrusted

intrusted with the education of youth. But this remedy becomes often a more dangerous evil than those they would cure, if employ'd out of season, or beyond measure. For besides that the corrections of the rod and the lash, we are now speaking of, have something indecent, mean and servile in them, they have nothing in themselves to remedy any fault committed, nor is it likely that such a correction may become useful to a child, if the shame of suffering for having done ill has not a greater power over his mind, than the punishment itself. Besides, these corrections give an incurable aversion to the things we should endeavour to make them love. They do not change the humour, nor work any reformation in the natural disposition, but only restrain it for a time, and serve to make the passions break out with more violence, when they are at liberty. They often stupify the mind, and harden it in evil. ^e For a child, that has so little honour as to be insensible to reproof, will accustom himself to blows like a slave, and grow obstinate against punishment.

Must we therefore conclude, that we ought never to make use of this sort of correction? That is not my meaning. For I am far from condemning in general the use of a rod, after what has been said of it in several places of Scripture, and especially in the book of proverbs. ^f *He that spareth his rod hateth his son, but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes.* ^g *Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child, but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him.* The Holy Scripture by these words and others of a like nature, may perhaps design punishment in general, and condemn the mistaken tenderness and blind indulgence of parents, who shut their eyes upon the vices of their children, and thereby render them incorrigible. But

^e Si cui tam est mens illiberalis, ut objurgatione non corrigatur: is etiam ad plagas, ut pessima quæque mancipia, durabitur,

Quintil. lib. i. c. 3.

^f Prov. xiii. 24.

^g Prov. xxii. 15.

supposing that the word rod is to be taken literally, it is very probable that this correction is advised for such dispositions, as are rude, gross, indocile, untractable, and insensible to reproof and honour. For can we imagine, that the scripture which abounds in charity and gentleness, and is so full of compassion for the weaknesses of a more advanced age, that the scripture should advise to treat children with severity, when faults are frequently rather the effects of levity than wickedness?

I therefore conclude, that the punishments we are here speaking of may be used, but ought to be employ'd very seldom, and for faults of consequence. These corrections are like the violent remedies, which are used in violent diseases; they purge, but alter the constitution and wear out the organs. A mind conducted by fear is always the weaker for it. ^h Whoever therefore has the direction of others, if he would heal should first use gentle remonstrances, try what he can do by persuasion, make honesty and justice grateful if possible, and inspire an hatred for vice, and a passion for virtue. If this first attempt does not succeed, he may pass to stronger methods and sharper reproaches; and lastly, when all this has been employed to no purpose, he may then proceed to corrections, but by degrees, still leaving the hopes of pardon in view, and reserving the greatest for extreme faults and those he despairs of.

Let us compare a man of this wisdom and moderation, with a master that is hasty, passionate and violent, such as Orbilius was whom his scholar Horace

^h Seneca, after reporting at large the behaviour of a discreet physician towards his patient, makes an application of it to governors thus. Ita legum præsidem civitatisque rectorem decet, quamdiu potest verbis, & his mollioribus, ingenia curare; ut facienda suadeat cupiditatemque honesti & æqui conciliet animis, faciatque vi-

tiorum odium, præcium virtutum: transeat deinde ad tristiores orationem, qua moneat adhuc & exprobrat: novissime ad pœnas, & has adhuc leves & revocabiles decurrat: ultima supplicia sceleribus ultimis ponat, ut nemo pereat, nisi quem perire etiam peruntis interfit. De Ira. lib. i. cap. 5.

stiles ⁱ *Plagofus*; or with a person intrusted by Cicero with the education of his children, who was passionate to a degree of madness. ^k This was a slave who had been made free, that Tully highly valued in other respects, and in whom he reposed an entire confidence. *Dionysius quidem mihi in amoribus est. Puero autem aiunt eum FURENTER IRASCI. Sed homo nec dictior, nec sanctior fieri potest.* For my own part I do not here discern either good understanding or prudence in Tully. Prejudiced in favour of this freedman, he does not seem to have any regard to the charge against him, as if such a fault could be covered by learning, or subsist with the quality of a man of very great probity, *sed homo nec doctior, nec sanctior fieri potest.* He was afterwards undeceived, when that cowardly and perfidious slave had betray'd him.

^l Which of the two masters, says Seneca, shall we most esteem? He who strives to correct his scholars by prudent advice and motives of honour, or another who shall lash them to pieces for not repeating their lesson as they ought, and faults of a like nature? If we undertook to manage a horse, could it be done by beating him in this violent manner? Or would it not be a certain way of making him apt to start and fling, and to be unruly and restive? An able groom can break him better by caressing him with a gentle hand; and why must men be treated with more cruelty than beasts?

II. Rules to be observed in correction.

1. It is certain that if children are early accustomed

ⁱ A lasher. One that is given to blows and whipping. Ep. i. lib. 2.

^k Ad. Att. Ep. i. lib. 6.

^l Uter præceptor liberalibus studiis dignior, qui excarnificabit discipulos, si memoria illis non consistenterit, aut si parum agilis in legendo oculus hæserit: an qui monitionibus & verecundia emenda-

re ac docere malit? Numquidnam æquum est, gravius homini & durius imperari, quam imperatur animalibus mutis? Atqui equum non crebris verberibus exterre domandi peritus magister. Fiet enim formidolosus & contumax nisi eum tactu blandiente permulceris. Senec. de Clem. lib. i. cap. 26.

to submission and obedience by the steady behaviour of parents and masters, and that care is taken never to depart from this steadiness, till such time as fear and respect are grown familiar to them, and there appears not the least shadow of constraint in their submission and obedience, this happy habit contracted from their most tender years, will almost spare the necessity of any future punishments. What usually obliges us to have recourse to that extremity, is the blind indulgence given to children at first, which makes their faults almost incorrigible, because neglected in their birth.

2. Nothing is of greater consequence than rightly to discern what faults deserve to be punished, and what should be pardoned. In the number of the latter, I place all such, as happen through inadvertency or ignorance, and which cannot pass for the effects of malice and a bad intention, as only those which arise from the will can make us culpable. ^m An officer of Augustus, as he was one day walking out with him, was so frightened at the sight of a wild boar, that made directly towards them, that he saved himself by exposing the Emperor to danger. The fault was considerable, but as it was not designed, Augustus was satisfied with turning it into a jest. *Rem non minimi periculi, qui tamen fraus aberat, in jocum vertit.*

I place in the same rank all the faults of levity and childhood, which will be infallibly corrected by time and age.

Neither do I think we ought to use the correction of a rod for such failures as children may commit in learning to read, write or dance; or even in learning the languages, Latin, Greek, &c. except in certain cases which I shall mention. Other punishments should be contrived for such faults, as do not seem to proceed from any ill disposition of the heart, or an inclination to shake off the yoke of authority.

3. It is a great merit in masters to be able to find out different kinds and degrees of punishments to cor-

^m Sueton, in vit. Aug. c. 67.

rect their scholars. It depends upon them to fix an idea of shame and disgrace upon a thousand things which are indifferent of themselves, and only become corrections by the idea affixed to them. I know a school of poor children, where one of the greatest and most sensible punishments that is inflicted upon such as offend, is to make them sit on a separate bench with their hats on, when any considerable person comes into the schools. 'Tis a torment to them to remain in that state of humiliation, whilst the rest are standing and uncovered. A thousand things of the like nature may be invented, and I mention this instance, only to shew that the whole depends upon the industry of the master. There are children of quality, which have been kept in as much awe through an apprehension of going without shoes, as others of being whipt.

4. The only vice in my opinion, which deserves a severe treatment, is obstinacy in mischief; but then this obstinacy must be voluntary, certain and strongly marked. We must not give this name to faults of levity and inconstancy, into which children, who are naturally forgetful and heedless, may frequently fall, without giving room to imagine, that they arise from badness of disposition. I suppose that a child has told a lie. If it was through a violent fear, the fault is much the less, and deserves only to be gently reprimanded. If it is voluntary, deliberate and obstinately persisted in, it is then a fault indeed, and certainly deserves to be punished. Yet I do not think that for the first time we should make use of the correction of the rod, which is the last extremity children should be exposed to. ⁿ Will a father of good understanding, says Seneca, disinherit a son for his first fault, how con-

ⁿ Numquid aliquis sanus filium ex prima offensa exhaeredat? Nisi magnæ & multæ injuriæ patientiam evicerint, nisi plus est quod timeat quam quod damnet, non accedit ad decretorium stilum.

Multa ante tentat, quibus dubiam indolem, & pejore loco jam positam revocet. Simul deplorata et ultima expetitur. Senec. de Clem. lib. i. cap. 14.

siderable

considerable soever it may be? No, doubtless. He will first use his utmost endeavours to reclaim him, and to correct if possible his bad disposition: Nor will he proceed to such an extremity, till the case is grown desperate and his patience quite worn out. A master must follow the like conduct in proportion.

5. I would say the same of indocility and disobedience when obstinately persisted in, and attended with an air of contempt and rebellion.

6. There is another sort of obstinacy which relates to study, and may be called an obstinate sloth, which usually occasions masters a great deal of trouble; when children will learn nothing unless they are compelled to it by force. There is nothing I own more perplexing or difficult to manage than such dispositions, especially when insensibility and indifference are joined to sloth, as is very common. In this case a master stands in need of all his prudence and industry to render study if not amiable to his scholar, at least supportable, by mixing force with mildness, threatnings with promises, and punishments with reward. And when all has been employed to no purpose, we may then come to correction, but not make it too common and habitual; for then the remedy is worse than the disease.

7. When it is judged necessary to use correction, the time and manner of using it should be considered. Diseases of the soul require to be treated at least with as much skilfulness and address, as those of the body. Nothing is more dangerous than a remedy misapplied and ill timed. A wise physician waits till the patient is able to bear it, and with that view watches the favourable moments for administering it.

The first rule therefore is never to punish a child the moment he commits a fault, for fear of exasperating him, and causing him to commit new ones by urging him to extremes, but to allow him time for recollec-

o Ut corporum, ita animorum, nec. de Benef. lib. vii. cap. 30.
molliter vitia tractanda sunt. Se-

tion, to reflect upon what he has done, and grow sensible that he has been to blame, and at the same time that his punishment is both just and necessary, and thus put him in a condition to be the better for it.

The master again must never punish with passion or in anger, especially if the fault personally regards himself, such as want of respect or any abusive word. ^p He must call to mind what Socrates said excellently well to a slave, that had misbehaved towards him. *I would treat thee as thou deservest, was I not in a passion.* ^q It were to be wished, that all persons who have authority over others were like the laws, which punish without anger or emotion, and out of the sole motive of justice and the publick good. If the master discovers himself to be ever so little moved by a change of countenance, or alteration of the tone of his voice, the scholar soon perceives it, and discovers that this flame breaks out not from a zeal for duty, but the heat of passion. And this suffices to render the punishment entirely fruitless; because children, young as they are, know that only reason has a right to correct them.

As punishment should seldom be administered, all possible care is required to make it beneficial. Let a child see, for instance, that you have done all you could to avoid coming to this extreme; seem to be concerned that you are under a necessity of exercising it against your inclination; talk before him with other persons how unhappy they are, who are so void of reason and honour as to stand in need of being corrected; withdraw your usual marks of friendship, till you perceive it necessary to console him; make this chastisement publick or private, according as you shall judge it most useful for the child either to be ex-

^p Ad coercionem errantium, irato castigatore non est opus. . . .
Inde est quod Socrates servo ait:
Caderem te, nisi irascerer. Senec.
lib. i. de ira, cap. 15.

^q Prohibenda maximè est ira in

puniendo . . . optandumque ut illi qui præsumunt aliis, legum similes sint, quæ ad puniendum æquitatè decernuntur, non iracundia. Cic. de Offic. lib. i. n. 89.

posed to shame, or made sensible that it is spared him ; reserve this publick shame as a last remedy ; make use sometimes of a reasonable person to talk with him, and tell him what is not yet proper for you to tell him yourself ; one who may cure him his false shame, dispose him to submit, and to whom the child in the heat of his passion may open his heart more freely, than he durst do before you ; but be very careful that you never demand any other submissions than such as are reasonable and necessary. Endeavour to bring him to a self-conviction, and that it only remains for you to mitigate the punishment which he has consented to. These general rules must be applied by every master, according as his particular occasions require.

But if the child that is to be punished is neither to be moved by a sense of honour or shame, care must be taken that in the first correction he may feel a sharp and lasting impression, that fear at least, for want of a more noble motive, may keep him to his duty.

I have no need to take notice, that a box of the ear, blows, or other treatments of the like sort, are absolutely not to be allowed masters. They should never punish but in order to correct, and passion will not correct at all. Let any one ask himself, whether he can coolly and without emotion, give a boy a box on the ear ; and sure ^r anger, which is in itself a vice, is a very improper remedy for curing the vices of others.

^r Cùm ira delictum animi sit, cando. Senec. lib. i. de ira, cap. non oportet peccata corrigere pec. 15.

ARTICLE the SIXTH.

Of reproofs.

THIS matter is of no less importance than that of punishments, as the use of them is more frequent, and the consequences may be as dangerous.

To make reproofs useful, there are in my opinion three things principally to be considered, the subject, the time, and the manner of making them.

First the subject of a reprimand.

It is a very common mistake to use reprimand for the slightest faults, and such as are almost unavoidable in children, which takes away all their force, and frustrates all their advantage. For they accustom themselves to them, are no longer affected with them, and even make a jest of them. I don't forget what I have already quoted from Quintilian, that the surest way for a master to avoid punishing children often is frequently to admonish them, *quo sæpius monuerit, hoc rarius castigabit*. But I make a great difference between admonitions and reprimands. The first favours less of the authority of a master, than the affection of a friend. They are always attended with an air and tone of gentleness, which gives them a more agreeable reception; and for this reason they may more frequently be used. But as reprimands always shock self-love, and often assume an air and language of severity, they should be reserved for more considerable faults, and consequently be more seldom used.

II. *The time of reprimanding.*

The master's prudence consists in carefully studying and watching for the favourable moment, when the mind of the child shall be most disposed to improve by correction. This is what Virgil so elegantly calls,

Molles

¶ Molles aditus, mollissima fandi tempora; and wherein he places the address of a negotiation, *Quis rebus dexter modus.*

Do not therefore reprimand a child, says M. de Fenelon in his first emotion, or your own. If you do it in yours, he will find that you have been governed by humour and inclination, and not by reason and friendship, and you will inevitably lose your authority. If you chide him immediately, his mind is not at liberty enough to own his fault, to conquer his passion and perceive the importance of your advice. You likewise expose the child to losing the respect he owes you. Shew him always that you are master of your self: And nothing will let him see it better than your patience. Watch a favourable opportunity for several days, to time a correction well, if necessary.

What would any one say, says M. Nicole, speaking of the duty of brotherly correction, what would they say of a surgeon, who in treating an impostume should surprize the patient by giving him a blow with his fist upon the part affected, and that before the impostume was sufficiently ripened by preparatory remedies to be lanced, or the sick person disposed for so painful an operation? We should doubtless say, he was a very imprudent and unskilful man. It is easy to apply this comparison to the subject I am treating of.

III. *The manner of reprimanding.*

The same M. Nicole in the same passage shews how difficult it is to give corrections and reprimands. The cause of this difficulty is, because they set before men what they care not for seeing, and attack self-love in the dearest and most sensible part, where it never gives way without great reluctance and opposition. We love ourselves as we are, and would have reason for doing so. Thus we are careful to justify

¶ Æn. lib. iv. ver. 393 & 423.

† Evang. du Mardi de la troisieme Sem. de Car.

ourselves in our faults by various deceitful colours; and it must not seem strange, that men should be displeased with being contradicted and condemned, as it is an attack at the same time upon the reason which is deceived, and the heart which is corrupted.

This is properly the foundation of the care and caution which is required in correction and reprimand. We must leave nothing for a child to discern in us, that may hinder the effect of it. ^u We must avoid raising his ill-will by the severity of our expressions, his anger by exaggerations, or his pride by expressions of contempt.

We must not heap upon him such a multitude of reproofs, as may deprive him of the hope of being able to correct the faults he is reproached with. It might be adviseable likewise not to tell a child his fault without adding some means of amending it. For correction, when it is sharp, is apt to occasion chagrin and discouragement.

We must avoid giving him any occasion to think that we are prejudiced; lest he should thence take occasion to defend the faults laid to his charge, and to attribute our admonitions to our prejudice.

Neither must there be any room left for him to believe, that they are occasioned by any interest or particular passion, or indeed by any other motive than that of his good.

^w We are sometimes obliged, says Tully, to raise our voice a little in correction, and to use somewhat sharper expressions, but this should be very seldom; as physicians make use of certain remedies only in extremities. We should besides be careful to avoid all anger and severity in these reproaches, for they can be of no service, and the child should see, that whatever sharpness we express in our reproofs, it is with regret, and only for his good.

We may conclude that reprimands have had all the

^u Omnis animadversio & castigatio contumeliâ vacare debet. Cic. lib. i. de Offic. n. 88.

^w Off. lib. i. n. 136, 137.

success

success
bring
fire t
instru
has a
doing
have
were
of a
ailme
y
ble a
mult
struc
is go
selve
On
every
catch
Th
any
b
capa
ther
have
educ
cont
a rus
ly ne
of c
with
x S
na par
cere.
y F
salutar
ea qua
longo
plexi
Senec.
z
semin

success that can be expected from them, when they bring a boy to a sincere confession of his faults, to desire that he may be told of them, and to receive the instructions that are given him with docility. * He has already made a great progress, who is desirous of doing it. It is a certain mark of a solid change, to have our eyes open to the imperfections, which before were unknown to us; as it is a reason to hope well of a sick person, when he begins to be sensible of his ailment.

† There are some children of so happy and so tractable a temper, that it suffices to shew them what they must do, and without standing in need of long instructions from a master, they shall seize upon what is good and honest at the first signal, and give themselves up entirely to it, *Rapacia virtutis ingenia*. ‡ One would think they had in them some sparks of every virtue, which in order to unfold themselves and catch fire require only a slight blast, a meer hint.

§ These characters are exceeding rare and seldom want any guides.

|| There are others, who have indeed a pretty good capacity, but seem at first of a slow apprehension, either from want of taking due pains, or because they have been brought up in too tender a manner, and educated in an entire ignorance of their duty, have contracted a great number of ill habits which are like a rust difficult to be rubbed off. A master is absolutely necessary to boys of this character, and seldom fails of conquering these faults, when he strives to do it with mildness and patience.

* Senec. Epist. 6. & 28. Magna pars est profectus, velle proficere.

† Felix ingenium illis fuit, & salutaria in transitu rapuit. . . . In ea quæ tradi solent, perveniunt sine longo magisterio; & honesta complexi sunt, cum primum audierunt. Senec. Epist. 95.

‡ Omnium honestarum rerum semina animi gerunt, quæ admoni-

tione excitantur; non aliter quam scintilla statu levi adjuta ignem suum explicat. Senec. Epist. 94.

§ Huc illuc frænis leniter motis flectendus est paucis animus sui rector optimus. Senec. lib. v. de Benef. cap. 25.

|| Inest interim animis voluntas bona, sed torpet, modo deliciis ac situ, modo officii inscientia. Senec. lib. v. de Benef. cap. 25.

ARTICLE the SEVENTH.

To reason with children ; to prompt them by the sense of honour ; to make use of praises, rewards, and caresses.

I Have already insinuated these methods, which should be the most common, and are always the most effectual.

I call reasoning with the boys, the acting always without passion and humour, and giving them the reason of our behaviour toward them. It is requisite, says M. de Fenelon, to pursue all possible means to make the things you require of them agreeable to the children. Have you any thing displeasing to propose to them? Let them know, that the pain will soon be followed by pleasure ; shew them always the usefulness of what you teach them ; let them see its advantage in regard to the commerce of the world and the duties of particular stations. This, tell them, is to enable you to do well what you are one day to do ; 'tis to form your judgment, 'tis to accustom you to reason well upon all the affairs of life. It is requisite to shew them a solid and agreeable end, which may support them in their labour, and never pretend to oblige them to the performance by a dry, absolute authority.

If the case requires punishment or chiding, 'twill be proper to appeal to themselves as judges, to make them thoroughly sensible of the necessity of using them in that manner, and to demand of them whether they think it possible to act otherwise. I have been sometimes surprized in conjunctures, where the just but grievous severity of their correction, or publick reprimand, might have provoked and exasperated the scholars, to see the impression on the account I gave them of my conduct has made upon them, and how they

they have blamed themselves, and allowed that I could not treat them otherwise. For I owe the justice to most part of the boys I have brought up, to own here, that I have almost always found them reasonable, though not exempt from faults. Children are capable of hearing reason sooner than is imagined, and they love to be treated like reasonable creatures from their infancy. We should keep up in them this good opinion and sense of honour, upon which they pique themselves, and make use of it as much as possible, as an universal means to bring them to the end we propose.

They are likewise very much affected with praise. It is our duty to make an advantage of this weakness, and to endeavour to improve it into a virtue in them. We should run a risque of discouraging them, were we never to praise them when they do well; and though we have reason to apprehend that commendations may inflame their vanity, we must strive to use them for their encouragement without making them conceited. For of all the motives, that affect a reasonable soul, there are none more powerful than honour and shame; and when we have once brought children to be sensible of it, we have gained everything. They find a pleasure in being commended and esteemed, especially by their parents and those upon whom they depend. If therefore we caress them and commend them when they do well; if we look coldly and contemptibly upon them, when they do ill, and religiously observe this kind of behaviour towards them; this different treatment will have a much greater effect upon their minds than either threats or punishments.

But to make this practice useful, there are two things to be observed. First, when the parents or masters are displeased with a child and look coldly upon him, it is requisite that all those who are about him should treat him in the same manner, and that he never finds any consolation in the caresses of governesses or servants. For then he is forced to submit, and naturally conceives an aversion for the faults which draw

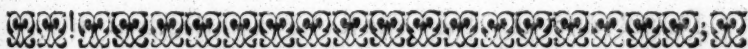
upon him a general contempt. In the second place, when parents or masters have shewn themselves displeased, they must be careful, contrary to the common custom, not to resume immediately the same cheerfulness of countenance, or shew the same fondness to the child, as usual; for he will learn not to mind it, when he knows that chiding is a storm of little or no duration, which he need only suffer to pass by. They must not therefore be restored to favour without difficulty, and their pardon be deferred till their application to do better has proved the sincerity of their repentance.

Rewards for the children are not to be neglected, and though they are not any more than praises, the principal motive upon which they should act, yet both of them may become useful to virtue, and be a powerful incentive to it. It is not an advantage for them to know that the doing well will in every respect be their advantage, and that it is as well their interest as duty to execute faithfully what is required of them either in point of study or behaviour?

But there is a choice to be made of rewards, and it is a certain rule in this point, though not always sufficiently considered, that we ought never to propose under this notion either ornaments and fine clothes, or delicacies in eating, or any other things of that kind; and the reason of it is very evident, because in promising them such things by way of reward, we teach them to look upon them as good and desirable in themselves, and thereby instil into them a value for what they ought to despise: and the same may be said of money, the desire of which is so much the more dangerous, as it is more general, and apt to increase with age; except as it may be employed in good uses, it may also be looked upon as an instrument of virtue, and a means of doing good; under which notion they should be taught to consider it. I have seen a great many scholars, who of themselves have divided their money into three parts, one of which was designed for
the

the poor, another to buy books, and the third for their diversions.

Children may be rewarded by innocent plays intermixed with some industry; by walking abroad, where the conversation may be advantageous; by little presents which may be a kind of prizes, such as pictures or prints; by books neatly bound; by the sight of such things as are curious and uncommon in arts and trades; as for instance, the manner of making tapestry at the Gobelins, of melting of glass, painting, and a thousand other things of that kind. The industry of parents and masters consists in the invention of such rewards, in varying them, and making them desired and expected; keeping always a certain order, and beginning constantly with the most simple, in order to make them last as long as possible. But in general they must exactly perform what they have promised, and make it an indispensable point of honour and duty never to disappoint the children.



ARTICLE the EIGHTH.

To accustom children to a strict observance of truth.

ONE of the vices we must carefully correct in children is lying, for which we cannot excite in them too great an aversion and horror. It must always be presented to them as mean, base and shameful; as a vice which intirely dishonours a man, disgraces him, and places him in the most contemptible light, and is not to be suffered even in slaves. I have elsewhere spoke of the manner of punishing children, that are subject to this fault.

Diffimulation, cunning and bad excuses, come very near it, and infallibly lead to it. A child should be told

told that he should rather be pardoned for twenty faults, than a bare dissimulation of the truth, for hiding one only by bad excuses. When he frankly confesses what he has done, fail not to commend his integrity, and pardon what he has done amiss without ever reproaching him with it, or speaking to him of it afterwards. If this confession becomes frequent, and grows into a habit only to evade punishment, the master must have less regard to it, because it would then be no more than a trick, and not proceed from simplicity and sincerity.

Every thing that the children see or hear from their parents or masters must conduce to make them in love with truth, and give them a contempt for all double dealing. Thus they must never make use of any false pretences to appease them, or to persuade them to do as they would have them, or either promise or threaten any thing without their being sensible that the performance will soon follow. For by this means they will be taught deceit, to which they have already but too much inclination.

To prevent it, they must be accustomed not to stand in need of it, and be taught to tell ingenuously what pleases them or what makes them uneasy. They must be told that tricking always proceeds from a bad disposition; for no body uses it but with a view to dissemble; as not being such an one as he ought to be, or from desiring such things as are not to be permitted; or if they are, from taking dishonest means to come at them. Let the children be made to observe how ridiculous such arts are, as they see practised by others, which have generally a bad success, and serve only to make them contemptible. Make them ashamed of themselves, when you catch them in any dissimulation. Take from them from time to time what they are fond of, if they have endeavoured to obtain it by any deceit, and tell them they shall have it, when they ask for it plainly and without artifice.

'Tis

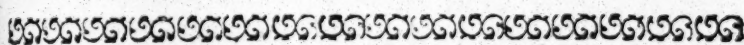
'T
sensib
differ
sincer
one m
capab
dissim
ed an
he sp
them
(and
was
even
dem n

SSS

Toad

G
ly a
they
the v
is ju
litene
rit,
lovel
men
adva
to m
In
cise
to al
the
to g
c
quide

'Tis upon this point especially they should be made sensible of their honour. Make them comprehend the difference there is between a child that loves truth and sincerity, upon whose word one may rely, in whom one may fully confide, and who is looked upon as incapable, not only of lying and fraud, but of the least dissimulation; and another child, who is always suspected and distrusted, and ^c never believed, even though he speaks truth. ^d We should carefully set before them what Cornelius Nepos observes of Epaminondas, (and Plutarch says the same of Aristides,) that he was so fond of truth that he never told a lie, not even in jest. *Adeo veritatis diligens, ut ne joco quidem mentiretur.*



ARTICLE the NINTH.

To accustom the boys to be polite, cleanly and punctual.

GOOD breeding is one of the qualities, which parents most desire in their children, and it usually affects them more than any other. The value they set upon it arises from their conversation with the world, where they find that almost every thing is judged by its outside. In short, the want of politeness takes off very much from the most solid merit, and makes virtue itself seem less estimable and lovely: A rough diamond can never serve as an ornament; it must be polished before it can be shewn to advantage. We cannot therefore take care too early to make children civil and well bred.

In talking thus I do not mean that we should exercise children, or bring them up by rule and method to all the formal ceremonies which are fashionable in the world. Such narrow little discipline serves only to give them false notions and fill them with a foolish

^c Mendaci homini, ne verum Cic. lib. ii. de Divin. n. 146.
^d quidem dicenti, credere solemus. d Cornel. Nep. in Epam.

vanity. Besides, this methodical civility, which consists only in forms of insipid compliments, and the affectation of doing every thing by rule and measure, is often more offensive than a natural rusticity. We must not therefore teize and wrangle much with them about such faults as they may commit in this point. An address not over graceful, a bow ill-made, a hat clumsily taken off, and a compliment ill-turned, may deserve some little notice to be taken of them in an easy and gentle manner, but do not deserve sharp chiding, or the being made ashamed before company, and much less to be punished with severity. The commerce with the world will soon correct these petty defects.

But the point is to go to the principle and root of the evil, and to conquer certain dispositions in the boys, which are directly opposite to the rules of society and conversation; such as a savage and clownish rudeness, which makes them heedless of what may please or displease those about them; self-love, attentive only to its own convenience and advantage; a haughtiness and pride, which tempt us to look upon every thing as our due, without our being under any obligation to others; a spirit of contradiction and raillery, which blames every thing, and takes pleasure only in giving pain. These are the faults against which we must declare open war. Such boys as have been accustomed to be complaisant towards their companions, to oblige them, to submit to them upon occasion, to say nothing that may offend them, and not be easily offended themselves at the discourse of others; boys of this character, when they come abroad into the world, will soon learn the rules of civility and good breeding.

It is also to be wished, that children should be accustomed to neatness, order, and exactness; that they take care of their dress, especially on sundays and holidays, and such days as they go abroad; that every thing should be set in order in their chambers and

upon their tables, and every book put in its place, when they have done with it; that they should be ready to discharge their different duty precisely at the time appointed. This exactness is of great importance at all times and in every station of life.

All this is to be wished for, but must not in my opinion be exacted with severity, nor under pain of correction. For we must always distinguish the faults, which arise from the levity of their age, from such as flow from indocility and perverseness. I beg the reader's pardon, if sometimes I take the liberty to quote my own practice, whilst engaged in the education of youth. I think I don't do it out of vanity, but only the better to shew the usefulness of the advice which I give. I brought the boys to be very civil to such strangers as entered into the quadrangle during their recreation, and almost scrupulously exact in repairing to every exercise at the first sound of the clock, but not by menaces or corrections. I used to commend them publickly for their civility to strangers, who complimented me upon it, and for the readiness with which they quitted their play, because they knew it would please me. I sometimes added, that though some of them were wanting in their little duties, I judged it must be through inadvertency, which was not surprising in the heat of play. I desired them to be more careful for the future, and to follow the example of the greatest part of their companions; and I succeeded better by these civilities than I could have done by all the chiding and menaces in the world.

ARTICLE the TENTH.

To make study agreeable.

THIS is one of the most important points in education, and at the same time one of the most difficult: for amongst a great number of masters, who in other respects are very deserving, there are very few to be found, who are happy enough to make their scholars fond of study.

The success in this point depends very much on the first impressions ^e, and it should be the great care of masters, who teach children their letters, to do it in such manner, that a child, who is not yet capable of being fond of his book, should not take an aversion to it, and the dislike continue when he grows up. For this reason, says Quintilian, his study must be made a diversion to him. The master must proceed by asking him little questions. He must be encouraged by commendation, and allowed to set some value upon himself, and be pleased with having learnt any thing. Sometimes what he refuses to learn must be taught another to raise his jealousy. We must enter into little disputes with him, and let him think, that he is often the better. We must intice him likewise by little rewards, which children at that age are very fond of.

But the great secret, ^f says Quintilian farther, to make children love their books, is to make them fond of their master. In this case they willingly give ear to him, become docile, strive to please him, and take a pleasure in his lessons. They readily receive his

^e Id imprimis cavere oportebit, ne studia qui amare nondum potest, oderit; & amaritudinem semel perceptam, etiam ultra rudes ad nos reformidet: Quintil. lib. i, cap. 1,

^f Discipulos id unum moneo, ut præceptores suos non minus quam ipsa studia ament. . . . multum hæc pietas confert studio. Quintil. lib. ii, cap. 9,

advice and correction, are much affected with his commendation, and strive to merit his friendship by a proper discharge of their duty. There is implanted in children, as in all mankind, a natural spirit of curiosity, or desire of knowledge and information, of which a good use may be made towards rendering their study agreeable. As every thing is new to them, they are continually asking questions, and enquiring the name and use of every thing they see. And they should be answered without expressing any pain or uneasiness. Their curiosity should be commended and satisfied by clear and express answers, without any thing in them deceitful or illusory; for they will soon find it out and take offence at it.

In every art and science the first elements and principles have something dry and disgusting in them. For which reason it is of great service to abridge and facilitate the rudiments of the languages which are taught to children, and to take off from the bitterness of them as agreeably as we can.

Pueris dant crustula blandi

Doctores, elementa velint ut discere prima.

For the same reason I think the method of beginning with the explication of authors preferable to that of making exercises, because the latter is more painful and tedious, and occasions the children more anger and correction.

When they are privately brought up, a careful and skilful master omits nothing that may make study agreeable to them. He takes their time, studies their taste, consults their humour, mingles diversion with labour, seems to leave the choice to them, does not make their study regular, excites to it sometimes by refusing it, and by the cessation or rather interruption of it. In a word, he puts on a thousand shapes, and invents a thousand artifices to compass what he aims at.

This

This way in college is not practicable. In a common chamber and a numerous class discipline and good order require an uniform rule, and that all should follow it exactly; and herein lies the great difficulty of managing them. A master must have a good capacity, a great deal of skill to guide and direct the reins of so many different characters, of which some are brisk and impetuous, others slow and phlegmatick, some want the spur, and others the bridle; to manage, I say, all these dispositions at the same time and yet so as to make them all move by concert and lead all to the same point, notwithstanding the difference of genius. It must be owned, that in the business of education 'tis in this circumstance the greatest ability and prudence are required.

This is only to be attained by great gentleness, reason, moderation, coolness and patience. This great principle must be always in view; that study depends upon the will, which admits of no constraint. *Siudium discendi voluntate, quæ cogi non potest constat.* We may confine the body, make a scholar sit at his desk against his inclination, double his labour by way of punishment, force him to finish a task imposed on him, and for that end deprive him of his play and recreation; but can labouring thus upon force be properly called study? And what will follow upon it but the hatred of both books, learning, and masters too, very often as long as they live? The will therefore must be gained; and this can only be by mildness, affectionate behaviour and persuasion, and above all by the allurements of pleasure.

As we are born slothful, enemies to labour, and still more to constraint, it is not surprizing, that all the pleasure lies on one side, and all the trouble on the other; all the trouble in study, and all the pleasure in diversion; a child should bear the one with impatience, and passionately pursue the other. The

skill of the master lies in making study agreeable, and teaching his scholar to find a pleasure in it. To which end play and recreation may very much contribute. And this we shall treat of in the following article.

ARTICLE the ELEVENTH.

To grant the boys rest and recreation.

A Great many reasons oblige us to grant rest and recreation to children; first, the care of their health, which should go before that of knowledge. Now nothing is more prejudicial to it than too long and constant an application, that insensibly wears and weakens the organs, which in that age are very tender, and incapable of taking great pains. And this gives me an opportunity of advising and intreating parents not to push their children too much upon study in their early years, but to deny themselves the pleasure of seeing them make a figure before their time. For besides, that these ripe fruits seldom come to maturity, and their early progress resembles those seeds that are cast upon the surface of the earth, which spring up immediately, but take no root; nothing is more pernicious to the health of children than these untimely efforts, though the ill effect be not immediately perceived.

If they are prejudicial to the body, they are no less dangerous to the mind, which exhausts itself, and grows dull by a continual application, and like

h Quintil. lib. i. cap. 3.

i Ea quoque, quæ sensu carent, ut servare vim suam possint, alterna quiete retunduntur. Ibid.

Ut fertilibus agris non est imperandum; citò enim exhauriet

illos nunquam intermissa fecunditas: ita animorum impetus assiduus labor frangit. . . . Nascitur ex assiduitate laborum, animorum hebetatio quædam & languor. Senec. de Tranq. an, cap. 15.

the

the earth, stands in need of a stated alternative of labour and rest, in order to preserve its force and vigour.

Besides, as we have already observed, the boys, after they have refreshed themselves a while, return to their studies with more chearfulness and a better heart; and this little relaxation animates them with fresh courage; whereas constraint shocks and disheartens them.

I add with Quintilian, and the boys will doubtless agree to it, that a moderate inclination for play should not displease in them, as it is often a mark of vivacity. In short, can we expect much ardour for study in a child, who at an age, that is naturally brisk and gay, is always heavy, pensive, and indifferent even to its play?

^k But in this, as in every thing else, we must use discretion, and observe a medium, which consists in not refusing them diversion, lest they should grow out of love with study; and in not granting too much, lest they should contract an habit of idleness.

The choice in this point requires some care; not that we need be under any concern about procuring them pleasures: They invent enough of themselves. It suffices to leave them to themselves, and observe them without constraint, in order to keep them in temper, when they grow too warm.

The diversions they love best, and which are likewise most suitable to them, are such as are attended with some bodily motion. They are satisfied, provided they often change place. A ball, a kite, a top, are an high delight to them, as also walking and running.

There are plays of ingenuity, wherein instruction is mixed with diversion, which may sometimes find a place, when the body is less disposed for motion, or the time and season oblige them to be confined within doors.

^k Modus tamen sit remissionibus, ne aut odium studiorum faciant negatæ, aut otii consuetudinem nimiam. Ibid.

As play is designed for a recreation, I question whether we ought commonly to allow the children such as require almost as much application as study. James the first king of Great Britain, in the instructions he left his son how to govern well, amongst other advice concerning play, forbids him chess, because it is rather a study than a recreation.

Plays of hazard, such as cards and dice, which are now become so fashionable, deserve still more to be forbid the boys. 'Tis a shame to our age, that rational persons cannot pass a few hours together without cards in their hands. It will be well for the scholars, if they carry from college and long retain an ignorance and contempt for all diversions of this nature.

It is a principle in education which cannot be too much inculcated into parents and masters, to inspire children in general with a taste for such things as are simple. They should neither feed upon delicate dishes, nor be entertained with elegant diversions. The temper of the soul is corrupted as well as the taste by the pursuit of lively and poignant pleasures; and as the use of ragoos make the common food that is plainly dressed seem tasteless and insipid; so great emotions of the soul make the ordinary diversions of youth tedious and insipid.

We see parents, says M. de Fenelon, that are otherwise persons of good sentiments, carry their children themselves to the publick shews, and pretend by thus mixing poison with healthful food, to give them a good education; and would look upon it as cruel and austere to deny them this medley of good and evil. He must be very little acquainted with human nature, who does not see that this sort of diversion cannot fail of creating a disgust in the boys for the serious and busy life, for which however they are intended, and of making them consider plain and innocent pleasures as insipid and insupportable.

ARTICLE the TWELFTH.

To train up the boys to virtue by discourse and example.

WHAT I have said shews that this is the indispensable duty of masters. As it is often requisite to fortify the children beforehand against the discourses and examples of their parents, as well as against the false prejudices and false principles advanced in common conversation, and authorized by an almost general practice; ^l they should be to them that guardian and monitor which Seneca so often speaks of, to preserve or deliver them from popular errors, and to inspire them with such principles as are conformable to right and sound reason. It is requisite therefore that they have a perfect sense of them themselves, and think and talk always with wisdom and truth. ^m For nothing can be said before children without effect, and they regulate their fears and desires by the discourses they hear.

It is for this reason that Quintilian, as we have already observed, advises masters to speak often to their disciples of honesty and justice. And Seneca tells us the wonderful effects which the lively exhortations of his produced upon him. The passage is perfectly beautiful. ⁿ “It is scarce to be imagined, says he, how
“ great an impression such discourses are capable of

I Non licet ire recta via: trahunt in pravum parentes, trahunt servi . . . Sit ergo aliquis custos, & aurem subinde pervellat, abigatque rumores, & reclamat populis laudantibus . . . : Itaque monitionibus crebris, opiniones, quæ nos circumsonant, compescamus. Seneca. Ep. 94.

^m Nulla ad aures puerorum vox impune perfertur. Nocent, qui optant; nocent, qui execrantur.

Nam & horum imprecatio falsos nobis metus inserit, & illorum amor male docet bene optando. Ibid.

ⁿ Verisimile non est quantum proficiat talis oratio . . . Facillime enim tenera conciliantur ingenia ad honesti rectique amorem Adhuc docilibus leviterque corruptis injicit manum veritas, si advocatum idoneum nacta est. Seneca. Epist. 108.

“ making.

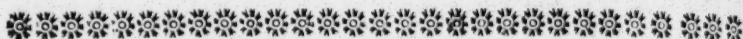
“ making. For the tender minds of youth are easily
 “ inclined to the side of virtue. As they are tractable
 “ and not much infected by corruption, they easily
 “ resign themselves to truth, provided an understand-
 “ ing advocate pleads its cause before them and speaks
 “ in its favour. For my own part, when I heard
 “ Attalus inveigh against vice, error and irregularity,
 “ I pitied mankind, and thought nothing great and
 “ valuable, but a man that was capable of thinking
 “ as he did. When he undertook to set off the ad-
 “ vantages of poverty, and to prove that whatever
 “ is more than necessary, can be looked upon only as
 “ a useless charge and an inconvenient burden, he
 “ made me wish to go poor out of his school. When
 “ he exclaimed against pleasure, commended chastity
 “ of body, temperance of diet, and purity of mind,
 “ I found myself inclined to renounce the most law-
 “ ful and allowable pleasures.”

There is still another shorter and surer way of con-
 ducting the boys to virtue, and this is by example.
 For the language of actions is far stronger and more
 persuasive than that of words. ° *Longum iter est per
 præcepta, breve & efficax per exempla.* It is a great
 happiness for boys to have masters, whose lives are a
 continual instruction to them, whose actions never
 contradict their lessons, who do what they advise, and
 shun what they blame, and who are still more ad-
 mired when seen, than when they are heard.

Something seems still to be wanting to what I have
 said in this chapter concerning the different duties of a
 master; and yet parents would certainly conceive
 themselves very happy, if they found such for their
 children; however I desire the reader to observe, that
 all I have hitherto said has been extracted solely from
 Paganism; that Lycurgus, Plato, Tully, Seneca, and
 Quintilian have lent me their thoughts, and supplied
 the rules, which I have laid down; that what I have
 borrowed from other authors is neither out of their

o Senec. Epist. 6. 52.

sphere, nor above the maxims and notions of the Heathens. Something therefore is still wanting to the duties of a master, and this remains to be treated under the last article.



ARTICLE the THIRTEENTH.

Piety, religion, and zeal for the childrens salvation.

ST. Augustin says, that though Tully's treatise, intituled Hortensius, was very agreeable to him, and the reading of it had paved the way to his conversion, by inspiring him with an eager desire after wisdom, there was notwithstanding still something wanting, because he did not find the name of Christ in it; and that whatever did not bear that sacred name, however well conceived, however elegantly wrote, and however true it might be, did not entirely charm him. I think likewise that my reader should not be wholly satisfied, but still find something wanting in what I have written concerning the duty of masters, as they do not find in it the name of Christ, and discover no footsteps of Christianity in the precepts, which relate to the education of Christian children.

I have designedly done this, to shew how blameable we should be, if we contented ourselves with what we have a right to demand from heathen masters; or if we should not go even so far as they. In short, Christianity is the soul and sum of all the duties, I have

p Ille liber mutavit affectum meum, & vota mea ac desideria fecit alia. . . . Immortalitem sapientiæ concupiscebam æstu cordis incredibili; & surgere jam cœperam, ut ad te redirem. . . . Fortiter excitabar sermone illo & accendebar,

& ardebam: & hoc solum me in tanta flagrantia refrangebat, quod nomen Christi non erat ibi. . . . Quicquid sine hoc nomine fuisset, quamvis litteratum & expolitum & veridicum, non me totum rapiebat, Conf. lib. iii. cap. 4.

hitherto

hitherto
them
them
God
God
W
with
hand
whom
he ha
his h
bers,
make
serve
for w
it bar
learn
so? I
prefer
innoc
tism,
the tr
to wh
great
receiv
care,
how g
In
the fa
have r
prude
How
persua
grants
and th
Lord,
and m
whom
myself

hitherto spoke of. It is Christianity which animates them, which exalts and ennobles them, which brings them to perfection, and gives them a merit, whereof God alone is the principle and motive, and of which God alone can be the just reward.

What then is a Christian master, who is entrusted with the education of youth? He is a man, into whose hands Christ has committed a number of children, whom he has redeemed with his blood, and for whom he has laid down his life, in whom he dwells, as in his house and temple; whom he considers as his members, as his brethren and coheirs, of whom he will make so many Kings and Priests, who shall reign and serve God with him and by him to all eternity. And for what end has he committed them to his care? Is it barely to make them poets, orators and men of learning? Who dare presume to say or even to think so? He has committed them to their care, in order to preserve in them the precious and inestimable deposit of innocence, which he has imprinted in their souls by baptism, in order to make them true Christians. This is the true end and design of the education of children, to which all the rest are but the means. Now how great and noble an addition does the office of a master receive from so honourable a commission? But what care, what attention and vigilance, and above all, how great a dependance upon Christ does it require?

In this last circumstance lies all the merit, and at the same time all the consolation of masters. They have need in the government of children, of capacity, prudence, patience, mildness, resolution and authority. How great a consolation is it to a master to be fully persuaded, that Christ gives all these qualifications, and grants them to the humble and persevering petitioner, and that he may say to him with the Prophet, *Thou, O Lord, art my patience and my strength, thou art my light and my council, thou subduest the little people under me whom thou hast committed to my care? Leave me not to myself one moment, but grant me, for the direction of*

ethers and my own salvation, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of council and strength, the spirit of knowledge and piety, and above all the spirit of the fear of the Lord.

When a master has received this spirit, his work is done. This spirit is a master within, which dictates to him and teaches him all that is requisite, and upon every occasion points out to him his duty, and makes him practise it. One great mark of his having received it, is, that he finds in himself a great zeal for the salvation of the children; that he is affected with their dangers, and touched with their faults; that he frequently reflects upon the value of the innocence, which they have received in baptism; how difficult it is to recover it when once it is lost; what account must he give to Christ, who has placed him as a centinel to guard it, if the enemy carries off so precious a treasure, whilst he is asleep. A good master must apply to himself those words, which God was continually repeating in the ears of Moses, the conductor of his people, “^a Carry them in thy bosom, as a nurse beareth the sucking child.” *Porta eos in sinu tuo, sicut portare solet nutrix infantulum.* He must experience somewhat of the tenderness and concern of ^r St. Paul for the Galatians, “for whom he felt the pains of childbirth, till Christ was formed in them.” *Filioli mei, quousque iterum parturio, donec formetur Christus in vobis.*

I cannot avoid applying here to the masters some of the instructions, which are given in a ^f letter to a superior upon her obligations, nor too earnestly exhort them to read that letter with care, which suits so well with their circumstances.

1. The first means of preserving the talent, which has been committed to your care and to increase it, is to labour with fresh zeal to procure your own sanctification. You are God’s instrument towards these children; you must therefore be strictly united to him.

^q Num. ii. 2.
^r Gal. iv. 19.

^f Lettres de morale & de piété,
chez Jacq. Esienne, Tome I.

You are the channel, and therefore you should be filled. It is your part to draw down blessings upon others; you must not therefore turn them aside from falling upon your own head.

2. The second means is not to expect fruit if you do not labour in the name of Christ, that is, as he himself laboured in the sanctification of men. ^t He began with being the example of all the virtues he has required from them. His humility and gentleness were astonishing. He gave his life and blood for his sheep. See here the example of shepherds and discern your own. Never take your eyes from this divine model. Bring forth thus, thus train up your disciples, who are now become your children. Think less of chiding them, than of obtaining their love; and think only of gaining their love, in order to plant the love of Christ in their hearts, and after that, if possible, to blot you out of their minds.

3. The third means is to expect nothing from your own care, your own prudence, your own light and labour, but only from the grace of God. He rarely blesses those, who are not humble. We speak in vain to the ears, if he speaks not to the heart. We water and plant in vain, unless he gives the increase.

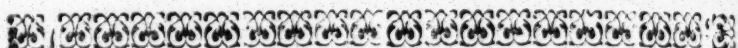
We think to do wonders by multiplying words. We think to soften the hardness of the heart by sharp reproaches, by humiliations and corrections. This may be useful sometimes, but it must be the grace of God that makes it so; and when we rely too much upon these outward means, we lay a secret obstacle in the way of grace, which is justly refused to human presumption and an haughty confidence.

4. If your discourse and cares have the blessing of God, do not attribute the success of them to yourself. Do not give ear to the secret voice of your heart, which applauds you for it. Hearken not to the commendations of men, who mislead you. If your labour

^t He began to do and teach
Acts. i. 1.

Mighty in word and in deed.
Luke xxiv. 19.

seems ineffectual, be not discouraged, nor despair, either of yourself or others; but still persist in your duty. The moments, which God has reserved to himself, are known only to him. He will give you in the morning the reward of your labour in the night. It has seemed unprofitable, but not through your fault; the care was recommended to you, and not the success.



PART the SECOND.

Particular duties relating to the education of Youth.

THE different duties I have to examine in this second part relate to the principal of the college, the regents, the parents, the preceptors and scholars.



CHAP. I.

Of the duties of the Principal.

THE principal of a college is as the soul of it, which puts every thing in motion, and presides over all. To him belongs the care of establishing good order, of maintaining discipline, of watching in general over studies and manners. It is easy to comprehend how serviceable such an office is to the publick, and at the same time how difficult to discharge. It were to be wished, one would think, that he who is placed at the head of the professors should be the principal in every respect; that he might in every thing serve as an adviser and pattern; that he should be a perfect master of every branch of learning youth are taught, grammar, the belles lettres, rhetoric and philosophy,

philosophy, that he might be capable of judging of the ability of the masters and progress of the scholars. But the want of some of these points of knowledge may be supplied by other qualifications, which are still more essential and necessary. A house is happy, when it pleases God to set over it a man, who has the spirit of government, an amicable and sociable disposition, a solid judgment, an humble and prudent docility, and a perfect disinterestedness; one who enters upon his station only out of religious views, and not through any carnal motives. The success is then infallible. For we may truly say without fear of being mistaken, as experience has proved, that it is the merit of the principal, which contributes most to the reputation of a college.

There are four or five things especially, which are the object of the principal's pains and care; diet, study, discipline, education and religion. I shall explain every one of these parts in particular and with as much brevity as I can.



ARTICLE the FIRST.

Of the diet of the Students.

A Principal in a college is like a father in a family. He must therefore have the attention and tenderness of a father, and employ his first cares upon the health of the children, which is the basis and foundation of all the rest. This depends very much upon their diet, which joined to motion and exercise, serves to make the children grow, to strengthen them, to give them a good constitution, and enable them to support the fatigues of the different stations, to which Providence shall one day call them. To this end the diet must be plain, but good, solid and regular.

The means of having the food such as it should be, and is to me an essential principle in point of œconomy, is to provide the best in every kind, the best bread, the best meat, the best oil, the best butter, &c. and I have known by experience, that the expence would not be the greater, especially if care be taken to pay regularly for them, in which case we are sure to be always well served.

One obstacle to the rule I here lay down would be an earnest desire in the principal to heap up wealth. But I should not suspect any body of a disposition so remote from the character of a man of learning and honour, who knows better than any other, "that it would be a disgrace to his office to exercise it out of any mean views of interest, and to set a price upon his care in the education of youth. It is very fit that the pains a man takes in this way, which are the most irksome and troublesome part of the government of a college, should meet with a temporal reward. A principal in order to do things as he ought, and behave with generosity, should have wherewithal to live at his ease, but the way of attaining it, as several have experienced, is to spare nothing for the good entertainment of the students.

^w It is not enough, that the principal himself be of a disinterested and generous disposition; he must inspire the same sentiments into those, who under his name and in his stead are intrusted with the œconomy, and set a strict watch over their conduct, for which he is answerable to the publick. A sure sign, that he sincerely desires to discharge his duty in this point is, the allowing the masters a full liberty of complaining to

u Qui ignorat quin id longe sit honestissimum, ac liberalibus disciplinis, & illo quem exigimus animo dignissimum, non vendere operam, nec elevare tanti beneficii auctoritatem? Quintil. lib. xii. cap. 7.

w His in rebus jam te usus ipse

profecto erudit, nequaquam satis esse ipsum hæc habere virtutes, sed circumspectum diligenter, ut in hac custodia, provinciæ non te unum sed omnes ministros imperii tui socijs & civibus, & reipublicæ præesse videre. Cic. Epist. 1. lib. 1. ad Quint. frat.

him

him upon this article, as well as all the rest, to call upon them publickly to do it, to declare that it will be a pleasure to him to have them behave in that manner, to receive their remonstrances so as to convince them of it, and especially to make that use of their information which justice and prudence may require from him. To spare the masters a trouble that such a step must naturally cause, he may appoint some person in the college as the vice-principal, or any other to whom they can more freely and readily express themselves; and this he may be sure is the only way of keeping people from talking.

The masters on their side must shew a great deal of moderation upon this article, and never complain at table of the meat served up, that they may not accustom their scholars to too great a delicacy in eating and drinking, nor authorize by their example a spirit of murmuring and complaining, which is of no use but to sow division and foment dissatisfaction in a college. They must remember that how careful and well disposed soever a principal is, it is impossible but in a large household some small faults and negligences must escape, which the prudence and charity of the masters should overlook and conceal.

To good diet should be joined meatness, which exalts its value, and is a kind of seasoning to it. The linen should be white, the dishes clean, the halls where they eat regularly swept every day after dinner, and every thing constantly ranged in its place. * The statutes of the university descend to very minute particulars upon this article, and shew how important they hold it to be careful in this point. A principal therefore cannot consider it as unworthy of his care, and must be able to say of himself what we read in Horace,

*† Hæc ego procurare & idoneus imperor, & non
Invitus, ne turpe toral, ne sordida mappa*

n Stat. 13. Append.

y Epist. 5. lib. i.

O 5

Cor-

*Corrugat nares; ne non & cantharus, & lanx
Ostendat tibi te.*

The same poet in another passage observes, that as this neatness requires no expence, but only a little care and exactness, negligence in this point is unpardonable.

*2 Vilibus in scopis, in mappis, in scobe quantus
Consistit sumptus? neglectis flagitium ingens.*



ARTICLE the SECOND.

Of the Studies.

AS the choice of the regents depends solely upon the principal, we may say for this reason, that the success of the studies depends upon him. This choice is one of the most considerable parts of his office, and has the greatest consequences, either with reference to the publick, or to the person of the principal himself.

How great an advantage is it to youth; how great an honour to the university, when a principal prefers such regents, as are distinguished by their learning, as are famed abroad by their compositions or publick actions; and to these shining qualities add others no less necessary, the talent of teaching and governing, authority, probity and piety? But how great a burthen does he lay upon himself, if through human views he nominates such regents, as are incapable of discharging their functions? All the good which a better choice had produced will be objected to him, and all the ill which shall follow upon an imprudent and rash nomination laid to his charge.

To avoid this misfortune he must endeavour to cast his eyes upon such, as God designs for employments,

2 Sat. 4. lib. ii.

that

that is, to whom he has given qualifications necessary to discharge them; otherwise it is to despise his gifts, and reject what he has chosen. The university, in allowing the principals the privilege of electing regents, enjoins them to be fully assured of their capacity, and still more of their probity, that they may be in a condition to instruct youth in learning, and to form their manners. ^a *Gymnasiarchæ ad docendam & regendam juventutem pædagogas & magistros probatæ vitæ & doctrinæ recipiant & admittant . . . quorum mores imprimis spectandi, ut pueri ab his & literas simul discant, & bonis moribus imbuantur.*

Neither flesh, nor blood, nor country, must be consulted in such a choice, nor any thing but the publick advantage. Were it allowable to compare great things with small, one would exhort the principal to call to mind a beautiful expression of a Roman Emperor, and imitate his conduct. I mean Galba, when he adopted Piso. Augustus, says he to him, fought for a successor in his own family, but I have fought for one in the whole empire. ^b *Augustus in domo successorem quæsit, ego in republica.* ^c We should look upon him as our nearest relation and best friend who has the most merit, according to the beautiful expression of Pliny. Solicitation and the recommendation of great men should have no place here, and it is upon these occasions that he must shew an inflexible resolution, by representing to himself, how great an injustice and breach of trust he should be guilty of, if he sacrificed the essential interest of so many families, that have actually confided to him what they hold most dear, to his complaisance for a private person.

We know how many excellent members Mr. Gobinet brought into the college du Pleffis. He took pains to go in quest of them himself, and paid regard only

^a Stat. Facult. Art.

^b Tacit. Hist. lib. i. cap. 15.

^c An tu summæ potestatis hæredem tantum intra domum tuam

circumferas oculos, & hunc tibi proximum, hunc conjunctissimum existimes, quem optimum invenieris? Plin. in Paneg. Traj.

quæras? Non per totam civitatem

to merit and never to recommendation alone. The famous M. Lenglet having read a copy of verses, which he found by chance upon Mr. Gobinet's table, told him that the author, whom he did not know, might become an excellent poet, if to his natural genius he added the study of Virgil. This was enough for that worthy principal, after he had enquired into the other qualifications of the young man, to make him a regent. It was M. Hersan, who has done so much honour to the university.

It might be of great service to a principal to train up himself good subjects in his college, and prepare them early for the regency. When they are thus seen to grow up under his eyes, he must be far better acquainted with them both as to their capacity, and what is still more essential, their morals and disposition. I shall resume this matter, and speak more fully to it at the conclusion of this article.

It is not sufficient to have made a good choice, he must keep up to it through all the rest of his conduct. The great skill of a principal lies in gaining the affection of the regents, in making himself valued and beloved by them, and acquiring their confidence, which can only be obtained by a civil and obliging treatment, remote from all haughtiness and pride. For he must remember that the prevailing character in men of letters is the love of liberty, I mean an honest liberty directed by reason.

Besides what depends upon the regents, the principal may contribute very much of himself to the advancement of study, by raising an emulation in the classes from the frequent visits he shall make them, to take an account of their progress, to encourage the good scholars by commendation, to distribute rewards and prizes amongst them from time to time, to excite the weak and indifferent to take pains, and universally to confirm the authority and good views of the regents.

The distribution of prizes, which is solemnly made at the end of the year, is one of the most effectual

means

means t
ing of.
of all t
It were
his reve
out inc
rosity o
few, d
the year

Tha
effect,
your o
ther h
propo
of righ
tence v
Here p
by kno
on a l
bove
make
tion o
places

I re
regent
have
is to r
who a
to bri
ticular
they
to the
by in
time
them
T
with
princ
sing

means to excite and keep up the emulation I am speaking of. The care of this belongs to the principal, and of all the expences he is at, this is the best employed. It were to be wished, as I have already observed, that his revenue might admit of wherewithal to do it without inconvenience to himself; and I admire the generosity of those, who having no pensioners, or but very few, do notwithstanding distribute prizes at the end of the year, as though they were very rich.

That this distribution of prizes may produce its full effect, it must be made with great equity without favour or affection. It depends upon the principal, whether he will give prizes or no; but when they are once proposed he is no longer at liberty. They are due and of right belong to merit, and cannot under any pretence whatsoever be refused it without manifest injustice. Here places are regulated not by birth or riches, but by knowledge and understanding. The plebeian is upon a level with the prince, and usually very much above him; nor does any thing more contribute to make learning flourish in a college, than the reputation of an exact and strict justice in the distribution of places and prizes.

I return according to my promise to the choice of regents. The surest way of succeeding in it, as I have known several principals practise it with success, is to make choice of certain poor scholars in the classes, who are observed to have genius and good inclinations, to bring them up at their own expence, to have a particular eye over their conduct and studies; and when they have finished them, to commit some few scholars to their care, in order to prepare them for the office by instructing them; to oblige them from time to time to compose in verse and prose, and thereby enable them to enter into the regency, when occasion offers.

This expence is not very great, and may be attended with good consequences. The great advantage a principal may expect from it is to draw down the blessing of God upon his college, and this he has great need

need of. For it must be owned, that generally speaking there is a kind of curse upon the rich and riches, which he must endeavour to avert by mingling some poor scholars among the children of the rich, that may draw upon him the care and protection of him, who declares himself throughout the whole Scripture the Protector and Father of the poor.

I question whether a man of learning and probity can have a more refined satisfaction, than that of having contributed by his care and liberality to the producing of young men, who afterwards become able professors, and by their extraordinary talents do honour to the university. This satisfaction, in my opinion, is far improved, when it proceeds from a grateful disposition, and these services are done by way of acknowledgment, and paid as a kind of debt, in return for such as have been received in a like situation. For we must not be ashamed to own, that the most excellent members often spring from the bosom of poverty, as Horace observes, speaking of the greatest men in the Roman republick.

*Hunc, & incomptis Curium capillis
Utilem bello tulit, & Camillum
Sæva paupertas.*



ARTICLE the THIRD.

Of the discipline of the College.

IT is the business of principals by their place and title to keep a watchful eye over the general discipline of the colleges. ^e It belongs to them to examine the scholars, in order to place them in the classes, for which they are fit. ^f It is their duty to take an ac-

^d Fabricum. Hor. Od. 12. lib. i. ^f Stat. 17.

^e Stat. 13. Facult. Art.

count every week how they have behaved ; 'tis theirs to agree with the professors, what authors are to be explained in the classes. ^s They are obliged to see the statutes of the university exactly observed, and the regulations of the faculties of arts relating to the discipline of colleges and classes, such, for instance, as that of fixing holidays, and the times of entering into and quitting the classes, which was lately revived and authorized by parliament ; and it is for this reason the ^h university enjoins them to read over these statutes and regulations twice a year in the presence of all the masters and scholars.

This last ordinance is very judicious, but not observed with sufficient exactness. To make the execution of it more easy, such statutes and regulations as have been judged most essential to discipline, have been separately printed and read over by some professors every year in their classes. Several others might be added to them, which have since been made, and it might be proper to reprint.

I shall begin this article with the principal's duty towards the scholars of the house. What I shall afterwards say, likewise belongs, in some measure, and is common to them with the rest of the scholars ; but there is a peculiar care due to them from the principal. The house is properly theirs, and the colleges originally were founded for them. This the principal should always have in mind, and never forget the pious motives of the founders, who have dedicated part of their substance to so sacred an use. They were for the most part high and mighty lords in their time, cardinals, archbishops, bishops, chancellors, princes, and sometimes crowned heads. Their memory should be as dear and precious to a principal, as their persons would be, if they were actually in place and credit. In respect and gratitude to these illustrious founders, who are always living for him, he must behave to the scholars of the house with the affection and tenderness

of a father, procure them all the temporal and spiritual assistance in his power, take the utmost pains to enable them to fill the places worthily, to which Divine Providence shall call them, and especially hinder the children of the rich from expressing a contempt for them, and to this end must himself shew them great value and consideration. I have never observed that the pensioners have been offended, that upon certain occasions the scholars of the house were set before them, and by way of honour preferred to the first places; but then these should not value themselves too much upon it, nor forget that it is from their poverty that they are scholars of the house, and therefore they should behave with respect, obedience, and docility, and above all with humility; for nothing is more insupportable than poverty and pride: ¹ *My soul hateth . . . a poor man that is proud.* Upon these conditions we cannot express too great friendship towards the scholars of the house. When a principal has been one of them himself, as very frequently happens, he is the more inclined to favour them, and is apt to apply to himself this verse in Virgil.

Non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco.

Or rather he applies to himself the command, which God so often in Scripture gives the Israelites, of taking care of the strangers, because they had been strangers themselves. ¹ *Love ye therefore strangers, for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt.*

One of the things which contribute most to establish the reputation of a college, is an exact and uniform discipline. There are many parents indeed, which almost blindly determine upon the choice of a college, but there are many also who behave otherwise, and who look upon the giving their children a Christian education as the first and most essential part of their duty, and therefore devote all their care and application to that. Now what determines such parents in

¹ Eccl. xxv. 4.

¹ Æn. lib. i. ver. 634.

¹ Deut. x. 9.

favour of a college is the knowledge they have of the good discipline observed in it.

The whole care of a principal is faithfully to discharge his duty without being uneasy about the success. A little honour suffices to induce him never to make an interest for any pensioner. This would be to disparage and disgrace his profession, and confound it with the employment of hirlings and mechanicks, who would many of them blush at such a proceeding. It should be looked upon as an advantage to be admitted into his college, and it is one indeed to be placed in a house, where the youth are carefully brought up, and no sensible parent will ever think otherwise. It would likewise in my opinion be prudent not blindly to receive all the scholars that should be offered, but first to be informed of their manners and characters, especially when they are somewhat grown up, and come from some other college or boarding-house.

But the most important point of discipline is never to suffer any scholar to remain in college that is capable of being prejudicial to others, either by corrupting the purity of their morals, or by inspiring them with a spirit of discontent and rebellion. In these two cases we may without scruple affirm the rule, I am speaking of, should be inviolably observed. To be convinced of it, we need only change the object, and ask one's self, whether one would leave a child that was sick of a contagious distemper with the rest. Is the infection of the morals then less dangerous, or attended with less fatal consequences? Can a principal, who has a just sense of religion, support this terrible, but true reflection, that God will one day demand of him an account of all the souls that shall be lost in college, from his having declined to send away the corrupters, through views of interest, or too great complaisance, or even good nature? *Sanguinem ejus de manu tua requiram*: His blood will I require at thy hand.

When I speak thus, I do not mean that every considerable fault, nor even every immoral action, is a reason for dismissing a scholar. The disease as such is not a reason for sending the sick person out of the infirmary, but only when it is known to be contagious and capable of infecting others. Thus we must bear with a scholar for some time, but when we see that instructions, chiding and punishments are ineffectual and there is cause to apprehend that the evil may spread, the removal of him then becomes absolutely necessary.

I own there is no circumstance, which requires more prudence and discretion in the principal, than this I am speaking of. Nothing but the spirit of God can keep him in a just medium, and inspire him with wisdom to behave so as not to offend through too great gentleness or too much severity. Nor can he in such a conjuncture implore too much his assistance and instruction.

Another means of preserving discipline and good order in a college, is firmly and discreetly to support and establish the authority of the lower masters, to stand stedfastly by them upon occasion, and never to blame them in the presence of the scholars, but to reserve what we have to say to them for their private ear, if it is judged necessary, and there to give them proper advice. To this end the principal should often see them, always receive them with humanity and civility, inform himself by them of the behaviour of the scholars, hear their complaints and opinions, and leave them intire liberty in order to gain their confidence. 'Tis this union, this agreement and good understanding, which is the soul of government. The principal then hears all that passes, and all is managed by his directions. The masters, who are his arms, his ears and his eyes, receive all their motions from him, and he treats them also with the same tenderness, as the apple of his eye, and as so many parts of himself.

The vice-principal, upon whom the care of the discipline in general turns, and who almost universally holds the place, and supplies the absence of the principal, should

in every thing follow his instructions. Vigilance, attention and exactness, form his essential character. Nothing should escape him. During his recreations, whilst he is walking and talking with others, his eyes and his mind must be in another place. He must observe all that passes, and almost without seeming to do it; every motion, every conversation, every particular correspondence, and draw an advantage from them all. And the same may be said of all the other masters, who are equally obliged to be attentive, and can more easily be so, as they have a smaller number of scholars to observe. There are some masters, who think in this point they may in conscience rely upon the person who is intrusted with the publick discipline; but this is a mistake. For every master must answer for his scholars, and is obliged to watch over them at all times, when he is at liberty to do so.

We cannot too much recommend the doing every thing exactly in the time and moment appointed for it. There is little trouble in it, except in the beginning. When the custom is once established, the scholars observe it almost naturally and without any difficulty. It is a pleasure to see a great number of boys disappear at once, as soon as the clock strikes, and leave the court empty; and it is a bad omen of the discipline of a college, when instead of a speedy departure they seem doubtful whether they shall go or no, and loiter one after another. And the same observation will hold good as to every thing else; their going into their classes, the refectory and the church. To establish this order, the principal and vice-principal must set the example, and be there always first.

This disposition to exactness is of great weight in all the employments of life. 'Tis a qualification absolutely necessary to all that are in authority. To this end it is requisite to descend to very minute particulars; to attend to every thing almost without seeming to do so; to foresee at a distance, and prepare for whatever is to be done; not to be satisfied with giving orders,

orders, but to be regularly informed whether they are executed and how ; to see that the slightest injunctions are observed, in order to prevent by that means the breaking of such as are more essential. There are some masters who despise exactness in little things, because they look upon them as trifles ; but they do not consider that though every one of these rules may appear perhaps of very little moment in particular, yet joined all together they form what is called discipline and good order in a college, and that negligence in forming usually induces the ruin of the rest. I could here willingly apply the observation of Livy upon the point of religion. These ceremonies, ⁿ says he, seem now to us small and contemptible ; but it was by not despising them, that our ancestors raised the republick to the height of grandeur, to which it has now attained. *Parva sunt hæc, sed parva ista non contemnendo majorem nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt.*

Not that I think good order in a college should be made to consist in the great number of rules. The multiplicity of laws is not always the sign of a good government. ^o *Ut antebac flagitiis, ita tunc legibus laborabatur,* says Tacitus. They are rather for the masters who know the necessity and advantages of them, than for the scholars who are apt to rise up at the bare name of laws. The example of the former and an habit of practising these rules contracted by the other, is a living law, preferable to all that are written. It were to be wished we could say of a college what the same ^p Tacitus says of the Germans, that good morals there have more force, than good laws in other places. *Plus ibi boni mores valent, quam alibi bonæ leges.*

^h Liv. lib. vi. n. 41.

^o Tacit. Annal. lib. iii. cap. 25.

^p De mor. Ger. cap. 19.

ARTICLE the FOURTH.

Of Education.

BY this word I here understand the particular care that is taken in forming the manners and characters of youth, wherein I suppose a great part of education to consist.

This care relates either to the body or the mind ; and it is the principal's business to see that both are improved.

We may refer all that concerns the body to neatness and gracefulness.

With reference to neatness I cannot do better than quote the express terms of the statute and injunction of the university upon this subject. " The masters must take care that their scholars have no nastiness nor any thing dirty or gross in their dress ; that they do not express a remarkable negligence in their habit ; that their clothes be not torn, their hair uncombed, or their hands unwashed. For it is requisite not only to give them a good taste for learning and the sciences, but also to teach them a civil and courteous manner of behaviour, which are so necessary for society and the commerce of life. On the other hand, the boys must not be allowed to be too gaudy and trim in their apparel, nor must they affect to have their hair pinned up and curled with too much care and art." This injunction is very judicious, as it commands us to avoid the two extremes, which are alike vicious. We must not therefore suffer any affectation of finery in the scholars,

q Provideant pædagogi & magistri, ut sui discipuli abhorreant à cultu immundo, luculento, & agresti ; ne sint insigniter negligentes in vestitu : ne discincti, impexi, illoti : ut non solum in literatura,

sed etiam in communi vitæ usu civilem humanitatem politioremq; urbanitatem edificant. Sed hi, neque lasciviant immodestius, neque tortos arte & studio capillos cincinnosve ferant. Stat. 14. Append.

and

and much less thole airs of *petit maitres*, by which they sometimes strive to distinguish themselves.

Gracefulness with reference to the boys consists in a good address, in having a countenance settled and modest, in walking with an easy and natural air, in keeping themselves upright, in making a handsome bow, in not falling into indecent postures, nor indulging a certain air of negligence. For this end dancing-masters are useful to a certain degree, and Quintilian approves of our making some use of them. *Ne illos quidem reprehendendos putem, qui paulum etiam palæstricis vacaverint.* But he was far from allowing, that such persons should be employed in this office, as were infamous and scandalous by their very profession. *Non abesse ab eo, quem instituimus, quàm longissimè velimus.* He confines this study to a narrow compass, and admits only of the few necessary circumstances we have described above. *Ut recta sint brachia, ne indoctæ rusticæque manus, ne status indecorus, ne qua in proficiendis pedibus inscitia, ne caput oculique ab alia corporis inclinatione diffideant.*

I have elsewhere spoke of politeness, which partly belongs to the body, and partly to the mind. For what is essential in this qualification lies in not being too fond of one's self, nor doing every thing for one's own sake; in avoiding to do or say any thing to offend others; in seeking opportunities of doing them a pleasure; and in preferring their convenience and inclinations to our own. This the masters should principally take care of; and when the boys are exercised in the practice of these maxims, they easily grow polite, and upon going abroad into the world will learn in three months all they want to know in this respect.

But the great and capital application of a principal, and in proportion of all the other masters, is to work upon the genius and humour of the boys, and in this respect do them an infinite service. But herein he

cannot make any great progress by publick instructions, but may by private conversations, in which the boys may open themselves to him, speak to him with liberty, and tell him their grievances; and here they may be taught to know themselves, not to be displeased when they are told their faults, to discover them first and sincerely own them, to enquire after proper methods of amendment, to desire the master's directions upon this head, and to come and give an account to him from time to time of the benefit they have found by them.

Suppose, for instance, that the scholar is naturally addicted to pride and vanity, he talks often of himself, and always with self-esteem and complacency, he boasts upon every occasion of the nobility of his family, the high places of his parents, their wealth and the magnificence of their equipage, furniture and table, and expresses a contempt for every one besides. This fault is not uncommon among boys, and is sometimes found even in those whose parents have nothing to recommend them, but the wealth they have heaped up.

If a principal takes a due care of his college, he cannot avoid being acquainted with his boy's disposition. When he makes him a visit, after some preliminary discourse, which may sometimes last the longer, in order to pave the way for something better and more serious, the conversation must be made to turn upon what relates to this young man. If upon the questions that are put to him, he owns his prevailing fault, and ingenuously confesses it, we should seem to be well satisfied with him, to commend his sincerity, and let him know that a fault acknowledged and confessed, is already half amended. If he does not allow of it, which may happen either designedly or not, we must endeavour insensibly to let him into it by urging particular facts, though without reproach or bitterness, by the opinion of his masters, and even the testimony of his companions; and sometimes he must be allowed time to reflect more maturely upon it. When at last

last he begins to own his fault, we must endeavour to shew him the deformity and ridicule of it; how our own self-love, rightly considered, must give us an aversion for it; as instead of the esteem we propose to ourselves in such foolish boasting, we gain only contempt and hatred. We must lay before him the example of some one of his companions of great worth and merit, that is humble and modest, and esteemed and beloved by all the world. After having thus pointed out to him his disease, we must next proceed to provide a remedy, by enjoining him to talk no more of himself or his family, of his parents, or their wealth and dignity; not to set himself above others in his own opinion, to despise nobody, and to speak advantageously of his companions. About a fortnight after he may be called for again, and after being informed by the masters of every thing relating to him, we gather it all from his own mouth, as though we had heard nothing of the matter, and upon finding that he has made any progress or alteration, he is to be commended, encouraged and exhorted to grow better and better.

I suppose for a second example, that a boy has been untractable and disrespectful towards his master, that he has refused to obey him, has even added some insolent expression, and persists in his obstinacy. The master, instead of punishing him immediately as he deserves, is prudently contented to let him know he is displeased, and remits the punishment to another time. In the mean while the scholar does not reflect himself, nor acknowledge his fault. The principal upon information sends for him, makes him repeat the matter as it passed, and examines whether he speaks true; he makes him both witness and judge in his own cause; he asks him if a scholar ought not to submit to his master; if he ought not to answer him with respect, even though he thought he was not to blame; how much more must he be in the wrong, if the master had reason entirely on his side? Could

colleg

colleg
Is it i
punish
and th
himse
make
ever h
ed wi
nism
the sc
with
than c
ated i
Up
quired
to gai
amiss,
rent
This
seen i
as a sp
it in t
of Soc
for th
The M
of M
took h
fore h
requir
the tru
positio
had un
his kin
expect
made a
terwar
but ve

Vo

college subsist, if such an example was to be allowed? Is it in a master's or principal's power to leave him unpunished? or could he reasonably expect it from them? and thus by degrees a boy may be brought to condemn himself, to own he has deserved to be punished, to make satisfaction to his master, and to submit to whatever he shall think fit. But the master, then contented with the submission, is pleased to forgive the punishment. By such discreet management the fault of the scholar becomes beneficial to him, and concludes with making him love and respect his masters more than ever; whereas an immediate correction had created in him perhaps an aversion for them for ever.

Upon these occasions there is a certain address required in a master, which consists in knowing how to gain upon the mind, to touch gently upon what is amiss, not to go too far, and to lead them by different questions to the point we would bring them to: This was the wonderful art of Socrates, as may be seen in all the dialogues, wherein Plato introduces him as a speaker. We find also an admirable instance of it in the ^s *Cyropædia* of Xenophon, another disciple of Socrates, which may serve as a model to masters for the kind of conversation I am here speaking of. The King of Armenia rebelling against Astyages King of Media, Cyrus marched speedily against him and took him prisoner, and causing him to be brought before him with his wives and children, he began with requiring him above all things to answer according to the truth. Then the King of Armenia, led from proposition to proposition, owned with trembling, that he had unjustly broken the treaty, and deserved to lose his kingdom and his life. But Cyrus, contrary to all expectation, having restored him to his dominions, made a friend of him, whose fidelity and gratitude afterwards became inviolable. The passage is very long, but very beautiful, and deserves to be read with care.

^s *Cyrop.* lib. iii.

But to return to the principal. He may do infinite service by these familiar conversations, wherein the scholars may open themselves to him, and talk to him as to a good friend. One may sometimes employ the hours of recreation in this sort of conversation. When the scholars love and value their principal, they make no difficulty of disclosing themselves to him; but it must be done in such manner, that by his inviolable secrecy he may never give them cause to repent of it. He should principally apply himself to such as are grown up, as they are better able to profit by his instructions, and stand most in need of them. The two years of Philosophy, after which it is usual to chuse the kind of life they design to follow, seem naturally designed to examine their vocation. It is the most important action of life, upon which their temporal happiness and eternal salvation often depend, and is almost constantly left to an age incapable of conducting itself, and but little disposed to take advice.

Before I conclude this article, I must add, that principals are capable, and perhaps obliged too, to do a part of the same services to the scholars, that live out of the college, as they do to the pensioners: For all the youth of the college are committed to their care. When a regent perceives that a scholar begins to be irregular, he may inform the principal of it, who may send for him into his chamber, and give him such instructions, as are necessary to reclaim him.



ARTICLE the FIFTH.

Of Religion.

I Have no need to prove, that this article is the most momentous of all, and that the negligence of the masters upon this point would be very criminal, as it would

would be attended with very bad consequences. We may reduce what we have to say upon this matter to three points, instructions, the use of the sacraments, and the practice of certain exercises of piety.

1. Instructions.

It is easy to comprehend that such boys as leave the college without sufficient instruction in religion, run the risque of being ignorant of it all the rest of their lives; and it is but too plain, that this ignorance is the fatal source of the disorders and irreligion, which almost universally prevail in the world.

The remedy for so great an evil is to make the best advantage of the time, whilst the boys are yet tractable, and naturally inclined to hearken to all the truths of religion. It should be laid down as a principle of christian education, which concerns all masters in general, principals, regents and preceptors, that children are committed to their care by Christ himself, to see that they preserve the precious treasure of innocence, which he has renewed in them by baptism; to make them worthy of the divine adoption, and the glorious title of the children of God, to which he has raised them, to instruct them in all the mysteries of his life and death, and in all the precepts, upon the observation of which their salvation depends. It is this, that Christ will one day require an account of from us, and not whether we have made them good poets or good orators.

Now whence can we derive these points of divine knowledge, but from the sacred books of the Old and New Testament? I beg the masters to read over carefully what M. de Fenelon says upon this article in his book I have already mentioned, *of the education of daughters*, which equally belongs to young persons of the other sex. I shall here quote some passages from it.

“ The stories of the Old Testament are not only proper to awaken the curiosity of children, but by discovering to them the original of their religion,
P 2 “ they

“ they lay the foundations of it in their mind. A
 “ person must be profoundly ignorant of the spirit of
 “ religion not to see that it is wholly historical. It is
 “ by a texture of wonderful facts, that we learn its
 “ establishment, its perpetuity, and all that we are
 “ to believe and practise.

“ It must not be imagined that we have an inclina-
 “ tion to engage young persons to enter deep into the
 “ knowledge of it, by laying before them all these
 “ stories. They are short, various, and calculated
 “ to please persons of the dullest understanding. God,
 “ who knows better than any other the spirit of the
 “ man, whom he has formed, has placed religion in
 “ popular facts, which are so far from over-charging
 “ the simple, that they assist them in conceiving and
 “ retaining the mystery of it.” M. de Fenelon brings
 an instance relating to the mystery of the Trinity;
 after which he adds, “ This example suffices to shew
 “ the usefulness of historical relations. Though they
 “ seem to lengthen out instruction, they very much
 “ abridge it, and take off from the driness of cate-
 “ chisms where the mysteries are detached from facts.
 “ Thus we see that formerly instructions were given
 “ by stories. The admirable manner by which St.
 “ Augustin advises all ignorant persons to be instruct-
 “ ed, was not a method introduced by that father
 “ alone, it was the method and practice of the uni-
 “ versal church, and consisted in shewing, by a series
 “ of historical facts, that the christian religion was as
 “ old as the world; that Christ was expected in the
 “ Old Testament and reigned in the New; which is
 “ the substance of the instruction of a Christian.

“ This requires indeed somewhat more time and
 “ care than is usually spent by a great many persons
 “ upon instruction; but then religion is not truly
 “ known, unless we descend to these particulars; and
 “ whoever is ignorant of them, can have no other than
 “ confused notions of Jesus Christ, of the Gospel, of
 “ the Church, and of the main virtues which Christi-

“ anity should inspire us with. ‘ The historical cate-
“ chism lately printed, which is plain and short, and
“ far clearer than the common catechisms, contains all
“ that is necessary to be known upon this subject.
“ Thus it cannot be said that it requires a great deal
“ of study.”

M. de Fenelon, after he has run over and pointed out the most remarkable stories of the Old and New Testament, adds as follows; “ Choose out the most
“ wonderful stories of the martyrs, and something in
“ gross of the heavenly life of the first Christians, add
“ to them the courage of young virgins, the surpriz-
“ ing austerities of the monks, the conversion of the
“ Emperors and the empire, the blindness of the
“ Jews and their terrible punishment, which still sub-
“ sists.

“ All these stories, discreetly managed, will give
“ the children with pleasure the whole series of reli-
“ gion from the creation of the world to our own
“ time, which will inspire them with very noble ideas,
“ and such as will never be erased. In this history
“ they will see the hand of God always raised to de-
“ liver the righteous and confound the wicked. They
“ will be accustomed to see God doing all in every
“ thing, and secretly leading to his designs such crea-
“ tures as seem most remote from them. But in this
“ collection such stories must be chose, as convey the
“ most pleasing and sublime images, as we must use
“ our utmost endeavours to make religion appear
“ beautiful, and august to the children; whereas they
“ usually represent it to themselves, as something mo-
“ rose and insipid.”

A solid instruction, like this we have mentioned, is a powerful remedy against superstition. “ Nothing
“ must ever be suffered,” says the same M. de Fene-
lon, “ to be mingled with the faith or the practice of
“ piety, which is not taken from the gospel, or au-
“ thorized by a constant approbation of the church.

f Of M. l'Abbé Fleury.

“ The children must be discreetly guarded against
 “ certain abuses which some are tempted to look upon
 “ as points of discipline, who are not well instructed.
 “ We cannot entirely avoid it, unless we go back to
 “ the original, search into the institution of things,
 “ and the use which the Saints have made of them.

“ Accustom then the children, who are naturally
 “ too credulous, not lightly to give into certain stories,
 “ which want authority, nor to practise certain devo-
 “ tions, which an indiscreet zeal has introduced, with-
 “ out waiting for the approbation of the church.”

We see by what I have just mentioned the manner
 of giving youth solid instruction, and the necessity of
 employing the time spent in college, in teaching them
 “ to know Christ, his precepts, principles and reme-
 “ dies ; in thoroughly explaining the gospel ; in mak-
 “ ing them acquainted with the worth of man, whom
 “ God alone can make happy, with his fall and mi-
 “ sery, for which the incarnation and death of a God
 “ were alone capable of providing a remedy. The
 “ corruption of his own heart, which is subdued by
 “ self-love, and an affection for sensible objects ; his
 “ inability to do any good of himself, and without
 “ the grace of Jesus Christ ; and the continual danger
 “ he is exposed to by concupiscence, which still sub-
 “ sists though conquered.—It is also very impor-
 “ tant to inculcate into them the great and efficacious
 “ truths of religion ; how terrible God is in his judg-
 “ ments ; how different we shall find the state after
 “ death from our present notions ; how great a misery
 “ it is to lose God irrevocably ; how black sins are
 “ which are committed after baptism ; of what weight
 “ the life and death of Christ are to us, for which
 “ we must give an account ; how great folly there is in
 “ despising eternal happiness ; what holiness the grace
 “ of the new law requires in those who are dead and
 “ buried with Christ, washed in his blood, consecrat-

t Instruēt. sur la man. d'élever les Nov. tom. I. des lettres de
 piété.

“ ed

“ ed b
 “ fles
 “ Di
 The
 ing wh
 is doub
 boys i
 time a
 for all
 pect f
 give t

Sun
 These
 work
 are a
 us wh
 know
 requi
 on th
 gave
 work
 days
 but t
 It w
 cons
 was
 culia
 He v
 day
 mig
 bide
 plac

t
 u
 w
 x
 y
 keep
 that
 kee

“ed by the infusion of his spirit, nourished by his
“flesh, and united in so intimate a manner to his
“Divinity.”

There is no person, in my opinion, but upon reading what I have here laid down, must agree that this is doubtless the only method of rightly instructing the boys in matters of religion. This method requires time and care, but we are sufficiently recompenced for all our pains, by the fruit we have reason to expect from it. Let us now enquire when we must give these instructions.

Sundays and holidays are the natural time for it. These days by their institution are set apart for divine worship, of which the word of God and instruction are a principal part. We know that they are with us what the sabbath was amongst the Jews, and we know likewise under how severe a punishment God required it to be kept holy. *“Whoever doth any work on the sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.”* He gave up to the Jews the six other days for their own works, but reserved the seventh for himself. *“Six days shalt thou labour and do all that thou hast to do; but the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God.”* It was a day favoured by him with certain privileges, consecrated only to his worship, and over which he was jealous as of a day that belonged to him in a peculiar manner. *“Ye shall therefore keep the sabbath.”* He would not suffer them to walk abroad upon that day, but required them to tarry at home, that they might meditate there more freely upon his law. *“Abide ye every man in his place; let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.”* And y lastly, it is surprizing

P 4

to

t Exod. xxxi. 15.

u Ibid. xx. 9, 10.

w Ibid. xxxi. 14.

x Ibid. xvi. 29.

y Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep. ——— that ye may know that I am the Lord. ——— Ye shall keep the sabbath therefore, for it

is holy unto you: Every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death. ——— Six days may work be done, but in the seventh is the sabbath of rest, holy unto the Lord: whosoever doth any work on the sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death. Wherefore the children

P 4

of

to see how often and with what threatening God in a small number of verses repeates and inculcates this precept, and with what force he recommends the observation of it. It is very plain that God no less requires of us the sanctification of sundays and holidays, and consequently we see of what importance it is to accustom the boys early to the observation of them, and the rather as this precept is almost generally broken by all conditions, and especially among persons of quality. Thus it is a wise rule laid down in several colleges, not to let the pensioners go abroad on sundays and holidays, but to employ the greatest part of those days in giving them instructions about religion. Parents have no cause to be displeased with the principal, who is exact and inflexible upon this point; at least they cannot suspect him of consulting his own interest in it.

I have found by experience, how useful M. de Fenelon's maxim is of teaching the boys religion by historical facts, and at the same time how agreeable to that age. The greatest part of the instructions I gave in college turned upon the Old Testament. All the great truths of religion, either in point of doctrine or morality, are to be found there; and laid down in this manner, they make an impression on the mind of young people, which is the more strong and lasting, as they are joined to historical facts, which are not so easily erased out of their memory.

To these instructions, which I regularly gave after morning and evening service, I joined another, which was still more useful. When their recreation was ended, which upon those days should be very long, for children stand in need of rest and refreshment, they all retired to their chambers. Then the biggest boys spent an hour in reading in their closets three or four historical chapters of the Old Testament, of which they

of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual

covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel forever. *Exod. xxxi. 13—17.*

came

came
evenin
observ
in the
sensibl
more
gested
this fo
instru
prove

Be
the w
chism
have
whilft
pit, v
rence
more
succe
of a
and p
lime,
religi
fet d
give
plain
exac
thing
have

I
struc
tial o
ward
ower
God
and
tions
that
selve

came afterwards to give me an account towards the evening in the chapel. I asked the scholars, without observing any order, what they had taken notice of in their reading, and have oft been surprized at their sensible and judicious reflections, which I valued the more as they came from themselves and were not suggested to them. It is easy to comprehend how useful this sort of exercise may be to the boys, not only to instruct them in religion, but likewise for the improvement of their understanding and judgment.

Besides these instructions there must be one day in the week set apart for the explanation of the catechism, and this is usually practised in all colleges. I have elsewhere spoke of the manner of catechising, whilst I was discoursing upon the eloquence of the pulpit, which must be different according to the difference of ages. I shall here make but one observation more, which I have seen practised with a great deal of success. The instructions which are given to scholars of a more advanced age, as in the class of rhetoric and philosophy, must be more emphatical and sublime, and generally turn upon a continued plan of religion. In some colleges the scholars are obliged to set down in writing what they have understood, and give a summary of the catechism which has been explained to them, and several will do it with such an exactness, as is surprizing to the masters. The same thing is practised in several parishes of Paris, and I have known some young girls succeed in it very well.

I shall say but one word more concerning the instructions relating to servants. It is one of the essential duties of the principal. He owes them this reward for the services they do the college, and he owes this example to the boys, to teach them what God will one day require of them. Persons of wealth and quality are almost entirely ignorant of the obligations they lie under in this particular. They forget that their servants have any other master than themselves, whom they ought to serve and consequently

322 *Of the Duties of the Principals*

know, and that for this reason it is their indispensable duty to see them instructed in religion, to watch over their conduct, to allow them time, and procure them means of fulfilling the duties of Christianity; that they owe them these spiritual assistances still more than their food and raiment; that they must answer to God for the salvation of those that serve them, no less than their own; and that they are included in the number of those, whom St. Paul recommends the care of in such terms as should make all Christian masters tremble, *z but if any provide not for his own, especially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel.* There is therefore an absolute necessity of instructing youth in this duty, and giving them an example of it, by the exact care taken in the instruction of servants.

It might be of use to give servants now and then such books as are proper to instruct them in religion, and increase their piety, a New Testament, the Imitation of Jesus Christ, and other books of like nature. The expence is not very great, and may draw down a blessing upon the college. The principal, masters and parents may all contribute something towards it; and it would be neither indifferent or difficult to accustom the boys to give something out of their pocket-money for the use of these pious liberalities.

2. Of the use of Sacraments.

As the Sacraments are the ordinary channel, by which God communicates to us the assistances we stand in need of to live and die like Christians, it is very important to inspire the boys with a profound respect for these sacred springs of grace and salvation, which will accompany them all the rest of their lives, and will learn them early to make an holy and beneficial use of them.

z. 1 Tim; v, 8,

I. Of

1. Of Baptism.

We now receive Baptism at an age, which does not admit of our attention either to the august ceremonies that are observed in it, or to the engagements we take upon ourselves. It is therefore necessary to recal them to mind at a time when we are better able to profit by them. We must not therefore fail to make the children renew the vows they made in their baptism, either upon the anniversary of the day they received it, or upon the eves of Easter and Whitsuntide, which were formerly the only days, whereon this Sacrament was administred in a publick and solemn manner.

To reap the greater advantage from this pious practice, it may be proper to have the boys present at the baptism of some child, that they may have the stronger impresson of what is afterwards to be explained to them. “ This, says M. de Fenelon, will give them a deeper sence of the spirit and end of it. “ By this you’ll make them understand how great it is to be a Christian, and how shameful and terrible it is to be such as the generality of mankind are. Often put them in mind of the promises they made in their Baptism, to shew them that the examples and maxims of the world should be so far from having any authority over us, that they ought to make us suspect whatever flows from so odious and poisonous a source. Fear not to represent to them with St. Paul, the Devil reigning in the world, and influencing the hearts of men with all the violent passions, which make them fond of riches, glory and pleasures. It is this pomp, you may say to them, which still more properly belongs to the Devil than the world; ’tis this spectacle of vanity, to which a Christian must not open his heart, or his eyes. The first step a Christian makes by Baptism is to renounce all the pomps and

P 6 “ vanities”

“ vanities of this wicked world. To be fond of the
 “ world after such solemn promises made to God, is
 “ to relapse into a kind of apostacy.”

2. Of the Eucharist.

The first communion of the boys should be looked upon as the most important action of their lives, for which they cannot be too much prepared. They must be disposed for it some time before, be early spoke to about it, be taught to consider it as the greatest happiness that can happen to them on earth, be inspired with an eager desire after it, and above all have a thorough sense of the great purity of morals which so sacred an action requires.

It is hard to fix the time of the first Communion, as it must not depend upon the age but the disposition of the children, and still more upon the state of their consciences.

The sentiments of M. de Fenelon upon this article are in my opinion very judicious, and without presuming to lay down a rule for any body, I think it proper to propose it here: “ The first Communion,
 “ says he, should as I think be made at the time when
 “ the infant, arrived at the use of reason, shall appear most apt to learn, and exempt from every considerable fault. ’Tis amidst these first fruits of
 “ faith and the love of God, that Jesus Christ will
 “ exhibit himself to him by the graces of the Communion. When therefore we shall find the qualifications here spoke of united in the children, a
 “ fund of docility and an exemption from every considerable fault, and consequently a great purity of
 “ manners, the first fruits, that is, the beginning
 “ though as yet weak and imperfect, of faith and the
 “ love of God. We have reason to believe that
 “ God will give a blessing to a first Communion received in this condition, and that it may serve to
 “ strengthen and increase such happy dispositions more
 “ and more.

“ When

“ When on the other hand we observe quite opposite dispositions in the children, an express indocility which bears instructions and remonstrances with pain ; vicious habits, to which their frequent relapses prove that they are very much addicted ; no notion of faith ; no mark of the love of God ; it is then evident, that we ought to delay it, till we have better evidence of a sincere change and a true conversion.”

The same may be said of the other Communions during the whole course of the year. The boys should be inspired with a fervent desire of communicating often, be made to understand that the body of Christ should be our daily bread, that the primitive Christians very often approached to the Eucharist, and derived thence that strength and courage, which were then so necessary to them, and are now no less necessary to us ; and that the greatest or rather the only grief of a Christian should be to see himself deprived of the Communion through his own fault.

a Unus sit nobis dolor hâc escâ privari.

At the same time they must be well instructed in the dispositions necessary for the worthy receiving of the Eucharist, and above all be made sensible, what a horrible crime it is to receive it with a conscience defiled with any mortal sin ; that this would be to betray Christ by a kiss like the perfidious Judas ; to crucify him afresh ; to tread underfoot the Son of God ; to count the Blood of the Covenant wherewith he has sanctified us, an unholy thing ; and to do despite unto the Spirit of grace. We ought to use our utmost endeavours to inspire the boys with all possible horror for receiving unworthily ; and I think they are very happy, when they carry from college a sincere and solid respect for the Sacraments.

a Chrysostom.

3. Of Devotions.

There are certain short and easy devotions, which are no trouble to the boys, but may put them in mind of several duties which are usually neglected, and accustom them to give piety a share in most of their actions.

We cannot too earnestly nor too frequently inculcate into the boys those words of the Gospel: ^a *This is life eternal, that they might know the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom thou hast sent.* They teach us that true piety is founded on the knowledge of God and Jesus Christ, that is, of his mysteries, his precepts and his example. What the evangelists relate of his behaviour in his infancy, should be perfectly known and familiar to them, especially ^b what he did in the temple at twelve years old, a valuable circumstance which it has pleased Christ to preserve in the Gospel, that boys might find there a perfect model of all the virtues, that are suitable to their age. ^c He must often be represented to them, as full of tenderness for children, as laying his hands upon them and blessing them, giving them access to him, declaring that the kingdom of heaven belonged to them, and willing to consider what was done to them as done to himself.

As soon as the children awake in the morning, as if God said to them that moment, ^d *My son give me thy heart*; let them answer, "I offer myself to thee, O God, with all my heart." ^e *Corde magno & animo volenti.* And let all their studies begin with a short prayer.

Prayers before and after meals are regularly observed in every college; and though nothing can be more just and reasonable than to pay this publick homage to the goodness and liberality of God, from whom we have

^a Joh. xvii. 3.^b Luke ii. 41. 52.^c Matt. xix. 13, 14. Luke ix. 48.^d Prov. xxiii. 26.^e 2 Macc. i. 3.

every thing, and to whom we ought consequently to return thanks for all ; yet now to the shame of our age this sacred custom, confirmed by the use of all times, even among the Pagans, is abolished more and more every day amongst us, especially with the rich and great, who have scarce any footsteps of it amongst them, and seem as though they were ashamed of appearing Christians. The children should be forewarned against these abuses, by being accustomed even at breakfast and drinking to beg a blessing upon the food they are about to eat. One may take occasion to instruct them upon this subject, by explaining to them what is said of Jesus Christ ; that as he sat at meat with his two disciples that went to Emmaus, *He took bread and blessed it, and brake it, and gave to them.*

I have no need to take notice of the indispensable obligation we are under to pray every day for the King's most sacred Majesty. The statute of the university is herein very exprefs, and is exactly observed.

We must likewise remember the wants, whether publick of the church and state, or private of our relations and friends.

We must not forget in Ember weeks to put the boys in mind of joining with the common prayers of the church, and desiring of God, that he would be pleased to grant us repentance and pardon our sins, to bestow his blessing upon the fruits of the earth, and to give his church good pastors and ministers. Upon the day of ordination they may add this prayer taken out of Scripture. *Lord Jesus, thou fold of the sheep, by whom whosoever entreth in shall be saved ; Thou good shepherd, who hast laid down thy life for the sheep, have mercy upon thy people, who are afflicted and scattered abroad, as sheep not having a shepherd. The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few ; we pray thee therefore, the Lord of the harvest, to send forth labour-*

f Luke xxiv. 30.

g Job. x. Mat. ix. Act. i.

ers into thy harvest. Thou, Lord, who knowest the hearts of all men, shew whom thou hast chosen. Amen.

When any of our relations or friends, any bishop or magistrate is dangerously ill, we may say every day at the end of our meals. ^h *Lord, he whom thou lovest is sick.* When he is out of danger we may return thanks for him thus. *We give thee thanks, O Lord, for thy servant, whose sickness was not unto death, but for thy glory.* If he dies, we may pray to God for him after his death.

Every scholar may give notice of the day of his birth and baptism, and desire the rest to remember him at the morning service, and give thanks for it for him and with him.

These small devotions, which are very easy in themselves, and which have place upon different occasions, according to different wants, are of service, as we easily see, to inspire youth with a disposition towards piety, and to accustom them early to discharge certain duties of religion, which are usually not known or neglected.



CHAP. II.

Of the Duty of the Regents.

AF T E R what I have already said of the manner of teaching, which principally concerns the regents, I have little to add upon this subject. I shall reduce it to four or five articles; the discipline of the classes; the exercises made in them to qualify the scholars for appearing in publick; the compositions and publick actions; the studies of the masters; and the application of all that has been said to the order and government of the classes.

^h Job. xi. 5.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE the FIRST.

Of the discipline of the classes.

THIS consists in keeping the scholars in order, in making themselves heard in silence, and obeyed at the first signal; in which the authority of the master is principally seen, a rare quality, but absolutely necessary for the maintaining of an exact discipline. I have spoke of it in another place.

I have likewise already observed that emulation is the great advantage of the classes. We cannot be too careful to excite and support it among the scholars. There are a thousand different ways of succeeding in it, which depend upon the industry and activity of a master, zealous for the advancement of his disciples. The greatest art and skill lies in inspiring boys of a moderate genius with an inclination to take pains.

But the most essential part of the discipline of the classes relates to morality and religion; not that I think the regents ought to speak much or frequently upon this subject, for this would be the surest way to disgust the boys. But this object must be their principal motive, and always in view. They must never lose sight of it, though they do not seem always attentive to it. They must artfully lay hold of every occasion that offers to make some remarks, or lay down some principles which relate to it; and though it be but sometimes a word which seems dropped by chance, yet it is very often attended with great effects. Thus a comparison drawn from the publick shews by St. Augustin, whilst he was explaining a passage of a certain author in rhetorick, served to open the

ⁱ Et fortè lectio in manibus erat, quam dum exponerem, opportunè mihi videbatur adhibenda similitudo Circensium, quo illud, quod insinuabam, & jucundius & planius fieret, cum irrisione mordaci eorum, quos illa captivasset infans. Conf. lib. vi. c. 7.

eyes of St. Alipius, who was then his disciple, and was fond of those shews to a degree of frenzy.

Besides these publick and common instructions, the regent may still be very serviceable to the scholars by his watchfulness over their conduct; by the particular conversations he has sometimes with them; by his instructions and admonitions; by the care he takes of placing them in the class near such companions, as may not be dangerous to them, and by a thousand other circumstances of a like nature.

One of the surest means to be useful to them, is to keep up an acquaintance with their parents, to get information from them of their characters and conduct; upon the first absence of a scholar to give him immediate notice of it, to prevent the consequences, for which otherwise he might be responsible. This practice is more especially necessary in philosophy, when the scholars are allowed a greater liberty. I know the generality of parents give themselves little trouble about seeing the professors, and I shall hereafter have occasion to speak upon this abuse, but their carelessness must not hinder nor diminish the others zeal.

I should do wrong to the probity and religion of the professors, if I spent any time here in proving that the care of instilling good morals is an essential part of their duty. To think otherwise would be to throw a blemish upon themselves, and sink them below the condition of Pagan masters.



ARTICLE the SECOND.

To make the Scholars appear in publick.

THERE are several ways of improving the boys in speaking, and of making them appear in publick, which may all have their use. I shall here men-

tion

tion only two, which are most in practice in the university; to which I shall add some instructions and rules concerning pronunciation.

I. Of Exercises.

By exercises are meant the publick acts in which the scholars give an account of the authors they have read either in their class or in private, and of all that has been the subject of their studies. This sort of exercise must have been judged very useful, and been entirely acceptable to the publick, since in a very little time, without any order of the university, it has been adopted by all the colleges, past from thence into private houses, and made its way into all the provinces.

In short, the plainest, most natural, and at the same time most advantageous manner of producing the boys in publick, is this method of making them give an account of the authors, which have been explained to them. By this means they are kept to a close application during a whole year, and obliged to pursue their studies with greater attention, by looking forward upon the publick at a distance, as the future witnesses and judges of the progress they shall make. They likewise acquire a decent assurance, by being early accustomed to appear in publick, to speak before company, and not be afraid of being seen; and by being cured of a timidity, which is natural and pardonable in that age, that might be an obstacle to part of the good they may afterwards do, and which often becomes invincible, when care is not taken to conquer it in their youth.

Some persons have been of opinion, that we ought to make them speak Latin in these exercises. I was once in the same way of thinking and practice; but experience has convinced me that it was less useful to the boys. The principal end proposed by them is to prepare them for the employments they are one day to exercise, to give instructions, to plead, report affairs, and

and to speak their opinions in company. Now all this is done in the mother tongue, and almost in the same manner as in these exercises. Besides, can it be thought easy, or even possible for a young man to explain himself elegantly in Latin? How great a restraint must this be to a scholar? Is it not to take from him the other half of his understanding, and to disable him from producing his thoughts clearly, wherein the advantage and pleasure of these exercises principally consist? And lastly, is it fit we should absolutely neglect the care of our own tongue, which we are to make use of every day, and give up our whole application to dead and foreign languages? The sentiments of the public upon this point have been very clear.

We are now to enquire after what manner these exercises are to be made. The surest means of succeeding in them, as in every thing else, is by uniting pleasure with profit.

Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit utile dulci.

The useful must take place, that is, a young man must have carefully studied the author, whom he undertakes to explain; he must give an account of the difficulties that are found in him; clear up the obscure places; shew the force and energy of the thoughts and expressions; and endeavour to render the sense and beauties of the original in the translation, he shall give of it *extempore*.

If the exercise is in Greek, especially at the beginning, the respondent must be able to give an account of every word, what it is, in what case, and why; what tense, and mood, what is its signification, and whence it is derived, and must be able to form *extempore* all the tenses of a verb, agreeably to the rules of his grammar; and the same may be said in respect to a Latin author with reference to young beginners. They must also have some acquaintance with the historical facts related in it, of the situation of the towns and rivers mentioned, as also of the fables, if any occur. In the

higher cl
extent.

This i
the basis
always f
perfect
he is to
master's
what ag
gramma
the audi

There
very mu
able.

apply h
which h
in the t
that he
stories,

the boo
this I

two las
two th
shew t
of the
should
I thi
spoke c
ercises

a parti
scholar
times
the be
prepar
than a
by tau
well,
occasi
gator.

high

higher classes these parts of learning must have a larger extent.

This is what I call the ground of these exercises, the basis whereon they are built, and which must be always supposed; that is, in effect, that the scholar is perfect master of the authors and subjects, whereupon he is to answer. But he must not stop here; and the master's skill in these exercises lies in introducing something agreeable, and avoiding the driness and mere grammaticality, which is apt to make them tedious to the audience.

There are two things in my opinion, which may very much contribute to make these exercises agreeable. The first is, that the respondent particularly apply himself to point out the beauties of the author which he explains, upon which I have been very large in the two first volumes of this work. The second, that he makes judicious reflections upon the facts and stories, as likewise upon the maxims, which occur in the books, whereof he gives an account; and it is of this I have endeavoured to give some models in my two last volumes. I have always observed that these two things were very grateful to the audience; as they shew the boys taste and judgment, which is a matter of the greatest moment, and to which the masters should chiefly apply themselves.

I think therefore, that besides the main study I have spoke of, in which the useful and solid part of these exercises consists, we may prepare certain passages after a particular manner, give some sheets of them to the scholars, and make them read them carefully several times over, and even get them by heart, especially at the beginning. It is sure that passages thus carefully prepared by a skilful master, must please much more than any thing a boy can say *extempore*. He is hereby taught and accustomed to think justly and speak well, he adds reflections to it of his own, which are occasioned by the questions asked him by the interrogator. But I do not think it proper to charge the memory

mory of the boys with a great number of these kind of sheets; for fear they should rely too much upon the masters care, and not take the pains they ought of themselves, but neglect even the study of the author upon whom they are to answer.

There is another manner of interrogating, which contributes very much to set off the respondent, upon which we may say the whole success of an exercise depends. Our business here is not to instruct the scholar, and still less to perplex him with intricate questions, but to give him an opportunity of shewing what improvements he has made. We are to sound his understanding and strength. We must therefore propose nothing to him beyond his capacity, nothing, to which we may not reasonably presume that he can give an answer. We must choose out the beautiful passages of an author, upon which we may be sure he is better prepared than any other, and which by their beauty most nearly concern the hearer. When he makes a repetition, he must not be interrupted inopportunately, but be suffered to go on till he has done, and then the difficulties are to be proposed with so much art and perspicuity, that the scholar, if he has any capacity, may discover in them the solution he is to give. The objector must lay down this rule, that he must speak little, but put the respondent upon talking much; and lastly, he must endeavour to make him only appear to advantage, without considering himself, by which means he will never fail to please the audience, and gain their esteem.

The ordinary subject of the exercises must be what is explained in the class, during the course of the year. So that by way of preparation little else is wanting, than to attend diligently to the instructions of the professor. A more industrious scholar, who has also private assistance, may add something farther of his own; and herein his zeal is very commendable, provided this extraordinary pains be not prejudicial to the essential duties of the class.

I would

I would have laid it down as a rule in these exercises, whatever author is explained, especially if it is in Greek, to begin with an explanation upon opening of the book, and that the scholar should express in few words, what is the meaning of the passages, upon which he first casts his eye. It is the means of obliging the respondent to be equally prepared upon the whole, and to prove to the auditors that the exercises are justly performed.

This foundation once laid, I must repeat it again, that we ought to use all our care to make the exercises agreeable. We have often seen very numerous audiences pay a surprizing attention for a very long time, because the subjects were treated of in a very engaging manner.

A boy, for instance, is to answer upon the Gospel of St. Luke in Greek. After he has explained by way of trial, as I have said, some line on both sides upon the opening of the book, he stops at the most remarkable history; for instance, that of Lazarus and Dives. He repeats it by adding such Latin and Greek passages of the Gospel, as contains some excellent maxim. *And it came to pass that the beggar died and was carried by the Angels into Abraham's bosom. — The rich man also died, and was buried, and in hell he lift up his eyes. — I am tormented in this flame. — But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy life time receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things. But now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.* The scholar is asked, which of the two he had rather be, the rich man or Lazarus; and he makes no hesitation about the choice. He is then asked his reasons, and the passage which he explains, supplies him with them. By this means the way is pointed out, and an opportunity given him of making very solid reflections of his own, or at least from the book he has in his hand, upon the principal circumstances of this story. Upon this occasion they are made to rehearse whatever is said in the

k Luke xvi, 22, 24, 25.

same

same Gospel upon poverty and riches. It is easy to discern how by this means under the appearance of teaching a boy the Greek language, very excellent principles may be instilled into him, and the audience seem always to break up well satisfied with this sort of exercise.

When the scholars answer upon Quintus Curtius, Sallust, Livy, or some lives of Plutarch; how many reflections may be made upon the actions of the great men there mentioned? It is not surprizing that auditors of understanding and taste should be charmed with the many excellent things they hear said by the boys, and with seeing them apply what is most useful and solid in the ancient authors.

One of the exercises, which meets with the best success, and is most pleasing to the publick, is upon rhetoric. A boy is made to read certain select passages of Tully and Quintilian, wherein the great principles of eloquence are laid down; and these he is made to learn by heart, during the course of the year, instead of his ordinary lessons. He is then obliged to make an application of them to the orations of Demosthenes and Tully, which have before been carefully explained to him. He is next made to point out the difference of stile and character in those two great orators, who have been ever looked upon as the most perfect models of eloquence. The best lawyers we have, who were present in great numbers at such an exercise, performed by the ¹son of an eminent magistrate, went away extremely well pleased; and it must be owned the respondent spoke with all the grace that could be desired.

There has lately been an attempt made to introduce a new kind of exercise into the college, which we have reason to hope will be attended with great advantage from the good success it has already met with. It relates to the French tongue. ^m Two younger brothers

¹ The eldest son of the Procureur General M. de Fleury.

^m Sons of the same M. de Fleury.

one of which was in the fifth class, and the other in the third, were made to read some select remarks upon this language, that were carefully extracted from several books, which treat upon this subject. They made the application of them to certain passages, taken from the history of Theodosius by M. Flechier, which were proposed to them upon the opening of the book, and they observed at the same time, as is usual in explaining a Latin author, whatever was most beautiful and remarkable either as to thought and expression, or the principles and conduct. This interrogation, added to the other subjects of that exercise, seemed very acceptable to the publick, and gave reason to wish that it may be continued for the future. And indeed is it not reasonable to cultivate the study of our own natural tongue with some care, whilst we spend so much time upon ancient and foreign languages?

2. Of Tragedies.

This kind of exercise has been of long standing in the university, and is still in use in several colleges, whilst others have wholly laid it aside. Without taking upon me to condemn those of my brethren, who think differently from me upon this head, which is not my office, I cannot avoid extremely approving their conduct, who think they ought absolutely to reject the custom of exercising boys in declamation, by making them repeat tragedies, as in my opinion this custom is attended with very great inconveniences.

1. What a burthen is it upon a regent to be obliged to make a tragedy? Is not the profession hard enough of itself, without loading it still farther with the yoke of so heavy and disagreeable a task?

2. I call it an heavy and disagreeable task, because he can scarce ever promise himself, that he shall succeed in it. We know how much pains M. Racine was at in composing the plays, he has left behind him, and yet besides an admirable genius for poetry, and very singular talents for theatrical representations, he was

absolute master of his time. What then can we expect from a regent, who is otherwise very much employed, and may have all the merit that belongs to his profession, without the talent of writing good French verse, much less of making large poems?

3. If any thing is likely to ruin the health of a professor, it is the exercising eight or ten scholars in declaiming for a considerable time. He must have lungs of iron, as Juvenal expresses it of the masters of rhetoric, to hold up under so terrible a fatigue.

Declamare doces, o ferrea pectora, Vetti.

I appeal for the truth of it to experience.

4. It often happens, that the scholars under pretence of preparing for the tragedy, abandon or neglect the essential duty of the class for near two months, which is no small inconvenience.

5. I do not insist upon the expence, which necessarily attends these tragedies, nor upon the difficulty there often is to find actors, who sometimes think they have a right to treat the professor as they please, because he cannot do without them.

6. Farther, the boys derive no solid or lasting advantage from this exercise. For usually a day or two after the tragedy is acted, they forget all they have been at so much trouble to learn by heart.

Part of these inconveniences has been endeavoured to be remedied, by making choice of tragedies composed by the best authors, and adapting them to the theatre of the colleges, that is, by cutting off the parts the women have in them; and it must be owned they have in some measure succeeded therein, and by this means have filled the memory of the boys with excellent pieces of poetry, which may be very useful for the improvement of their understanding and taste.

7. But there may be a fault even in this custom which is common to good and bad tragedies. ⁿ Quint

ⁿ Ne gestus quidem omnis ac motus à comœdis petendus est. Quamquam enim utrumque eorum

ad quendam modum præstare debet orator, plurimum tamen ab à Scenico. Quintil. lib. i. c. 11.

tilian

tilian
renc
tors.
of se
the b
must
public
8.
exerc
only
der, v
over v
care o
attent
9.
nience
may b
that is
creatin
very n
eyes o
to this
fond of
especial
Wh
tinue th
them a
to the d
support
is one o
cannot
have fee
together
nity and
who du
which o
sented.
are seve
great re

tilian observes after Tully, that there is a great difference between the pronounciation of players and orators ; though it must be owned that the one may be of service to the other. If so, why should we exercise the boys in a manner of pronounciation, which they must necessarily avoid, when they come to speak in publick ?

8. One of the greatest troubles of the regent in this exercise, as I have often experienced, and am not the only one that has done it, is to keep the scholars in order, whom he is often obliged to join all together, and over whom it is difficult to have a proper eye ; as the care of forming the actors actually takes up the whole attention of the master.

9. To be short, I shall conclude with the inconvenience that must be looked upon as the greatest, as it may be prejudicial to piety and good manners ; and that is, the danger there is in this sort of exercise of creating a desire both in masters and scholars, as is very natural, of informing themselves with their own eyes of the manner they ought to act tragedies, and to this end of frequenting the theatre, and growing fond of plays, which may have very bad consequences, especially at their age.

What contributes most, if I mistake not, to continue the use of tragedies, is that several look upon them as the only means of giving a certain solemnity to the distribution of prizes so necessary to excite and support a spirit of emulation among the boys, which is one of the great advantages of colleges. To this I cannot oppose a better answer than experience itself. I have seen the prizes distributed for above twenty years together in common exercises with very great solemnity and a great concourse of persons of distinction, who during the whole exercise kept a profound silence, which does not always happen when plays are represented. This is not peculiar to one college. There are several wherein these exercises are performed with great reputation, and very lately in the college De la

Marche, there was one for the distribution of prizes, where the audience was very numerous and well chosen, and the ° respondent acquired a very great reputation.

All these reasons, joined together, make me think, that tragedies are less proper for the boys, than the other exercises, I have spoke of. But as every one is at liberty to think as he pleases, and opinions differ upon this subject, I shall not blame those who keep to the old custom, and use all the caution necessary in it.

One of the most essential in my opinion is not to give the passion of love any admittance into the tragedies, how honest and lawful soever it may appear.

“ Whatever excites love, p says M. de Fenelon, the
 “ more artful and concealed it lies, appears to me
 “ more dangerous.” M. de Rochefoucault is of the same opinion. “ All great diversions, says he, are
 “ dangerous to a Christian; but of all that have been
 “ invented, there is none we have so much reason to
 “ fear as plays. The passions are there so naturally
 “ and artfully delineated, that they raise and imprint
 “ them in our heart, especially that of love; and principally, when it is represented as chaste and honest;
 “ for the more innocent it appears to innocent souls,
 “ the more capable they are of being affected with it,
 “ &c.”

I speak not here of the balls and dancing, which sometimes accompany tragedies, because this custom has no place in the university.

There has farther crept in a more intolerable abuse, expressly q forbidden by the law of God; I cannot tell whence it arose, though it has lasted a long time; I mean that of dressing the boys in tragedies in women's clothes. Could they not know for the course of so many years, that such a custom, to use the words of Scripture, was abominable in the sight of God? The im-

o The son of M. de Fieubet
 counsellor of parliament.

p *Educat. des filles.*

q The women shall not wear
 that which pertaineth unto a man,

neither shall a man put on a woman's garment: for all that do so are abomination unto the Lord thy God, Deut. xxii, 5.

prudence of some person, perhaps very ignorant, or not over religious, might have at first introduced it; and then the custom was followed without reflection, when once established. As soon as the university forbade it, all the world opened their eyes, and submitted to so prudent and necessary a regulation. Those who had the greatest share in it, were principally determined to it by what they had heard of a famous professor, a man of excellent probity, who upon his death-bed expressed a great concern for having given into this custom, which he knew had occasioned disorders among some of his scholars. We should place ourselves in that hour and situation, to form a right judgment of what we ought to follow or reject in this life.

3. Of Pronunciation.

I have promised to say somewhat of pronunciation, which is a part of rhetoric, and this is the proper place for it. There is cause to fear that the masters neglect it too much, both as to themselves and their scholars. We ought, especially in the higher classes, to set apart one day in the week to exercise the boys in declaiming, for at least the space of half an hour. This custom was regularly practised whilst I was a scholar, and I followed it exactly after I became a master. Quintilian's treatise upon pronunciation is short, but excellent; and may be very useful to the masters, if they join with it that of Tully. There is another in French, but in manuscript, which belonged to the famous M. Lenglet, who excelled in the art of pronouncing still more than in other things. I shall make use of these different treatises in laying down the most general rules about pronunciation, and such as are most in use.

r M. de Belleville professor of rhetoric in the college du Plessis.

f Lib. xi. cap. 3.

t Lib. iii. de Orat. n. 213, 217.

u M. Lenglet had it of a famous actor in his time named Floridor.

w The answer of Demosthenes, when asked what he thought the chief point in eloquence, is known to all the world, and shews, that this great man looked upon pronunciation, not only as the most important qualification of an orator, but in a certain sense, as the only one. In short it is that quality, which can least of all conceal its own defects, and is most capable of hiding others; and we often see, that a mean discourse delivered with all the force and charms of action has a better effect, than the most beautiful oration without them.

Action consists of two parts, which are the voice and gesture, one of which strikes the ears, and the other the eyes; two senses by which we convey our sentiments and thoughts into the minds of the hearers.

I. Of the Voice.

* Quintilian ascribes the same qualifications to the voice and pronunciation as to discourse.

1. It must be correct, that is, exempt from faults, so that the sound of the voice and the pronunciation may have something easy, natural, and agreeable in it, accompanied with a certain air of politeness and delicacy, which the ancients called urbanity, and consists in removing from it every foreign and rustick sound.

2. The pronunciation must be clear, to which two things will contribute; first the right articulation of every syllable; for sometimes some are suppressed, whilst others are but lightly touched upon. But the most common fault, and most carefully to be avoided, is the not dwelling long enough upon the last syllables, and letting the voice fall at the end of periods. y As

w Cic. l. iii. de orat. n. 213.

z Emendata erit, id est vitio carebit, si fuerit os facile, emendatum, jucundum, urbanum; id

est, in quo nulla neque rusticitas, neque peregrinitas resonet. Quintil.

y Ut est autem necessaria verborum

it is necessary to express every word, nothing is more disagreeable or insupportable, than a slow and drawling pronunciation, which calls over, in a manner, all the letters, and seems to count them one after another.

The second observation is to know, how to sustain and suspend the voice by the different rests and pauses, which enter into the same period. One instance will explain my meaning, which I shall take from another passage of ² Quintilian. The points here express the pauses. *Animadverti judices, omnem accusatoris orationem . . . in duas . . . divisam esse partes.* This short period contains but one sense, which is not to be distinguished by any comma, except at the word *judices*, which is an apostrophe; and yet the cadence, the ear, and even the breath require different rests, in which all the harmony of pronunciation consists. By accustoming the scholars to make these pauses, as they read even where there are no commas, they will be taught at the same time to pronounce well.

3. An ornamented pronunciation is that which is assisted with an happy organ, an easy, loud, flexible, firm, durable, clear, sonorous, mild, and piercing voice. For there is a voice made for the ear; not so much by its compass, as by a facility of being managed at will, susceptible of every sound from the strongest to the softest, from the highest to the lowest ^a; like an instrument well strung, which gives the sound the hand directs it to express. Besides this, a great force of breath is required, and lungs capable of holding out through the longest periods, and of dwelling upon them.

We do not make ourselves understood by violent and great pains, but by a clear and distinct pronunciation; and the principal skill is shewn in artfully ma-

borum explanatio, ita omnes computare & velut annumerare literas, molestum & odiosum.

^z Lib. ix. cap. 4.

^a Omnes voces, ut nervi in fidibus, ita sonant ut à motu animi quoque sunt pulsæ. Cic. lib. iii. de Orat. n. 216.

naging the different fallies of the voice, in beginning with a tone, that may be raised or depressed without difficulty or constraint, and in so governing the voice, that it may be fully exerted in such passages, where the discourse requires great force and vehemence, and principally in studying and copying nature in every thing.

The whole beauty of pronunciation lies in the union of two qualities, to all outward appearance opposite and inconsistent, equality and variety. By the first the orator sustains his voice, and governs the rise and fall of it by fixed rules, which hinder him from being high and low as by chance, without observing any order or proportion. By the second he avoids one of the most considerable faults in pronunciation, I mean, a tedious keeping on in one and the same tone; and on the other hand he ^b diffuses through it an agreeable variety, which awakens, raises and charms his audience, herein ^c resembling the painters, who by a vast number of shadows and colourings, almost imperceptible, and an happy mixture of the light and shade, know how to set off their pictures, and give them the just proportions which every part demands. Quintilian applies this last rule to the first period of the exordium of Tully's beautiful oration in defence of Milo. This passage deserves to be read to pupils.

There is another fault no less considerable, which likewise comes very near it, and is that of singing what one speaks. This canting consists in depressing or raising with a like tone several members of a period, or several periods together; so that the same inflections of the voice frequently return, and almost constantly in the same manner.

4. Lastly, the pronunciation must be proportioned to the subjects expressed. This is more especially seen

^b Quid ad aures nostras, & actionis suavitatem, quid est vicissitudine, & varietate, & commutatione aptius? Lib. iii. de Orat. n. 225.

^c Hi sunt actori, ut pictori, expositi ad variandum colores. lb. n. 217.

in the passions, which have^d all, if I may be allowed the expression, a peculiar language and a particular tone. For anger shews itself one way, compassion another, and so the rest. ^e To express them well, we must begin with having a deep sense of them; and to this end we should lively represent things to ourselves, and be affected with them, as if they actually passed in us. Thus the voice, as the interpreter of our sentiments, will easily convey the same disposition into the mind of the auditors, it has derived from our own conceptions. It is the faithful image of the soul; it receives all the impressions and changes that the soul itself is capable of. Thus in joy it is clear, full and flowing; in sorrow on the other hand it is slow, dull and gloomy. Anger makes it rough, impetuous and interrupted. In the confession of a fault, making satisfaction, and intreating it becomes smooth, fearful and submissive. In a word, it follows nature and borrows the tone of every passion.

The voice also varies, and assumes different tones, according to the different parts of a discourse. It conforms itself to the difference of sentiments, and sometimes, though rarely, to the nature and force of certain particular expressions. ^f It would be evidently ridiculous, to begin a discourse all at once in a loud and violent strain; as nothing is more proper to gain upon others, than modesty and reservedness. Narrations designed to interest the audience in the point related require a simple, uniform and calm voice, not much different from what we use in conversation, and so of all the rest.

^d Omnis motus animi suum à nobis acceperit, hunc judicium quendam à natura habet vultum, animis dabit. Est enim mentis & sonum, & gestum, &c. iii. de index, & velut exemplar: ac totidem, quot illa mutationes habet. Orat. n. 216—219. Quintil.

^e In his primum est bene affici, & concipere imagines rerum, & tanquam veris moveri. Sic velut media vox, quem habitum

^f A principio clamare, agreste quiddam est. iii. de Orat. n. 227.

II. Of Gesture.

Gesture naturally follows the voice, and conforms itself in like manner to the sentiments of the soul. It is a mute language, but eloquent, and often has more force than speech itself.

As the head has the first place among the parts of the body, it has it also in action. The first rule is to keep it up and in a natural posture, the second to suit its motions to the pronounciation and the action of the orator. When we refuse or reject, or shew that we have an horror or execration of any thing or person, then at the same time that we repel with the hand, we turn aside the head as a mark of aversion.

The countenance has a principal part in this point. There is a kind of motion or passion which it does not express. It threatens, it caresses, it intreats, it is sorrowful and merry, it is proud and humble, it testifies friendship towards some, and aversion to others, it gives us to understand abundance of things, and often says more than the most eloquent discourse could do.

I never could comprehend how the use of masks came to continue so long upon the stage of the ancients. For certainly, it could not but suppress in a great measure the vivacity of action which is principally seen in the countenance, and may properly be considered as the seat and mirror of all the sentiments of the soul. Does it not frequently happen, that the blood, according as it is moved by different passions, shall sometimes overspread the countenance with a sudden and modest suffusion, sometimes inflame and kindle it into

The actors wore masks, which covered the whole head, and besides the features of the face represented the beard, the hair, the ears, and all the ornaments of the womens head-dress. This may explain what Phædrus says in the fable of the mask and the fox.

*Personam tragicam fortè vulpes viderat,
O quanta species! inquit; cerebrum non habet,*

rage, sometimes by retiring from the cheeks, leave them pale and cold with fear, and at other times diffuse through it a gentle and amiable serenity. All this is expressed in the countenance. Now a mask by covering it deprives it of this emphatical language, and takes from it a kind of life and soul, which makes it the faithful interpreter of all the sentiments of the heart. I am not therefore surprized at the remark which Tully makes, when he is speaking of Roscius as an actor. Our old men, ^h says he, judge better than we, by not entirely approving even Roscius himself, whilst he spoke under his mask.

ⁱ But the countenance has likewise one part supereminent above the rest, viz. the eyes. 'Tis by them especially that the soul displays itself, and shews itself in a manner externally; so that even without moving of them, joy shall make them more lively, and sorrow overcast them with a kind of cloud. Add to this, that nature has given them tears, the faithful interpreters of our thoughts, which impetuously force themselves a passage in grief, and flow gently down in joy. But how expressive are they in the different motions imparted to them; they are bold or languid, haughty and threatning, mild, rough or terrible, and all this according to our wants, and the occasion?

To be short ^k, I pass to the hands, without the assistance of which action would be languid and almost dead. How many motions are they capable of, since there is scarce a word which they are not sometimes eager to express? For the other parts of the body aid and con-

^h Quo melius nostri illi senes, qui personatum, ne Roscium quidem, magno opere laudabant. Lib. iii. de Orat. n. 221.

ⁱ Sed in ipso vultu plurimum valent oculi, per quos animus maximè emanat, ut, citra motum quoque, & hilaritate enitescant, & tristitia quoddam nubilum ducant. Quinetiam lacrymas his natura mentis indices dedit: quæ, aut erumpunt dolore, aut lætitia

manant. Motu verò intenti, remissi, superbi, torvi, mites, asperifunt: quæ, ut actus poposcerit, finguntur. Quintil.

^k Manus verò, sine quibus trunca esset actio ac debilis, vix dici potest quot motus habeant, cum penè ipsam verborum copiam persequantur. Nam ceteræ partes loquentem adjuvant: hæc (prope est ut dicam) ipsæ loquuntur.

tribute to discourse, but these may be almost said to speak of themselves, and be understood. We know that the ¹Pantomimes professed to represent exactly, and in a manner to paint in their gestures and postures all the actions and passions of mankind. ^mThe ancients called this act of the Pantomimes a kind of dumb musick, which had found out a method of substituting the language of the hands to that of the mouth, of speaking to the eyes by the assistance of the fingers, and of expressing by silence more eloquent and emphatical than words themselves, what could scarce be explained by discourse or writing.

The motion of the hands naturally follows the voice, and must conform to it. In common gesture, whilst we pronounce a period, we must carry the right hand from left to right, beginning at the breast and ending at the side, the fingers being a little raised above the wrist, open and at liberty, and the arm extended at full length, without raising the elbow as high as the shoulder, but keeping it always clear of the body, and observing that the gesture must ordinarily begin with the motion of the elbow. After this we carry the left hand from right to left, with the same proportions as were observed in the motion of the right hand. The arm must be held after each gesture close

1 A Prince of Pontus coming to Nero's court upon some business, and having seen a famous Pantomime dance with so much art, that though he understood nothing of what was sung, yet he was thereby able to comprehend what was meant, upon his departure desired the Emperor to make him a present of that dancer. And upon Nero's asking what use he would make of him; why, says he, I have certain barbarians bordering upon my dominions, who speak a language which no body understands, and this man by his gestures shall serve me as an interpreter. Lucian de saltat.

^m Hanc partem musicae disciplinae mutam nominavere majores scilicet quæ ore clauso manibus loquitur, & quibusdam gesticulationibus facit intelligi, quod vix narrante lingua, aut scripturae textu, posset agnosci. Aurel. Cassiod. lib. i. Epist. 10.

Loquacissimæ manus, linguosæ digiti, clamorū silentium, expressio tacita . . . Idem, lib. iv. Epist. ult.

Mirari solemus Scenæ peritos, quod in omnem significationem rerum & affectuum parata illorum est manus, & verborum velocitatem gestus assequitur. Senec. Epist. 121.

to the side, till the period is at an end ; and when it is finished, the two hands must fall negligently upon the desk, if it is from thence we speak, and never below it ; or at their full length before, if we speak standing, without any support ; or upon the knees, if sitting on a chair. There are a thousand methods of varying these gestures, which are to be learnt from use and exercise alone.

There is a second kind of gesture relating to the extent and dimensions of every thing.

To express any thing that is high, we must lift up our eyes as high as we can, without scarce raising the head, but turning it a little on one side, and throwing down both arms together at their full length, but keeping them clear of the body, and so as to have the outside of the hands turned towards the auditor.

To shew the depth of any thing, we must cast our eyes down to the ground, and stretch out both our arms on the opposite side somewhat raising them, and shewing the outside of the hand, which is next the auditor, the other remaining more raised and free.

To express breadth, it suffices to extend both hands at the same time, beginning always directly before us, and ending at the two sides, but so as to keep the hands always upon a level with the wrists, and to carry our eyes round the whole space, they are able to comprehend.

To express length, we must stretch out both our arms either this way or that, but on the same side, so as to keep the hands upon a level with the wrist, the elbow, and one another, the inside of the hands being turned downwards.

The third kind of gesture relates to the passions. This matter is too large possibly to enter into an account so short as this, in which my design is only to lay down the most general and necessary rules. The masters will easily supply the rest.

The

The masters of the art take notice, that the motion of the hand must begin and end with the sense, because otherwise it must either precede the discourse, or last longer than it. Now both these would be faulty,

We must not pretend to lay down fixed and certain rules upon the subject I am here treating of. One thing, as Quintilian observes, suiting well with one, which would fit ill upon another, without our sometimes being able to give a reason for it; so far, that in some the ⁿ refinements of pronunciation shall not be graceful, and in others the very faults not displease. • Thus every one in forming his action must not only consult the general rules, but carefully study his own actual disposition and personal qualifications.

But the most important precept of all, both as to the voice or gesture, is to study nature, to look upon it here as in every thing else, as the best master and surest guide that can be followed, to place the perfection of the art in a perfect imitation of it, endeavouring only after the example of painters to embellish and set it off a little, but without ever swerving from a just likeness. When children are at liberty amongst themselves, and when in discoursing together they break out into some heat, they are under no difficulty in seeking either for tone or gesture. All comes to them as it were mechanically, because they only follow the impulse of nature. Why when they are put upon declamation, do we find them for the most part almost dumb, motionless, confused and perplexed? It is, because they think that then they must speak and act in a very different manner, in which they are much mistaken. For which reason we cannot too early, when children are put upon speaking in the classes, or made to repeat their lessons, accustom them to assume a natural tone, that is, such as they use in their fa-

ⁿ In quibusquam virtutes non tantum ex communibus præceptis, sed etiam ex natura sua capiat vitia ipsa delectant, consilium formandæ actionis.

o Quare norit se quisque, nec.

miliar

miliar
one, th
tion co
which
should
to spea
at all.
look l
nothin
princip
eloque
Only tr

Q. Q.

I T
the
establi
manne
famou
the glo
ling in
must l
inherit
possibl
Th
monly
ces, g
all the
respec
mage,

miliar discourse; and the same may be said of any one, that is to speak in publick. Nor is this observation contrary to the study of the voice and gesture; which I have so earnestly recommended. This study should be applied to in the closet; but when he comes to speak, the orator must not seem to have studied it at all. All must flow easily from him. Art must look like nature, his voice and gesture must shew nothing studied, and he must call to mind this great principle, which in general relates to all the parts of eloquence. *p Nothing is beautiful but what is true. Only truth is amiable.*



ARTICLE the THIRD.

Of Compositions and publick Actions.

IT is by compositions, either in verse or prose, that the regents do most honour to their colleges, and establish their own reputation in a more eminent manner. The university has at all times abounded in famous poets and orators, who have strove to keep up the glory it has so long acquired of shining and excelling in all kinds of literature; and every professor must look upon this glory of the university as a precious inheritance, which he is obliged to preserve, and if possible, to augment by his labour and application.

The compositions I am here speaking of are commonly such as celebrate the name and actions of princes, generals, ministers and magistrates, in a word, all the great men who distinguish themselves in any respect whatsoever; and it is a kind of publick homage, which the university pays to virtue and merit.

But it must be remembred, that this homage is in reality due only to virtue and merit; and that when it is not founded upon truth, it degenerates into a shameful adulation, equally dishonourable to the person who commends, and the person commended. We must therefore never praise what is not truly laudable; and that usually with modesty and caution, by avoiding all extravagant exaggerations, which serve only to render what we say suspected.

There is a manner of commending so evidently false, and so directly opposite to the taste and judgment of the publick, that a person of common sense in my opinion cannot help avoiding it. Thus when Nero made the funeral oration of the Emperor Claudius his predecessor, he was^q attentively heard in all the rest; but when he came to speak of his prudence and wisdom, the audience could not help laughing, though the oration was very eloquent, and drawn up by Seneca, who had a very fruitful genius and a very florid stile, according to the taste of that age, though he sometimes wanted judgment.

There is another fault less shocking in appearance, but not less blameable, because it is contrary to religion; and that is to give Princes the attributes which belong only to God, by considering them as the masters of nature; as disposing of it at their pleasure; as changing the order of the seasons, as they think fit, and making them believe that by conferring the title of minister, they likewise confer merit; an impious flattery, not to be pardoned even in a Pagan, who applying to an Emperor, that had assumed the character of a God, and had committed to his care the education of the young Princes his nephews, ^r intreats him

^q Cetera pronis animis audita. Postquam ad providentiam sapientiamque flexit, nemo risui temperaret, quanquam oratio à Seneca composita, multum cultûs præferret, ut fuit illi viro ingenium amœnum, & temporis illius auri-

bus accommodatum. Tacit. Annal. lib. xiii. cap. 3.

^r Ut quantum nobis expectationis adjecit, tantum ingenii aspiraret; dexterque ac volens adsit, & me, qualem esse credidit, faciat. Quintil. lib. iv. in Præf.

to inspi
necessa
and ma
a jealou
which
zeli, an
blasphem
capable
Christia

The
rent ma
a prude
herein
and artf
praise in
even wh
what el
garius sa
thing bu
call to r
ther of
præter i
this mar

^u Hor
to descr
to have
advised
design w
as migh
commen
tutus.

least he
tues of A
nanimity
say, is i
indirect
as Scipio

to inspire him with all the understanding, that was necessary in the discharge of so noble an employment, and make him such as he judged him to be. There is a jealous ear, that I may use the scripture expression, which hears such discourse with indignation, *† Auris zeli, audit omnia*; and we cannot say how far such blasphemies, for I do not scruple to call them so, are capable of drawing down misfortunes and curses on a Christian kingdom.

The taste of sound eloquence inspires a very different manner, and infuses, especially in point of praise, a prudent discretion and a wise sobriety. We must herein imitate, as much as is possible, the ingenious and artful address of the ancients, who knew how to praise in a curious and delicate manner, and sometimes even whilst they seemed to be employed upon somewhat else. *†* Tully in his beautiful oration for Ligarius says, he hopes that Cæsar, *who never forgets any thing but the injuries that have been offered him*, will call to mind the inviolable attachment which the brother of Ligarius had to him; *Qui oblivisci nihil soles præter injurias*. One word thrown into a discourse in this manner, is worth a whole panegyrick.

‡ Horace declaring that he has not capacity sufficient to describe the glorious victories of Augustus, seems to have nothing in view but to answer those, who had advised him to leave off writing satyr; but his real design was to commend that Prince in such a manner, as might not offend his extreme delicacy in point of commendation; *cui male si palpère, recalcitrat undique tutus*. The reply he makes by Trebatius, that at least he might celebrate the private and pacifick virtues of Augustus, his justice, his constancy and magnanimity, as Lucilius had done Scipio's, this turn, I say, is in the same taste, and still more pleasing by the indirect comparison of this Prince with so great a man as Scipio was.

† Wild, i. 10.

‡ Cic. pro Ligar. n. 35.

u Lib. 1. Satyr. 1.

354 *Of the Duty of the Regents.*

M. Despreaux, the worthy disciple of Horace, has in several passages imitated his master's skill in commending; but I question whether any where in a more beautiful and ingenious manner, than where he puts the panegyrick of Lewis the fourteenth into the mouth of Sloth.

Ah, where are fled those happy times of peace,
When idle Kings, dissolv'd in thoughtless ease,
Resign'd their scepters, and the toils of state
To counts, or some inferior magistrate:

Loll'd on their thrones, devoid of thought or pain;
And nodding, slumber'd out a lazy reign? - -

But 'tis no more: That golden age is gone,
And an unwearied Prince fills Gallia's throne.
Each day he frights me with the noise of arms,
Slights my embraces, and desires my charms.
In vain does nature, seas and rocks oppose
To bar his virtue, which undaunted goes
Thro' Lybia's burning sands, and Scythia's snows.
His name alone my trembling subjects dread;
Not his own cannon does more terror spread.

This is a master-piece in its kind, and whoever can introduce any thing like it into a copy of verses, may safely rely upon the approbation of the publick.

Praises and panegyricks are not the only subjects of poems and publick actions. Others may be chosen which are no less fruitful to the orator, and may equally please persons of a good taste; such as dissertations upon eloquence, poetry, history, or some point of literature. Examples may be found in the collection which has lately been published of several pieces in verse or prose by the professors of the university.

As the discourses I am now speaking of, whether panegyricks or dissertations, are principally made for shew, I know that according to the rules of sound rhetorick, one may pompously display in them the riches of eloquence, and the art which elsewhere should be concealed, may here shew itself with more liberty.

liberty.
we m
will al
strive
and esp
turns,
ignorant
dicious
The
the col
teres, a
an orat
correct
wife ex
tions a

W

A

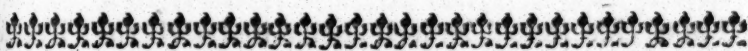
W

does n
which
scholar
bour a
tain de
but by
not sto
into th

A re
teaches
stance
what t
still les
upon t

liberty. But yet this must be done with caution; and we must remember that a solid and judicious discourse will always meet with applause, and that we must not strive to be distinguished by witticism and gingling, and especially must take care to avoid such affected turns, and that kind of points which may please an ignorant multitude, but disgust every sensible and judicious hearer.

The panegyrick of Trajan by Pliny the younger, the collection of such discourses entitled *Panegyrici veteres*, and still more the works of Seneca, may supply an orator with abundance of thoughts, but he must correct them by the stile of Cicero. We have likewise excellent models of this kind in the funeral orations and academical discourses of the moderns.



ARTICLE the FOURTH.

Of the Studies of the Masters.

WHAT I have said of compositions and public acts makes a great outward shew, but does not comprehend the essential duty of a regent, which consists in the solid instruction he owes to his scholars. To succeed in this, he stands in need of labour and study. Even the lowest classes require a certain degree of learning, which is not to be acquired but by reading. Besides, a professor ordinarily does not stop there, and must qualify himself for passing into the superior classes.

A regent's first study must relate to the points he teaches, and the authors he explains. Thus for instance a grammarian is not allowed to be ignorant of what the ancients have written upon grammar, and still less of what the Mess. de Port Royal have left us upon that head. A professor of rhetoric must have imbibed

imbibed his art from the same sources, and have thoroughly studied the old Greek and Latin rhetoricians. Not that either of them should load their scholars with a great number of precepts, but in order to make a choice they must all be known; and an able master, that hath both judgment and capacity, will find a great assistance from what he reads towards instructing youth.

I am of the same opinion with respect to authors. The most easy have their obscurities; and a regent must have all the interpreters, or at least the most esteemed upon those he explains. There are indeed abundance of trifles amongst a great many solid remarks; but he must make choice, and distribute such only amongst his scholars, as are suitable to their age and capacity.

Besides the study of the class, a regent must acquire such a fund of erudition, as is essential to a man of letters. He should be well acquainted with the Greek, and no stranger to history; nor must the extent of these branches of knowledge frighten him from pursuing them. It is incredible how far an hour or two spent regularly every day in study, will carry him by the end of the year; let him but have courage only to begin, and if possible to join himself to some diligent and well disposed person of the fraternity, and let them confer together upon the authors they have separately read, and read nothing without making extracts, noting what relates to different subjects, as eloquence, poetry, history and antiquity. I remember to have read over in this manner a great while ago almost all the lives of Plutarch with a skilful friend, who had an excellent taste. We set apart an afternoon in every week for this small conference, which was made as we walked abroad, when time permitted. We mutually communicated what we had found most beautiful and remarkable, each proposed his difficulties, and we were often surprized that we had passed over passages too lightly, in the notion that we had understood them, when in reality we did not.

I know

I know
ing and
lations.

Livy
in such
Beauva
sometin
versatio
in the
years th
finished
in the
down a
give th
which l

It is
quisite
ly advis
library,
income.
tuitous
and I m
ourselfe
cessary
trade to
school-r
not forb
him as
make a
not we
no book

It is
ing one
of sense
observes
treats h
designec

w

I know no exercise more agreeable to persons of learning and understanding, than such walks and conversations.

Livy had been read over entirely some time before in such conferences held once a week in the college de Beauvais, where some professors of other colleges were sometimes pleased to be present; and though the conversation was not long, for it began after school time in the evening, yet at the end of a certain number of years the author was read through, and the work finished. M. Crevier, now regent of the second class in the college de Beauvais, held the pen and took down all the remarks, which he one day designs to give the publick, with a new edition of that author, which I hope will be to general satisfaction.

It is plain, that a certain number of books are requisite for this sort of study, and I cannot too earnestly advise the professors to collect each of them a small library, greater or less, according to their wants and income. The King's liberality in establishing a gratuitous instruction in all our colleges, has enabled us, and I may add, laid us under an obligation of putting ourselves to this expence, which is as absolutely necessary to our profession, as the instruments are in any trade to the workmen. ^w Alcibiades meeting with a school-master, who had none of Homer's works, could not forbear giving him a box on the ear, and treating him as an ignorant fellow, and one who could not make any other than ignorant scholars; and might not we say the same thing of a professor, who has no books?

It is difficult to have a taste for letters without having one for books, which are the enjoyment of a man of sense, especially in his old age, as Tully elegantly observes in a letter to his friend Atticus, where he intreats him to reserve his library for him, which he designed to purchase with part of his revenue. ^x *Bib-*

^w *Ælian. lib. iii. cap. 38.*

^x *Lib. i. Ep. 9.*

liothecam

liothecam tuam cave cuiquam despondeas, quamvis acrem amatorem inveneris: nam ego omnes meas vindemiolas eò reservo, ut illud subsidium senectuti parem. In another letter he tells him, that this acquisition will complete his wishes, and make him the happiest man in the world. *Noli desperare fore ut libros tuos facere possim meos. Quod si assiquor, supero Crassum divitiis; atque omnium agros, lucos, prata contemno.*

Whilst I am writing this, I am informed that a professor affected with the same desires as Tully, and with the same taste, has not scrupled to charge himself with an annuity of four hundred livres a year, in order to purchase the library of one of his brethren, & lately deceased in the university, who had made a good use of his books. I wish the example of both may meet with followers.

We are nearly concerned to excite amongst us, or rather to preserve that taste of knowledge and learning, which has always reigned in the university, and to excite in ourselves a noble emulation by the remembrance of the great men, who have done it so much honour, and whose names are so well known, and so much respected throughout the Christian world, Budæus, Turnebus, Ramus, Lambinus, Muretus, Buchanan, Passeratius, Casaubon, all professors in the university, or the college royal.

'Tis this taste of learning and books, which has acquired France so many famous Printers, that have carried the art of printing to the highest degree of perfection. I cannot help inserting here what we read in M. Baillet concerning the famous Stephens's, who have rendred their name immortal, not only by the neatness and beauty of their Hebrew, Greek and Roman characters, but their singular exactness, and

y M. Heuzet, author of the two Latin books for the use of young beginners which I have mentioned above, and who was farther preparing to publish some other pieces, that might be very useful to youth.

their

their ability and great disinterestedness, which made them prefer the publick interest to their own.

The œconomy of Robert Stephens's house, ^z says this author, was excellent. He received no workmen into his printing-house, but such as were skilled in Greek and Latin, and capable of being masters elsewhere. He had besides this men and maids, who were not allowed to talk any thing but Latin, as well as all the workmen in the printing-house. His wife and daughter understood it perfectly, and were obliged with all the domesticks to talk nothing else. So that the store-houses, the chambers, the shop, the kitchen; in a word, from the top of the house to the bottom, all spoke Latin at Robert Stephens's. This generous printer had usually ten men of learning in his house, all of them foreigners, **who** corrected his impressions under him; and not satisfied with the application he gave to the correction of the several proofs which came from his presses, he publicly exposed the printed sheets before they were taken off, and promised a reward to such as should find out any faults in them.

The shop of that famous printer was almost admirable, for the zeal, taste, and eager pursuit after books and sciences; for application and exactness in the discharge of his duty; for disinterestedness, nobleness of soul and sentiments, and the love of the publick. It certainly would not be wrong or dishonourable in us to copy after so excellent a pattern; and this has been my view in this small digression, which I hope the reader will excuse.

^z Jugem. des Sav. tom. 3.

ARTICLE the FIFTH.

The application of some particular rules to the government of the Classes.

THERE is nothing mentioned in this work, but what is commonly practised in the classes, excepting two articles, the one relating to the study of the French tongue, and the other to history, upon which I could wish that more time and care were spent than is usual. Under the study of history I comprehend geography, chronology, fable and antiquities. There is often occasion to speak of them in the classes, but they are not usually taught there in a constant and regular manner by principles and method.

These studies are allowed to be an important part of the education of youth, and to be either absolutely necessary to them, or at least extremely useful. But it is questioned, whether they can enter into the scheme of the classes, where the whole time seems taken up with the multiplicity of the other matters taught in them; and certainly the case is not without difficulty, though I do not think it absolutely impracticable.

First, as to the French tongue, half an hour twice or thrice a week spent upon this study might suffice, because continued through the whole course of all the classes. Till such time as a book is drawn up for the use of the boys, containing the most necessary rules of grammar, and the principal observations of M. de Vaugelas, F. Bouhours, &c. upon the French tongue, the masters may content themselves with explaining one or other of them to their scholars by word of mouth, and making the application of them to some beautiful passage in a French book. Fifteen or twenty rules and observations would suffice for one year.

History

His
ner.
for the
Fable
story
rors fo
perors

I do
shoul
would
possibl
to be
they fl
to tim
quilit
the bo

We
wit, t
which
the O
which
much
fourth.

for chil
the oth
tiful an
ther in

I ho
fabulou
boys.
of Gal
tioned
printed
posed.

Wha
and Ro
have en
employ
and pa
VOL

History might be distributed in the following manner. That of the Old and New Testament should be for the three lowest classes, the sixth, fifth, and fourth; Fable and Antiquities for the third; the Greek History for the second; the Roman down to the Emperors for Rhetorick; and lastly, the History of the Emperors, for Philosophy.

I do not mean, that all these portions of history should be explained to the boys in their class, for that would take up too much time, and be absolutely impossible; but I would have a certain task given them to be read by themselves in private every day, which they should be obliged to give an account of from time to time in their class. To this end it would be requisite to have books drawn up expressly for the use of the boys.

We have two excellent ones for sacred history, to wit, the Historical Catechism of M. l'Abbe Fleury, which may serve in the sixth; and the Abridgment of the Old Testament, lately printed for John Desaint, which the Journals of Paris and Trevoux have very much recommended, may serve for the fifth and fourth. The first is a short abridgment made expressly for children, and adapted to the meanest capacity; the other is much larger, and includes the most beautiful and remarkable part of the Old Testament, either in point of facts, sentiments, or maxims.

I hope we shall soon have a small treatise upon the fabulous history proper to be put into the hands of the boys. In the mean time they may make use of that of Galtrucius or F. Jouvenci. I have already mentioned a small Abridgment of the Roman Antiquities printed in 1706, which may serve till a larger is composed.

What we most want, are histories of the Greeks and Romans expressly written for the use of youth. I have engaged to write the former, and shall diligently employ myself about it. They may turn their views and pains upon the Roman History; in the mean

VOL. IV. R while,

while, we may make use of the Universal History of M. de Meaux; which indeed is a very short abridgment as to facts, but makes a considerable amends by the excellent reflections it contains. We have another abridgment of the Roman History translated from the English of Lawrence Echard, which is a very good one and long enough. The History of the Revolutions of the Roman Republick, by M. l'Abbe de Vertot, and that of the Triumvirate, may suffice to give the boys a just idea of the latter times of the republick.

It would be a very useful work, and in my opinion a very easy one, to abridge what M. de Tillemont has left us upon the History of the Roman Emperors. We find in this history illustrious examples of the greatest virtues, and perfect models in the art of government. The reading of this work would suit mighty well with the students in philosophy, and equally prepare them for the study of theology and of the law. By this means the boys would have a tolerable knowledge of ancient history, and be much better qualified to enter afterwards upon the study of the modern.

Upon the bare exposition, which I have made, all the world will doubtless agree, that it were to be wished such a plan could be executed; as it is evident, that the boys instructed in this manner would carry away from college abundance of useful and agreeable knowledge, which might be of great service to them all the rest of their lives. Let us examine therefore, whether this plan is practicable or no. Now in the manner I propose it, it is in my opinion very easily reduced to practice. For I require only of the professors to set their scholars every day a certain task, and appoint them a certain number of pages to read in the books of history, which I suppose they have in their hands, and to make them give an account from time to time of what they read, which may amount to about half an hour every day. I know well that several of them may happen to misapply this time, and the same will fall out in all their other studies. But as this is by far
the

the most agreeable, there is cause to hope, that the greatest number will apply to it with pleasure, especially if care be taken to set a mark of honour upon it, to give it admission into the publick exercises, to propose prizes and rewards for such as shall distinguish themselves in it, and to employ all the means which the industry of an able and diligent master will not fail to suggest to him.

Chronology is naturally joined to history, and nothing is more easy, or takes up less time than to give the boys a general idea of it, sufficient to let them know very nearly at what time the events passed, which they read of; and that is all that can be expected from them. We must likewise never fail to make them acquainted in some measure with the author explained to them, the principal circumstances of his life, and the time when he lived. One day as I was explaining the passage, where Quintilian mentions the Greek historians, a young man asked me, why he made no mention of Plutarch. He had read several of his lives, but had not been taught at what time and under what Emperors he lived.

As to geography, it may be taught the boys without taking up much time or trouble. The plainest and easiest way of fixing it in the memory, and at the same time historical events, is whenever a city, river, or island is mentioned in an author, to be exact in pointing them out upon a map. By following a general through all his expeditions, such as an Hannibal, a Scipio, a Pompey, a Cæsar, or an Alexander, the boys will have occasion to pass over all the memorable places of the world, and by that means imprint for ever in their mind the series of facts and situation of towns. When they are a little accustomed to this method, it will be very easy to teach them the degrees of longitude and latitude and the whole doctrine of the sphere. Thus it may be very proper, in order to teach them modern geography, to engage them sometimes at home to read certain pages of the Gazette, and oblige them to trace

out upon the map the different places mentioned in it. All this is but a kind of diversion, and yet will teach them geography in a more lasting manner, than all the regular lessons that are given them in form.

What I am here saying supposes, that the children have maps in their chambers, and indeed they should never be without them; and I question whether it would not be profitable to have them likewise in every class. It would be sufficient to have a large map of the world, with maps of the Roman Empire, Greece and Asia Minor, and some few others of the like sort. The expence would not be very great, and might fall upon the scholars, as these maps must be renewed from time to time. I know that this custom has been put in practice in some colleges with success. Perhaps also one might add to them two tables of chronology, one of which should come down to the birth of Christ, and the other to our own times.

In proposing these different studies, I do not mean that the Latin or Greek tongues should either of them be neglected. We may easily, if I am not mistaken, reconcile them together. What should principally prevail in the classes is the business of explication; that of a Greek author especially I would never have omitted, but that half an hour should be spent upon it every day. This is a small matter, and yet when that time is regularly employed, it goes a great way by the end of the year. The repetition of lessons requires the least time, as it is the least serviceable to the scholars; a quarter of an hour in my opinion is enough for it, especially in such classes as are not very numerous, and the rather as it returns twice a day, and on Saturdays, when the lessons of the whole week are repeated, a longer time is spent upon it.

The care of a master, who is concerned for the welfare of his scholars, and wisely frugal of time, will induce him to manage every moment with so much œconomy, that he will find enough for all the studies I have mentioned.

C H A P. III.

Of the Duty of Parents.

Quintilian will have the parents duty commence from the very moment their children are born, by the care he requires them to take of procuring them nurfes, and having fervants about them of known wifdom and probity ; and he afterwards infifts upon a continual diligence in removing from them whatever may be capable of affecting their innocence the leaft in the world, and will allow nothing to be faid or done in their prefence, which may infpire them with dangerous principles, or fet them a bad example.

What concerns parents in the cafe I am here treating of, is firft the choice of a mafter and a college, fupposing that they refolve to fend their children thither. ^a Quintilian fully points out to us this double obligation in a few words. He requires that the mafter fhould be a man of confummate virtue. *Præceptorē eligere ſanctiſſimum quemque, cujus rei præcipua prudentibus cura eſt* ; and that an exact and regular diſcipline ſhould be kept up in the college, & *diſciplinam, quæ maxime ſevera fuerit.*

The younger Pliny in one of his letters, wherein he recommends to a lady of his acquaintance a profeſſor of rhetorick for her ſon, lays down admirable inſtructions upon this ſubject, which properly concern the choice of a college and a regent, as the paſſage of Quintilian which I have quoted above, but may likewiſe relate to that of a preceptor. The paſſage is too beautiful not to be repeated here at its full length.

“ ^b The only means to enable your ſon to tread
R 3 “ worthily

^a Lib. i. cap. 2.

^b Lib. iii. Ep. 3. Quibus omnibus (avis & majoribus) ita demum ſimilis adoleſcit, ſi imbutus

honeſtis artibus fuerit : quas plurimum refert à quo poſſimum accipiat. Adhuc illum pueritiæ ratio intra contubernium tuum tenuit :

“ worthily in the footsteps of his ancestors is to set
 “ over him a good guide, who knows how to point out
 “ to him the paths of knowledge and honour ; but the
 “ choice of this guide is a matter of great importance.
 “ Hitherto he has been brought up by his preceptors
 “ under your inspection and in a private house, where
 “ the dangers, if any, are very small ; but now he
 “ is to be sent abroad to attend upon publick lectures,
 “ you must make choice of a professor of eloquence,
 “ in whose school you are assured there is observed
 “ an exact discipline, and above all a great modesty
 “ and purity of manners ; for amongst the other ad-
 “ vantages this youth has received from nature and
 “ fortune, he is extremely beautiful, and this lays
 “ you under farther obligations, in so weak and dan-
 “ gerous an age, to set over him a master, who may
 “ serve not only as a preceptor to him, but likewise
 “ as a guide and a guardian.”

“ I know no body more proper to discharge this
 “ office than Julius Genitor. I love him, and the
 “ friendship I have for him does not influence my
 “ judgment, to which it owes its existence. He is
 “ grave and unblameable, perhaps somewhat too au-
 “ tere and rough in his behaviour, according to the

enuit : præceptores domi habuit, ubi
 est vel erroribus modica, vel etiam
 nulla materia. Jam studia ejus
 extra limen proferenda sunt ; jam
 circumspiciendus Rhetor latinus,
 cujus scholæ severitas, pudor in
 primis, castitas constet. Adest e-
 nim adolescenti nostro, cum ce-
 teris naturæ fortunæque dotibus,
 eximia corporis pulchritudo ; cui
 in hoc lubrico ætatis non præceptor
 modò, sed custos etiam rectorque
 quærendus est.

c Videor ego demonstrare tibi
 posse Julium Genitorem. Ama-
 tur à me : judicio tamen meo non
 obstat caritas, quæ ex judicio na-
 ta est. Vir est emendatus & gra-
 vis : paulo etiam horridior & du-

rior, ut in hac licentia temporum.
 Quantum eloquentia valeat, pluri-
 bus credere putes : nam dicendi
 facultas aperta & exposita statim
 cernitur. Vita hominum altos re-
 cessus magnasque latebras habet :
 cujus pro Genitore me sponso-
 rem accipe. Nihil ex hoc viro
 filius tuus audiet, nisi profuturum :
 nihil discet, quod nescisse recti-
 us fuerit. Nec minus sæpe ab
 illo, quàm à te meque admone-
 bitur quibus imaginibus oneretur,
 quæ nomina & quanta sustineat.
 Proinde, faventibus diis, trade eum
 præceptorì, à quo mores primum,
 mox eloquentiam discat, quæ malè
 sine moribus discitur. Vale.

“ licen-

“ licentiousness of these latter times. As the talent
“ of speaking is an external advantage, which lies o-
“ pen and obvious to all the world, you may in point
“ of eloquence rely upon the testimony of the publick
“ in his favour. It is not so with the life and man-
“ ners of a man, they have their secret places, into
“ which it is scarce possible to penetrate; and in this
“ point I will be bound for Genitor. Your son will
“ hear nothing from him, but what may be to his
“ advantage; nor learn any thing of him, which it
“ might be better for him not to know. He will be
“ no less careful than you or me to set continually be-
“ fore his eyes the examples and virtues of his ances-
“ tors, and make him fully sensible how heavy a bur-
“ then their great names lay upon him. Make no
“ scruple therefore to put him into the hands of a
“ master, who will first train him up to good morals,
“ and then to eloquence, which is never well taught
“ without morality. Farewel.”

It is not enough to make choice of a good college. To reap all the benefit from it, that may be expected, the parents must often visit the principal, the regents and preceptors, to inform themselves of the behaviour of their children, and the progress they make in their studies. They must acquaint them with their dispositions and inclinations, which they cannot but know better than any other. They must consult with them upon proper measures for correcting their faults, support them with their whole authority, and join with them altogether in case of reward, commendation, reprimand or punishment. It is not to be expressed, how useful this good understanding of parents with the masters may be to the children.

^d Horace in the beautiful satyr, wherein he expresses his grateful acknowledgement for the extraordinary pains his father took in his education, does not fail to observe, that he was careful to visit his masters often; and he attributes to this in great measure the hap-

piness he had of having been not only exempt from the irregularities common to youth, but of having escaped even the slightest suspicion of them.

*Atqui si vitiis mediocribus ac mea paucis
Mendosa est natura, alioqui recta
Causa fuit pater his
Ipse mihi custos incorruptissimus omnes
Circum doctores aderat. Quid multa ? pudicum
Qui primus virtutis honos, servavit ab omni
Non solum factò, verum opprobrio quoque turpi.*

It is a fault, ^e says Plutarch, which very much deserves to be condemned in parents, to think themselves entirely discharged from the care of watching over their children, as soon [as they are put into the hands of masters, and not to think any longer of being certified with their own eyes and ears in regard to the progress they make in study and virtue. Besides that, it ill becomes a father, in a matter of this importance, and wherein he is so nearly concerned, blindly to rely upon the integrity of strangers, who amongst the ancients were generally slaves or freedmen ; it is certain, adds the same author, that a father's care to inform himself from time to time, and take an account of his son's application and behaviour, may serve at the same time to make both the scholars and the masters more exact and diligent in the discharge of their several duties. He applies to this subject the proverb which says, ^f The master's eye makes the horse fat.

How just soever this duty is, and easy to be discharged, it is seldom that parents discharge it. They scarce ever concern themselves about the behaviour of their children, when they are grown up and have left the college ; and the most of them shew such an indifference and negligence in this point, as is scarce to be imagined. A great many excuse it with a pretence of

^e De educ. liberis, ^f Οὐδὲν ἄτω πιαίνει τὸν ἵππον, ὡς βασιλεὺς ὀφθαλμοῖς
their

their business and employment, as if the education of their children was not the most important of all, or the character of father was ever to be effaced by that of magistrate or minister.

Plato observes, that it is a very usual fault with persons concerned in the government of a state, to neglect the care of their own family; and in a dialogue, entitled *Laches*, he introduces two of the most considerable men in Athens, complaining that if they had acquired little merit and glory, it was their father's fault, who however distinguished by great actions both in peace and war, and entirely devoted to the affairs of others, had took no care of their education, but had left them to themselves and their own management, at an age, when they had most occasion to be overlooked and restrained. Would to God that many children had not still cause to utter the like complaints.

Cato the Censor, though taken up with the greatest affairs of state, engaged in the most important employments, and the life of the debates in the senate, did not fall into this mistake, but became himself a preceptor to his son. Paulus Æmilius, amidst his great occupations, found time to assist at the conferences made by his children, and to encourage their studies by his presence. He was well paid for his pains, and the reputation [§] they acquired was a just and grateful reward.

These great men were very far from a fault which is now too common, especially among great men and soldiers, who take pains to repeat to their children, that they don't design to make doctors of them, and have sent them only to college to pass away a few years, till they are old enough to be sent to the academy, or enter into the service. Such a discourse is capable of rendering the whole fruit of their studies abortive; as it directly tends to stifle and extinguish all emulation in the mind of the boys; whereas presents should employ all their care in exciting, supporting and augment-

§ The younger Scipio Africanus was one of his children.

ing it; because, if their children have a sense of it in their classes, they will afterwards carry it into the employments confided to them, and take the like pains to succeed and distinguish themselves in them.

But to return to the choice of a preceptor. Plutarch in a treatise we have of his, concerning the manner of educating children, requires in the masters an unblameable life, a good understanding, great learning, and a capacity for governing acquired by long experience. But he sadly complains of the negligence, or rather the stupidity of parents, who in a choice, which generally determines the fate and merit of their children for their whole life, take up with the first comer, have regard only to the recommendation of persons little to be relied upon, and guided by a sordid avarice, regard only the expence in the choice of a preceptor, and think him the best, that costs them least. He tells us a very notable speech of Aristippus upon this occasion. A father surprized, that he should ask a thousand drachmas of him for the instruction of his son, cried out, Why, I could buy a slave for that price. You will have two instead of one, replied the philosopher, thereby insinuating to his covetous father, that he would make no more than a slave of his son.

^b The satyrical poet makes the same complaints, and cannot bear, that fathers and mothers, whilst they are at a thousand foolish expences upon their buildings, furniture, equipage, and table, should be so very sparing in the education of their children.

*Hos inter sumptus sestertia Quintiliano,
Ut multum, duo sufficient. Res nulla minoris
Constabit patri quam filius.*

ⁱ Crates the philosopher said, that he could wish he was upon the top of the most eminent place in the city, that he might cry aloud to the citizens, “ O senseless generation ! how foolish are ye to think only of

^b Juvenal. lib. iii. Sat. 7. ⁱ Plut. de lib. educand. lib. xiv. cap. 55.

“ heaping

“ heaping up riches, and absolutely to neglect the education of your children, for whom you pretend to amass it.”

k Parents pay sometimes very dear for their negligence and avarice, when afterwards they have the grief to see their children abandoned to every kind of vice and disorder, dishonour them a thousand ways, and frequently squander away more money in one year in gratifying their passions, than parents would have spent in ten, in giving them a virtuous and solid education.

No expence therefore must be spared to have a good preceptor; and they must remember, that the noblest and most serviceable use they can make of their money, is to purchase with it men of merit in any kind, and especially in what relates to the instruction of their children. ¹ When Seneca would have given back into the hands of Nero the great wealth, which made him envied, the Emperor answered him, that as great as his wealth might seem, there were persons far below Seneca in merit, who possessed a great deal more. I am ashamed, said he to him, to see freedmen richer than you are, and that as you have the highest place in my esteem, you should not be the greatest in my empire. *Pudet referre libertinos, qui ditiores spectantur. Unde etiam rubori mihi est, quod præcipuus caritate nondum omnes fortuna antecellis.* I do not examine whether Nero thought as he spoke, but this is certain, that understanding and reasonable parents should think thus, and be concerned to see a steward, a secretary, and sometimes a porter, get a greater fortune in their service, than the preceptor to the son of the family.

It must be owned, there are parents, though the number of them is very small, who do not want generosity in this point, and not content with paying very good salaries to their childrens tutors, think themselves farther obliged to settle upon them a reasonable

k Plut. ibid.

1 Tacit. Annal.

for life, sufficient to enable them to enjoy the fruit of their labours at ease and liberty. How small a diminution indeed would an annuity of thirty, fifty or a hundred pistoles, more or less, according to their different circumstances, make in the estates, which so many wealthy persons enjoy? Does it come up to the services whereof it is the reward? I always read with singular pleasure, the admirable discourse of the young Tobias to his father concerning the guide, who had conducted him in his journey, and the particular account he gives of the services he received from him, the greatness and number of which he lays down with the same exactness as if he had been to receive the reward, and not to give it. *O father,* ^m said he to him, *what wages shall we give him, that bears any proportion to the benefits he has done unto us? He has brought me again unto thee in perfect safety, he went himself to receive the money of Gabael, he has made whole my wife, has driven away the Devil from her which tormented her, he has filled her father and mother with joy, he has delivered me from the fish that was ready to devour me, he has likewise healed thee, and by his means it is that we enjoy all kinds of blessings. What then may we give unto him for all he hath done to us? I beg of you, O father, to intreat him that he will be pleased to accept of half of all that we have brought.*

What noble sentiments are here? The young Tobias does not think he does any great matter to his guide by so advantageous an offer, but judges that he shall receive himself a favour wherewith he should be very much honoured, if the guide would think fit to accept of his proposal. *If he will be pleased to accept of half of all those things that we have brought.* Here we have a just model for parents; as the description he gives of the services which his guide had done for him is likewise a pattern for tutors, who should serve as guardian Angels to their pupils.

All parents are not in a condition to make the fortune of their childrens tutors ; but they are all able, and obliged to honour them, to exprefs constantly a great value for them, and to procure them, by their conduct the esteem and respect of the children and the whole family. He should be looked upon and respected as the father himself, for this is the idea which the ancients required, should be had of a preceptor.

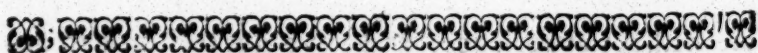
n Dii majorum umbris tenuem & sine pondere terram

*Qui præceptorem sancti voluere parentis
Esse loco.*

Though all parents, even such as can make but small allowances, should be very careful in the choice of a preceptor, they must not however be too scrupulous upon this point, nor expect to find all the qualifications, that can be desired in a good master. There is nothing more extraordinary, than a man who has all these virtues united in him. The greatest lords and princes find a great difficulty in meeting with persons so qualified. People are often obliged to trust the education of their children with young preceptors, who are without experience, and have not had time to acquire a great deal of learning. But provided they bring with them good dispositions, and do not want understanding and judgment, are fond of taking pains, and above all are moral and religious men, the parents ought to be satisfied. They must only endeavour to make them apply to some wise and experienced person in this way to consult upon occasions, and govern themselves by his advice. But what in my opinion seems absolutely necessary, and parents should never omit, is to begin with putting some proper books into the hands of the master they set over their children, to instruct them in a right method of educating them, such as those of M. de Fenelon, Mr. Locke, and some others of a like nature. I could wish that

mine might be useful to them. I compos'd them at least with that view.

Parents should never omit a powerful means they have in their hands of drawing down the blessing of God upon their children, and that is by contributing more or less, in proportion to their circumstances, to the subsistence of some poor scholar, and to help him forward in his learning. I formerly received a like assistance from the liberality of the late minister M. le Peletier. I had the happiness of being in the same classes with his^o children in the college du Plessis, and to reap the advantage of the excellent education he gave them. I often disputed with them for the first places and prizes. M. le Peletier rewarded me in the same manner as he did them. I may say, that during the whole course of my studies he was a kind of father to me, and has since expressed towards me a truly paternal affection. There is no day passes in my life without the remembrance of his good deeds, and my gratitude becomes the stronger as I am every day more sensible of the value of a good education.



C H A P. IV.

Of the Duty of Preceptors.

I HAVE little to add upon this subject after what I have said upon it in the different parts of this treatise.

^p Preceptors are in the place of parents, and must therefore adopt their sentiments, and be kind and tender to the children, but with a kindness which must not degenerate into indulgence, and an affection di-

^o The late bishop of Angers, and M. Peletier the late premier president.

^p Sumat ante omnia parentis ex-

ga discipulos suos animum, ac succedere se in eorum locum, à quibus sibi liberi traduntur, existimet, Quintil. lib. ii. cap. 2.

rected by reason. Nothing must seem below them, which parents would do for their children. I thereby mean certain little cares relating to their persons and health, especially whilst they are very young or sick. This care and attention are very pleasing to parents, and contribute very much to the making them easy.

For the same reason that they supply the place of the parents, they must not look upon themselves as absolute masters of the children, nor pretend to govern them after their own wills and fancy, without any dependence upon the parents, or without consulting them in any thing; and even sometimes forbidding the children under severe punishments to tell them any thing of what passes in private. Masters who act only by reason and rule have no need to impose this silence and secrecy upon their scholars, which has something odious and tyrannical in it, and which the parents have just cause to complain of. By communicating their authority to the masters they did not design to divest themselves of it. Nothing is more just or reasonable than to consult with them upon the manner of managing their children, to act wholly in concert with them, to take their advice, enter into their views, and, in a word, to have an entire confidence and openness on both sides, which leaves a liberty of mutually declaring what they judge will be most advantageous for the children. I suppose that the parents are such as they should be, and that they require nothing contrary to a Christian education. If it be otherwise, the preceptors, by bearing with patience and condescension all that may be endured, may proceed with gentle and moderate remonstrances. When these prove useless, it is their duty to retire and quit an employment, wherein they are not allowed to follow the light of their conscience, or discharge their duty; but they should quit it in a civil manner, without expressing any ill humour or breaking with the parents.

What I have said of the good understanding between tutors and parents, must likewise be understood with
reference

reference to the principal of a college. When the children are there, it is with him they are chiefly intrusted. It is he, who is charged with the discipline of the college both in publick and private, and it is he who answers for all that passes there. Now without the subordination I am speaking of, he is not in a condition to discharge the essential duties of his place and character.

Amongst the virtues of a good master, vigilance and assiduity are some of the chief. He cannot carry them too far, provided it be without constraint and affectation. He is a guardian angel to the children; there is no moment in which he is not charged with their conduct. If his absence or want of care, for they are much alike, gives the enemy, who is continually watching round them, an opportunity of carrying off the precious treasure of their innocence, what will he answer to Jesus Christ, when he demands an account of their souls, and reproaches him with having been less vigilant in taking care of them, than the Devil in destroying them? The misfortune is, that the generality of masters are not often attentive to their obligation upon this point, till they learn it from fatal experience, which they might have prevented by an holy and religious diligence, which constitutes the proper character of every man, who presides over the conduct of others: ⁹ *He that ruleth*, (let him do it) *in diligence*.

The master's care must extend to the servants, who wait upon the children, and it is not the least of his obligations, though it is generally not known or not minded. As ¹ Quintilian observes, we have as much cause to apprehend danger from vicious servants, as from bad companions who have usually better education, and more honour, *nec tutior inter servos malos, quàm ingenuos parùm modestos, conversatio est*. He must be careful therefore never to leave a child alone with the servants, unless he is fully assured of their

⁹ Rom. xii. 8.

¹ Lib. i. cap. 2.

probity and piety ; for such there are, of whom parents and masters cannot take too much care.

As children, especially when they are young, are fickle and inconstant in their dispositions, it is proper that they never should be out of the master's sight, not even whilst they are at their studies in private. His presence alone will very much contribute to make them attentive, by fixing their imagination, and save them abundance of distraction and negligence, from whence arise the faults they make in their compositions, that afterwards occasion the chiding and correction, which might have been avoided by the assiduous, rather than the troublesome and pressing diligence of the master. This Quintilian insinuates by the following words, *assiduus sit potius quam immodicus*.

Assiduity must not seem difficult in the college, where the masters are absolutely at liberty during the whole time of the classes, which would render them entirely inexcusable, if they failed in this point : whereas the same assiduity is very severe and a great confinement in private houses, where the preceptor is obliged to attend his scholars all the day long. It is wise in the parents, and I may say, for their interest too, to endeavour as much as possible to soften this restraint by allowing the master every week an afternoon entirely to himself, and taking upon themselves the care of the children during that time. There is no constitution that can hold out under so continual a confinement. A preceptor should have a time to unbend, to visit his friends, to keep up his acquaintance, to advise with them about his studies, and the difficulties he meets with in the education of his charge ; in a word, not to be always confined to his scholar. 'Tis not easy to express how much this condescension of the parents encourages the masters, and renders their zeal more lively and vigilant.

I have already taken notice that a master must never act by passion, humour or fancy. It is one of the greatest faults in education, as it never escapes the discerning

cerning eye of the scholars, renders all the good qualifications of the master almost useless, and deprives his instructions and admonitions of almost all their authority; and what is yet very grievous, those who act most by humour are apt to perceive it least, and often take it ill to be put in mind of it, though it is the best office that a friend can do them.

I am ashamed to mention here certain injurious terms which are sometimes used towards the scholars, such as *blockhead*, *beast*, *ass*, &c. Nor would I do it, if I did not know that these terms were often in the mouths of some masters. Does such language arise from reason, good breeding, or good understanding? Is it not evident that it must be either the effect of a mean education, or of a clownish disposition, which knows not what decency is, or of a violent and passionate mind that cannot contain itself?

Amongst those who take upon them the education of youth, there are several, whom their narrow circumstances, or even sometimes absolute poverty have obliged to enter into this profession, and this they must not be ashamed of. The famous Origen taught grammar for a subsistence, and had the happiness of preserving all his life long the remembrance and love of that poverty, wherein his father left him at his death. This is an excellent model for masters. The salary they get for their pains is certainly very lawful, and well deserved. However I would not have that the only motive, nor even the prevailing one, which engages them to it, but that the will of God, and the desire of sanctifying themselves should have the first and principal share in it. The cruelty of parents often obliges masters to barter with them, and dispute about the terms of their salary. It were to be wished, that the generosity of parents on one hand, and the disinterestedness of masters on the other, might prevent any occasion for this kind of agreements, which in my opinion have something mean and sordid in them. It might be well for the latter to rely a little more upon

Providence

Provi
serve
confi

If
is tru
less s
of th
him
site t
St. A
try,
with
his fr
they
fufe a
Vere
not,
duce
since
he ha
tive c
the a
scurit
up hi

Th
is no
young
of an
emple
a true
thoug
him a
to a M
och,
upon
in so
him
that l

• Co

Providence than they usually do, and I have never observed that it has ever failed those, who have absolutely confided in it.

If views of interest are unworthy a preceptor, that is truly christian, those of vanity and ambition are no less so. I have oft admired what St. Augustin says of the motive, which engaged Nebrides to take upon him the instruction of youth, a motive directly opposite to the two faults I am here speaking of. He was St. Augustin's intimate friend, and had left his country, his estate, and mother, to follow him to Milan, without any other reason, than to give himself up with his friend, to a search after truth and wisdom, which they both pursued with equal zeal. He could not refuse at his instant intreaties to become an assistant to Verecundus, who taught a school at Milan. It was not, says St. Augustin, the desire of gain, which induced Nebrides to take upon him this employment, since he might have had a much more profitable one if he had pleased; and still less was it through any motive of vanity or ambition, as he had always shunned the acquaintance of great men, desiring only the obscurity of a peaceable retreat, wherein he might give up his whole time to the study of wisdom.

This example puts me in mind of another, which is no less admirable, and relates to the education of a young gentleman of great quality. The father, full of ambition, thought only of raising his son to great employments in the state, and the mother, who was a true Christian, of making him great in heaven. She thought she could only succeed in her desires by giving him an holy education, and to this end she proposed to a Monk, whom she had desired to come to Antioch, to leave his mountain and retirement, and take upon him the care of her son. She conjured him to it in so earnest and pathetical a manner, protesting to him that he should answer for the soul of that child, that he thought he was under an obligation not to re-

* Conf. lib. vi. c. 10. † S. Chrys. de vit. monach. lib. ii. c. 14.

fuse it. The success answered the hopes of the pious mother. The child instructed by his excellent preceptor, made an extraordinary progress in the sciences, and still more in piety. Gay, civil, affable and obliging to all the world, he insinuated himself by that agreeable behaviour into the favour of his companions, which gave him an opportunity of gaining over several of them, and leading them to embrace virtue. St. Chrysostom, who was an eye-witness of this fact, has given us the history of it, but more at length than I have here quoted it.

What I gather from these two examples, and therewithal I shall end this chapter, is, that piety is the most essential and important qualification in a preceptor, that which should be preferred to all the rest, and adds an infinite value to it. It inspires the masters with an earnest zeal for the scholars, which usually draws upon them the blessing of heaven. "I have in another place produced an excellent example of this zeal in the person of St. Augustin, which may serve as an instruction and model to all Christian masters.



C H A P. V.

Of the duty of Scholars.

QUINTILIAN says ^w, that he has included almost all the duty of scholars in this one piece of advice, which he gives them, to love those who teach them as they love the sciences which they learn of them, and to look upon them as fathers, from whom they derive not the life of the body, but that instruction which is

^u Tom. i. Disc. Prelim. p. 71.

^w Plura de officiis docentium locutus, discipulos id unum interim moneo, ut præceptores suos non

minùs-quàm ipsa studia ament; & parentes esse, non quidem corporum, sed mentium credant. Quintil. lib. ii. cap. 9.

in a manner the life of the soul. Indeed this sentiment of affection and respect suffices to make them apt to learn during the time of their studies, and full of gratitude all the rest of their lives. It seems to me to include a great part of what is to be expected from them.

* Docility, which consists in submitting to direction, in readily receiving the instructions of their masters, and reducing them to practice, is properly the virtue of scholars, as that of masters is to teach well. The one can do nothing without the other; and as it is not sufficient for a labourer to sow the seed, unless the earth, after having opened its bosom to receive it, in a manner hatches, warms and moistens it; so likewise the whole fruit of instruction depends upon a good correspondence between the masters and the scholars.

Gratitude for those who have laboured in our education, is the character of an honest man, and the mark of a good heart. Who is there among us, says Cicero, that has been instructed with any care, that is not highly delighted with the sight, or even the bare remembrance of his preceptors, masters, and the place where he was taught and brought up? ^z Seneca exhorts young men to preserve always a great respect for their masters, to whose care they are indebted for the amendment of their faults, and for having imbibed sentiments of honour and probity. ^a Their exactness

x Ut magistrorum officium est, docere: sic, discipulorum, præbere se dociles: alioqui neutrum sine altero sufficiet. Et, sicut frustra sparseris semina, nisi illa præmollitus foverit sulcus: ita eloquentia coalescere nequit, nisi sociata tradentis accipientisque concordia. Quintil. ibid.

y Quis est nostrum liberaliter educatus, cui non educator, cui non magister suus atque doctor, cui non locus ille mutus ubi ipse altus aut doctus est, cum grata recordatione in mente versetur? Cic. pro Planc. n. 81.

z Præceptores suos adolescens veneretur ac suspiciat, quorum beneficio se vitiis exuit, & sub quorum tutela positus exercet bonas artes. Senec. Epist. 83.

a Tamdiu illos odio habemus, quamdiu graves judicamus, & quamdiu beneficia illorum non intelligimus. Cum jam ætas aliquid prudentiæ collegit, apparet propter illa ipsa amari à nobis debere, propter quæ non amabantur; admonitiones, severitatem, & inconsultæ adolescentiæ custodiam. Senec. liv. v. de Benef. cap. 5.

and

and severity displease sometimes at an age, when we are not in a condition to judge of the obligations we owe to them; but when years have ripened our understanding and judgment, we then discern that what made us dislike them, I mean admonitions, reprimands, and a severe exactness in restraining the passions of an imprudent and inconsiderate age, is expressly the very thing which should make us esteem and love them. ^b Thus we see that Marcus Aurelius, one of the wisest and most illustrious Emperors that Rome ever had, thanked the Gods for two things, especially for his having had excellent tutors himself, and that he had found the like for his children.

Quintilian, after having noted the different characters of the mind in children, draws in a few words the image of what he judged to be a perfect scholar, and certainly it is a very amiable one. "For my part, says he, I like a child who is encouraged by commendation, is animated by a sense of glory, and weeps when he is outdone. A noble emulation will always keep him in exercise; a reprimand will touch him to the quick, and honour will serve instead of a spur. We need not fear that such a scholar will ever give himself up to idleness." *Mihi ille detur puer, quem laus excitet, quem gloria juvet, qui victus fleat. Hic erit alendus ambitu: hunc mordebit objurgatio: hunc honor excitabit: in hoc desidi- am nunquam verebor.*

How great a value soever Quintilian sets upon the talents of the mind, he esteems those of the heart far beyond them, and looks upon the others as of no value without these. In the same chapter, from whence I took the preceding words, he declares, he should never have a good opinion of a child, who placed his study in occasioning laughter, by mimicking the behaviour, mien, and faults of others, and he presently gives an admirable reason for it. "A child," says he, cannot be truly ingenious, in my opinion,

b M. Aurel. lib. i. §. 17

“ unless he be good and virtuous ; otherwise I should rather chuse to have him dull and heavy, than of a bad disposition.” *Non dabit mihi spem bonæ indolis, qui hoc imitandi studio petet, ut rideatur. Nam probus quoque imprimis erit ille verè ingeniosus : alioqui non pejus duxerim tardi esse ingenii, quàm mali.*

He displays to us all these talents in the eldest of his two children, whose character he draws, and whose death he laments in so eloquent and pathetical a strain, in the beautiful preface to his sixth book. I shall beg leave to insert here a small extract of it, which will not be useless to the boys, as they will find it a model which suits well with their age and condition.

After having mentioned his younger son, who died at five years old, and described the graces and beauties of his countenance, the prettiness of his expressions, the vivacity of his understanding, which began to shine through the veil of childhood ; “ I had still left me, ^c says he, my son Quintilian, in whom I placed all my pleasure and all my hopes, and comfort enough I might have found in him. For having now entered into his tenth year, he did not produce only blossoms like his younger brother, but fruits already formed, and beyond the power of dis-
“ appointment I have much experience, but I never saw in any child, I do not say only so many excellent dispositions for the sciences, nor so much taste and inclination for study, as his masters know, but so much probity, sweetness, good nature, gentleness and inclination to please and oblige, as I discerned in him.

^d “ Besides this, he had all the advantages of nature,
“ ture,

^c Una post hæc Quintiliani mei spe ac voluptate nitebar : & poterat sufficere solatio. Non enim flosculos, sicut prior, sed, jam decimum ætatis ingressus, annum, certos atque deformatos fructus ostenderat. Juro has me in illo vidisse virtutes ingenii non

modò ad percipiendas disciplinas, quo nihil præstantius egnovi plurima expertus, studii que jam tum non coacti, (sciunt præceptores) sed probitatis, pietatis, humanitatis, liberalitatis

^d Etiam illa fortuita aderant omnia, vocis jucunditas claritasque,

“ture, a charming voice, a pleasing countenance,
 “and a surprising facility in pronouncing well the
 “two languages, as if he had been equally born for
 “both of them.

“But all this was no more than hopes. I set a
 “greater value upon his admirable virtues, his equa-
 “lity of temper, his resolution, the courage with
 “which he bore up against fear and pain. For how
 “were his physicians astonished at his patience under
 “a distemper of eight months continuance, when at
 “the point of death he comforted me himself, and
 “bad me not to weep for him! and delirious as he
 “sometimes was, at his last moments his tongue ran
 “of nothing else but learning and the sciences: O
 “vain and deceitful hopes! &c.”

Are there many boys amongst us, of whom we can truly say so much to their advantage, as Quintilian says here of his son? What a shame would it be for them, if born and brought up in a Christian country, they had not even the virtues of Pagan children! I make no scruple to repeat them here again, docility, obedience, respect for their masters, or rather a degree of affection, and the source of an eternal gratitude, zeal for study, and a wonderful thirst after the sciences, joined to an abhorrence of vice and irregularity, an admirable fund of probity, goodness, gentleness, civility and liberality; as also patience, courage and greatness of soul in the course of a long sickness. What then was wanting to all these virtues? That which alone could render them truly worthy the name, and must be in a manner the soul of them, and constitute their whole value, the precious gift of faith and piety, the saving knowledge of a Mediator, a sincere desire

que, oris suavitas, & in utracun-
 que lingua, tanquam ad eam de-
 mum natus esset, expressa proprie-
 tas omnium literarum.

e Sed hæc spes adhuc. Illa ma-
 jora: constantia, gravitas, contra
 dolores etiam ac metus robur.

Nam quo ille animo, qua medi-
 corum admiratione, mensium octo
 valetudinem tulit! Ut me in su-
 premis consolatus est! Quàm, etiam
 deficiens, jamque non noster, ip-
 sum illum alienatæ mentis errorem
 circa solas literas non habuit!

of pleasing God, and referring all our actions to him.

It is this which infinitely exalts every other talent in Christian children, and alone deserves to be proposed to them as a perfect model, worthy of their whole imitation. They may find it in two illustrious saints, whose knowledge and virtue have done so much honour to the church. I mean St. Basil and St. Gregory Nazianzen.

They were both descended of very noble families in the eye of the world, and still more so in the eyes of God. They were born almost at the same time, and their birth was the fruit of the prayers and piety of their mothers, who from that very moment devoted them to God, from whom they had received them. The mother of St. Gregory presenting him to him in the church sanctified his hands by the sacred books she made him touch.

They had both of them all the qualifications that make children amiable, the beauty of person, the charms of the mind, and mildness and politeness of manners.

Their education was such, as may be imagined in families, where piety, if I may be allowed the expression, was hereditary and domestick; and where fathers, mothers, brothers, sisters and grandfathers on both sides were all of them saints, and most of them very eminent ones.

The happy disposition, which God had given them, was cultivated with all possible care. After they had finished their studies at home, they were sent separately into the cities of Greece, which were of greatest reputation for learning, and put under the tuition of the most excellent masters.

At last they met again at Athens. We know that this city was in a manner the theatre and centre of polite learning and all erudition. It was likewise in a manner the cradle of the famous friendship which subsisted between our two Saints, or at least it served very much to tie the knot of it in a straighter manner.

A very extraordinary adventure gave occasion to it. There was an odd custom at Athens relating to such scholars, as were new-comers, that were sent thither from different provinces. They began with introducing them into a numerous assembly of youth like themselves, and there they exposed them to all imaginary raillery and insolence, after which they led them cross the city in procession, conducted and preceded by all the boys, who marched two by two before them. When they came to the place appointed, the whole company stopt, set up a loud cry, and made as if they would break open the gates, and they were refused to be opened to them. When the Novice had been admitted there, he was then restored to his liberty. Gregory, who came first to Athens, and saw how opposite this ridiculous ceremony was to the grave and serious character of Basil, and how disagreeable it would be to him, had credit enough among his companions to get it dispensed with. It was this, ^f says St. Gregory of Nazianzen in the admirable account he gives of this adventure, which gave occasion to our sacred friendship, which began to kindle in us that flame which has never since been extinguished, and which pierced our hearts with a dart, that is fixed there for ever. Happy Athens, cries he out, thou source of all my felicity! I went thither only to acquire knowledge, and I found there the most precious of all my treasures, an affectionate and faithful friend, happier in this than Saul, who seeking but for asses found a kingdom.

This relation formed and begun, as I have now mentioned, grew every day stronger and stronger, especially when these two friends, who kept nothing a secret from each other, mutually laying open their hearts, discerned they had both the same end, and fought for the same treasure, that is to say, wisdom and virtue. They lived under the same roof, eat at the same table, had the same exercises and pleasures,

^f Τοῦτο ἡμῖν τῆς φιλίας προσέ- ὅτι οὕτως ἐπ' ἀλλήλους ἐτρώθημεν.
μιν. ἐντεθενό τῆς συναφείας ππιν.

and were properly speaking but one and the same soul; a marvellous union, says St. Gregory, which cannot be really produced by any other than a chaste and Christian friendship.

We both alike aspired to knowledge, an object the most capable of raising sentiments of envy and jealousy, and yet we were absolutely exempt from that subtil and malicious passion, and experienced no other than a noble emulation. Each of us had a higher sense of the glory of his friend than of his own, and sought not to gain the superiority over him, but to yield to him and imitate him.

Our principal study and only end was virtue. We strove to render our friendship eternal by preparing ourselves for a blessed immortality, by withdrawing our affection more and more from the things of this world. We took the word of God for our conductor and guide. We served as masters and overseers to ourselves, by mutually exhorting one another to the practice of piety; and I might say, if there was not some kind of vanity in the expression, that we were a kind of rule to each other, whereby to discern falsehood from truth, and good from evil.

We had no conversation with such of our companions, as were saucy, passionate, or immoral, and kept company only with such as by their modesty, circumspection and wisdom might assist and support us in the good designs we had formed; knowing that bad examples, like contagious distempers, are easily communicated.

These two Saints, as we cannot too often repeat to youth, were always distinguished among their companions by the beauty and liveliness of their wit, by their diligence and labour, by the extraordinary success they had in all their studies, by the ease and readiness with which they acquired all the sciences, taught at Athens; polite learning, poetry, eloquence and philosophy. But they were still more distinguished by the innocence of their manners, which was alarmed at

the sight of the least danger, and afraid of even the shadow of vice. A dream, which St. Gregory had, when he was very young, of which he has left us an elegant description in verse, very much contributed to inspire him with these sentiments. As he slept, he thought he saw two virgins of the same age and of equal beauty, cloathed in a modest manner, and without any of those ornaments, which Ladies usually are fond of. Their eyes were fixt upon the ground, and their countenance covered with a veil, which did not hinder him from discerning the blush which a maiden shame spreads over their cheeks ^g. The sight of them, adds the Saint, filled me with joy, for they seemed to have something in them more than human. They took me in their arms and caress'd me as a child, whom they dearly loved, and when I asked them who they were, the one told me she was * *Purity*, and the other † *Continence*; but both the companions of Jesus Christ, and the friends of those who renounced marriage to lead an heavenly life. They exhorted me to join my heart and mind to theirs, that being filled with the glory of virginity, they might present me before the light of the immortal Trinity. After these words they flew up to heaven, and my eyes followed them as far as they could.

All this indeed was but a dream, but had a very real effect upon the heart of the Saint. He never forgot the agreeable image of chastity, and reflected upon it with pleasure in his mind. It was, as he says himself, a spark of fire, which increasing by degrees, inkindled in him the love of a perfect continence.

Basil and he had great need of such a virtue to defend themselves amidst the perils of Athens, the most dangerous city in the world, in point of morals, in

g Κρυδόμενον δ' ἐφ' ὑπέρθε καρήατα ἡδὲ παρείας
 Κρυψάμεναι, κατὰ γῆς ὅσαότ' ὀμματ' ἔχον·
 Αἰδώς ἀμφοτέρωσιν ἐπιτρέπε καλὸν ἔρευδος
 Ὅσσον ἐϋνότων φάνειδ' ὑπ' ἐκφαιών.

* Ἀγνεία.

† Σωφροσύνη.

confe-

consequence of the vast concourse of youth which came thither from all parts, and brought with them their vices and irregularities. But, says St. Gregory, we had the happiness of experiencing in that corrupt city something like what the poets tell of a river, which preserves the sweetness of its waters amidst the saltiness of the sea, and of an animal which subsists in the midst of fire. We had no conversation or friendship with the bad, we knew but two ways in Athens, the one which led us to the church and the holy divines who taught there, and the other which led us to the schools and our masters in learning. As to entertainments, spectacles, assemblies and festivals, we were absolutely ignorant of them.

One might naturally imagine, that youths of this character, who separated themselves from all society, who had no share in any of the pleasures and diversions of those of their own age, whose pure and innocent lives were a continual censure of the irregularity of the rest, must have been the mark of all their companions, and the object of their hatred, or at least of their contempt and raillery. But it was quite the contrary; and nothing is more glorious to the memory of these two illustrious Saints, and I venture to say, reflects more honour upon piety itself, than such an event. Their virtue indeed must have been very pure, and their conduct very wise and discreet, to have not only the envy and hatred, but to have gained in general the esteem, love and respect of all their companions.

This was seen in an eminent manner, when it was reported, that they designed to leave Athens to return into their own country. The grief was universal, cries and lamentations were heard on all sides, and tears flowed from every eye. They were about to lose the honour of their city and glory of their schools. The masters and scholars, adding force and violence to prayers and complaints, protested they would not let them go, nor ever consent to their departure. One
of

of them could not help yielding to this extraordinary solicitation, which might rather be called a conspiracy to detain him. This was Gregory; and one may easily judge how much he was concerned at it.

I question whether it is possible to imagine a more perfect model for the boys, than that which I have now laid before their eyes, where we find all the circumstances united, that can render youth amiable and valuable, noble blood, beauty of mind, an incredible ardour for study, wonderful success in all the sciences, polite and noble manners, a surprizing modesty amidst publick praises and applauses, and what infinitely sets off all these qualifications, a piety and fear of God, which ill examples only improved and confirmed. We may read an admirable character of these two great Saints in M. du Guet's letters expressly drawn up for the use of the scholars, who were to answer upon some of their discourses.

Besides the example of some illustrious Christian Saints, such as the two I have mentioned, it may be proper for the boys to take a view of those that are to be found in holy Scripture. They will there find the young Samuel by his piety and virtue alike agreeable to God and men. ^h *And the child Samuel grew on and was in favour both with the Lord and also with men.* They will there admire an holy King, who at eight years old, following the example of David, was ever careful to please God in all that he did. ⁱ *And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, and walked in all the ways of David his father.* They will there see Tobit, after he had passed his youth in innocence, avoiding the company of such as sacrificed unto the golden calves, shewing nothing childish in his behaviour, and keeping with all exactness the injunctions of the law from his infancy. ^k *Solus fugiebat consortia omnium Nihil puerile gessit in opere Hæc & his similia secundum legem Dei puerulus observabat.* They will see him, I say, edu-

^h 1 Sam. iii. 26.

ⁱ 2 Kings xxii. 2.

^k Tob. ch. i.
cating

rearing his son in the same manner, by instructing him in his infancy to fear God, and abstain from every sin. *Quem ab infantia timere Deum docuit, & abstinere ab omni peccato.* They will be surprized to find long before Christianity a courage truly heroical and christian in the seven brethren of the Maccabees, who were all determined to die by the most cruel punishments rather than transgress the law of God. *1 We are ready to die, rather than to transgress the laws of our fathers.*

But they must principally imbibe their sentiments from the very fountain of holiness and piety, that is, from Jesus Christ, who to sanctify childhood and youth, was pleased to be born a child, and afterward to set an example to all persons of the several virtues which properly belong to them, by his exactness in going up to the temple at the appointed times; by his diligence in hearing the doctors; by the wisdom and modesty of his answers; his application to do the work of his Father, and execute his orders without consulting with flesh or blood; by his perfect submission to his parents; and lastly, by the care he took of outwardly shewing before God and men, in proportion as he advanced in years, a visible progress of grace and wisdom, the fulness of which he had received from the first moment of his incarnation.

The conclusion of this work.

I am now come to the end of my work, which I undertook with a view to serve the publick, to be of some assistance if I could to youth, and those who are entrusted with their education. It was not my design to say any thing which might in the least offend any of my brethren, or any person whatsoever. If however this has happened without my intention or knowledge, I desire they would excuse it, and take in good part what has fallen from me without any bad design.

All that now remains is to beg of God, who is the only master of mankind, the author of all light and of every excellent gift, who dispenses talents as he pleases, and inspires us with the manner of making good use of them ; to whom alone it belongs to speak to the heart as well as to the understanding, to beseech him, I say, that he would be pleased to give a blessing to this work, to the author, the children, the parents, the masters and servants, in a word, to all who have any care in the education of youth, in any place or any college whatsoever, and particularly that he would be pleased to pour down abundantly his grace upon the university of Paris, that he will continue to preserve and increase, not only the taste of learning and the sciences which has always flourished in it, but still more that disposition to piety and religion, which has hitherto been its most solid glory. Amen.

T H E E N D.

